TITLE

Each book of the Pentateuch (the first five books of the Old Testament, called "The Pentateuch" since about A.D. 160, called "The Torah" [instruction] by the Jews), originally received its title in the Hebrew Bible from the first word or words in the book. There are three divisions in the Hebrew Bible: The Law (Torah), The Prophets, and The Writings (cf. Luke 24:44). The Torah was originally one book, but the translators of the Septuagint (Greek) version (ca. 250 B.C.) divided it into the five books that we have. The Jews regarded the stories in the Torah as divine instruction for them, as well as the commandments and sermons, since they too teach theology and ethics.

The English title "Genesis" has come to us from the Latin Vulgate translation (Liber Genesis) made by the early church father Jerome (ca. A.D. 390). The Latin title came from the Septuagint translation. "Genesis" is a transliteration of the Greek word geneseos, the Greek word that translates the Hebrew toledot. This Hebrew word is the key word in identifying the structure of Genesis, and the English translators have usually rendered it "account" or "generations" or "history" or "records" (2:4; 5:1; 6:9; 10:1; 11:10, 27; 25:12, 19; 36:1, 9; 37:2).2

---

1See Appendix 1 at the end of these notes for a table showing four canons of the Old Testament (Hebrew Bible): Jewish, Protestant, Roman Catholic, and Eastern Orthodox. See also Floyd V. Filson, Which Books Belong in the Bible? pp. 73-100. See Randall Price, Searching for the Original Bible, pp. 36-42, for a concise explanation of the origin and development of the whole Old Testament.

DATE

The events recorded date back to the creation of the world.

Many Christians believe the earth is millions of years old. They usually base this belief on the statements of scientists and understand Scripture in the light of these statements. Likewise, many Christians believe that the human race began hundreds of thousands of years ago for the same reason.

Many evangelicals believe that the earth is not much older than 10,000 years. They base this on the genealogies in Scripture (Gen. 5; 10; 11; et al.), which they understand to be "open" (i.e., not complete).¹ Evangelicals usually hold to a more recent date for man's creation—more recent than the millions of years that evolutionists postulate—for the same reason.

"The history of man on the earth may easily be more than the supposed six thousand years and with no violence to the testimony of the Sacred Text."²

Another group of evangelicals believes that these genealogies are either "closed" (i.e., complete) or very close to complete. This leads them to date the creation of the world and man about 6,000 years ago. I shall discuss the question of how we should interpret the genealogies in the exposition of the chapters where they occur.

Many interpreters have placed the date of composition of Genesis much later than Moses' lifetime. Some of them do this because Genesis contains some names that became common designations of people and places after Moses' time (e.g., the Philistines, Dan, et al.). I shall discuss these anomalies in the exposition to follow as we come to them. See also the section below: "Writer." If one accepts Mosaic authorship, as most conservative evangelicals do, the date of composition of Genesis must be within Moses' lifetime (ca. 1525-1405 B.C.). This book was perhaps originally intended to encourage the Israelites to trust in their faithful, omnipotent God as they anticipated entrance into the Promised Land from Kadesh Barnea or from

---

²Lewis S. Chafer, Systematic Theology, 2:137.
the Plains of Moab. Moses may have written it earlier to prepare them for the Exodus, but this seems less likely to me. Another guess is that Moses wrote it during the 38 years of wilderness wanderings. No one knows for sure.

**WRITER**

The authorship of the Pentateuch (Gr. *penta*, "five," and *teuchos*, "a case for carrying papyrus scrolls" and, in later usage, the "scrolls" themselves), has been the subject of great controversy among professing Christians, since Spinoza promoted "higher criticism" of the Bible in the seventeenth century. The "documentary hypothesis," which grew out of his work, is that Moses did not write the Pentateuch, as most scholars in Judaism and the church until that day believed. Instead, it was the product of several writers who lived much later than Moses. A redactor (editor) or redactors combined these several documents into the form we have now. These documents (J, E, D, P, and others) represent: a Yahwistic (Jehovistic) tradition (supposedly dating from the ninth century B.C.), an Elohistic tradition (eighth century B.C.), a Deuteronomic tradition (seventh century B.C.), a Priestly tradition (fifth century B.C.), etc. The subject of Old Testament Introduction deals with these matters. One reliable scholar summed up the present state of this controversy as follows:

"... the documentary hypothesis is shaky at best and before long may have to be given up entirely by the scholarly world."

The evidence that Moses wrote the Pentateuch seems conclusive if one believes that Jesus Christ spoke the truth when He attributed the authorship to Moses (Matt. 19:8; Mark 7:10; Luke 16:29-31; 20:37; 24:27;

---

5Kitchen, p. 78.
John 7:19, 22; cf. Acts 15:1). Jesus Christ did not specifically say that Moses wrote Genesis, but in our Lord's day the Jews regarded the Pentateuch (Torah) as a whole unit. They recognized Moses as the author of all five books. Consequently they would have understood what Jesus said about any of the five books of Moses as an endorsement of the Mosaic authorship of them all.

"Just west of Abydos in southern Egypt, the Wadi el-Hol site yielded an alphabetic inscription carved on the underface of a ledge. Palaeographically it resembled a text found at Serabit al-Khadem in the Sinai Peninsula from 1600 B.C., which until 1993 was the earliest alphabet ever found. But the Wadi Hol example is at least two hundred years older, dating from the time Jacob and his sons lived in Egypt. The argument that Moses could not have written the Torah in alphabetic form that early (ca. 1400 B.C.) thus has no basis."

How did Moses receive this information? He may have done so in either of two ways. Perhaps Adam and Eve told the creation story to their descendants, and they passed it on to succeeding generations orally and/or in written form (i.e., tradition). Moses' mother may have told him these stories as a child. If so, God guarded the true account. The other ancient

---

1See, for example, the testimony of Flavius Josephus, a first-century Jewish-Christian writer, to the Mosaic authorship of the Pentateuch, in Against Apion, 1:8.
2Oswald T. Allis' The Five Books of Moses is a classic rebuttal of the denial that Moses wrote all five books. No one has discredited it, though many liberal scholars have ignored it. More recently, Kenneth Kitchen's series of six articles, "The Old Testament in its Context" in Theological Students' Fellowship Bulletin (1971-72), especially the sixth article, refuted "the fashionable myth" (p. 9) of the evolution of Israel's religion as proposed by Julius Wellhausen and his followers. Another excellent rebuttal by a Jewish scholar, Umberto Cassuto, is his The Documentary Hypothesis. For a review of other subsequent approaches scholars have pursued in the study of Genesis (i.e., the form-critical, tradition-historical, and rhetorical-critical), see Allen P. Ross, Creation and Blessing, pp. 27-35; Victor P. Hamilton, The Book of Genesis: Chapters 1—17, pp. 11-38; Herbert M. Wolf, An Introduction to the Old Testament Pentateuch, pp. 71-78.
Near Eastern accounts were perversions of what really happened. Another possibility is that God revealed the creation account directly to Moses.

The New Testament writers quoted or alluded to Genesis over 60 times in 17 books.

**SCOPE**

The events recorded in Genesis stretch historically from Creation to Joseph's death, a period of at least 2,300 years. The first part of the book (ch. 1—11) is not as easy to date precisely as the second part (ch. 12—50). The history of the patriarchs recorded in this second main division of the text covers a period of about 300 years.

The scope of the book progressively and consistently narrows. That is, Genesis begins with the creation of the cosmos and ends with the death of one man: Joseph.

**PURPOSE**

The selection of content included in Genesis points to the purpose of the divine author: to reveal the history of and basic principles involved in God's relationship with people.

Genesis provides the historical basis for the rest of the Pentateuch and the Bible. Chapters 1—11 give historical background essential to understanding God's covenant relationship with humankind, and chapters 12—50 record the Abrahamic Covenant and its initial outworking. The Abrahamic Covenant continues to be the basic arrangement by which God brings blessing to humanity throughout the Pentateuch and the rest of the Bible.

"The real theme of the Pentateuch is the selection of Israel from the nations and its consecration to the service of God and His Laws in a divinely appointed land. The central event in the development of this theme is the divine covenant with

---

1See John D. Davis, *Genesis and Semitic Tradition*, pp. 1-22.
2For an extended discussion of Mosaic authorship, see G. Herbert Livingston, *The Pentateuch in its Cultural Environment*, pp. 205-68.
Abraham and its ... promise to make his offspring into the people of God and to give them the land of Canaan as an everlasting inheritance."\(^1\)

"... the book may also be said to be the story of God's free grace in establishing Israel for Himself as His people."\(^2\)

Genesis provides an indispensable prologue to the drama that unfolds in Exodus and the rest of the Pentateuch. The first 11 chapters constitute a prologue to this prologue.

"Two opposite progressions appear in this prologue [chs. 1—11]: (a) God's orderly Creation with its climax in His blessing of man, and (b) the totally disintegrating work of sin with its two greatest curses being the Flood and the dispersion at Babel.\(^3\) The first progression demonstrates God's plan to bring about perfect order from the beginning in spite of what the reader may know of man's experience. The second progression demonstrates the great need of God's intervention to provide the solution for the corrupt human race."\(^4\)

The practical purpose of Genesis is to encourage the reader to trust and obey God. Originally, the purpose was to encourage the Israelites to trust and obey God. Regardless of when Moses may have written Genesis, this was his obvious purpose, as is clear from what he wrote. He wanted to prepare the Israelites for the future by reminding them of the past. This is its function for us today as well. As we read the text, we should continually ask ourselves, "What did this mean to the original readers?" That is what God intended it to mean to us today, not whatever we may think it means. This is one of the cardinal rules of interpreting any piece of literature, including the Bible.

One of Moses' main points in Genesis was that the same God who created Israel had created the universe. And His word was the key instrument in creating both entities. As He had brought order, fullness, and rest to the material world, so He could do for His chosen people. He is the sovereign

---

\(^2\)Leupold, 1:9.
\(^3\)Derek Kidner, *Genesis: An Introduction and Commentary*, p. 13.
of the universe, its ultimate authority. Therefore mankind should trust and obey Him.

THEOLOGY

The real hero of Genesis is the LORD God, and its stories deal with the origin and life of the believing community under His sovereignty.¹

"What gives the Old Testament its force and unity is the affirmation of the sovereignty of God. God is the basis of all things and all that exists only exists by his will."²

"What comes into our minds when we think about God is the most important thing about us."³

"The subject matter of the theology in Genesis is certainly God’s work in establishing Israel as the means of blessing the families of the earth. This book forms the introduction to the Pentateuch's main theme of the founding of the theocracy, that is, the rule of God over all Creation. It presents the origins behind the founding of the theocracy: the promised blessing that Abraham's descendants would be in the land.

"Exodus presents the redemption of the seed out of bondage and the granting of a covenant to them. Leviticus is the manual of ordinances enabling the holy God to dwell among His people by making them holy. Numbers records the military arrangement and census of the tribes in the wilderness, and shows how God preserves His promised blessings from internal and external threats. Deuteronomy presents the renewal of the covenant.

"In the unfolding of this grand program of God, Genesis introduces the reader to the nature of God as the sovereign Lord over the universe who will move heaven and earth to establish His will. He seeks to bless mankind, but does not

¹In these notes, I capitalize LORD when referring to Yahweh, as do many English translations of the Bible.
tolerate disobedience and unbelief. Throughout this revelation the reader learns that 'without faith it is impossible to please God' (Heb. 11:6)."¹

**STRUCTURE**

The structure of Genesis is very clear. The phrase "the generations of" (AV, ESV, *toladot* in Hebrew, from *yalad* meaning "to bear, to generate") occurs ten times (really eleven times since 36:9 repeats 36:1), and in each case it introduces a new section of the book.² The Jews regarded "ten" as the symbolical number of completeness.³

"The person named is not necessarily the main character but is the beginning point of the section that also closes with his death."⁴

The first part of Genesis is introductory, or a prologue, and sets the scene for what follows in the book. An outline of Genesis based on this structure is as follows:

1. Introduction 1:1—2:3
2. The generations of heaven and earth 2:4—4:26
3. The generations of Adam 5:1—6:8
4. The generations of Noah 6:9—9:29
5. The generations of the sons of Noah 10:1—11:9
6. The generations of Shem 11:10-26
7. The generations of Terah 11:27—25:11

---

⁴Longman and Dillard, p. 53.
8. The generations of Ishmael 25:12-18
9. The generations of Isaac 25:19—35:29
10. The generations of Esau 36:1-43
11. The generations of Jacob 37:1—50:26

As noted above, Moses' movement was from the general to the specific throughout the book:

Part I (chs. 1-11): at least 2,000 years
Part II (chs. 12-50): about 300 years
Total: at least 2,300 years

OUTLINE

A full expository outline designed to highlight the relative emphases of the book follows. I shall follow this outline in these notes as I seek to unpack the message of the book. I am translating toledot here as "what became of."

I. Primeval events 1:1—11:26
   A. The story of creation 1:1—2:3
      1. An initial statement of creation 1:1
      2. Conditions at the time of creation 1:2
      3. The six days of creation 1:3-31
      4. The seventh day 2:1-3
   B. What became of the creation 2:4—4:26
      1. The Garden of Eden 2:4—3:24
      2. The murder of Abel 4:1-16
      3. The spread of civilization and sin 4:17-26
   C. What became of Adam 5:1—6:8
      1. The effects of the curse on humanity ch. 5
2. God's sorrow over man's wickedness 6:1-8

D. What became of Noah 6:9—9:29
   1. The Flood 6:9—8:22
   2. The Noahic Covenant 9:1-17
   3. The curse on Canaan 9:18-29

E. What became of Noah's sons 10:1—11:9
   1. The table of nations ch. 10
   2. The dispersion at Babel 11:1-9

F. What became of Shem 11:10-26

II. Patriarchal narratives 11:27—50:26

A. What became of Terah 11:27—25:11
   1. Terah and Abram's obedience 11:27—12:9
   2. Abram in Egypt 12:10-20
   3. Abram's separation from Lot ch. 13
   4. Abram's military victory ch. 14
   5. The Abrahamic covenant ch. 15
   6. The birth of Ishmael ch. 16
   7. The sign of circumcision ch. 17
   8. Yahweh's visit to Abraham 18:1-15
   9. Abraham's intercession for Lot 18:16-33
  10. The destruction of Sodom ch. 19
  11. Abraham’s sojourn at Gerar ch. 20
  12. The birth of Isaac 21:1-21
  13. Abimelech's treaty with Abraham 21:22-34
  14. The sacrifice of Isaac 22:1-19
  15. The descendants of Nahor 22:20-24
  16. The purchase of Sarah's tomb ch. 23
  17. The choice of a bride for Isaac ch. 24

B. What became of Ishmael 25:12-18

C. What became of Isaac 25:19—35:29
   1. Isaac's twin sons 25:19-26
2. The sale of the birthright 25:27-34
3. Isaac and Abimelech 26:1-11
4. Isaac's wells 26:12-33
5. Jacob's deception for Isaac's blessing 26:34—28:9
6. Jacob's vision at Bethel 28:10-22
7. Jacob's marriages and Laban's deception 29:1-30
9. Jacob's new contract with Laban 30:25-43
10. Jacob's flight from Haran ch. 31
11. Jacob's attempt to appease Esau 32:1-21
12. Jacob at the Jabbok 32:22-32
13. Jacob's meeting with Esau and his return to Canaan ch. 33
14. The rape of Dinah and the revenge of Simeon and Levi ch. 34
15. Jacob's return to Bethel ch. 35

D. What became of Esau 36:1—37:1
E. What became of Jacob 37:2—50:26

1. God's choice of Joseph 37:2-11
2. The sale of Joseph into Egypt 37:12-36
3. Judah and Tamar ch. 38
4. Joseph in Potiphar's house ch. 39
5. The prisoners' dreams and Joseph's interpretations ch. 40
6. Pharaoh's dreams and Joseph's interpretation ch. 41
7. Joseph's brothers' first journey into Egypt ch. 42
8. Joseph's brothers' second journey into Egypt ch. 43
9. Joseph's last test and its results ch. 44
10. Joseph's reconciliation with his brothers 45:1-15
11. Israel's move to Egypt 45:16-46:30
13. Jacob's worship in Egypt 47:28—48:22
14. Jacob's blessing of his sons 49:1-28
15. Deaths and a promise yet to be fulfilled 49:29—50:26

1John H. Sailhamer, "Genesis," in Genesis-Numbers, vol. 2 of The Expositor's Bible Commentary, pp. 6-14, has given helpful insights into the purpose and literary form of the Pentateuch, which he based on its structure. See Casper J. Labuschagne, "The Pattern of
MESSAGE

What is the Bible all about? I would state it as follows: God desires to glorify Himself by blessing humankind.

A young boy burst into the living room and announced to his father, "I know what the Bible means!" His father smiled and replied, "What do you mean, you 'know' what the Bible means?" His son replied, "I do know!" "Okay," said the father, "Tell me what the Bible means." "It's easy, Daddy. It stands for 'Basic Information Before Leaving Earth.'"

G. Campbell Morgan summarized the whole Bible by saying that the Old Testament is a revelation of human need, and the New Testament is a revelation of the divine supply that meets that need. He also believed that within the Pentateuch we hear the sigh for a priest, in the historical books we hear a cry for a king, and in the poetical and prophetical books we find the quest for a prophet.¹

The message of the Pentateuch can be stated this way: People can experience God's blessing by trusting Him (believing His Word) and by obeying Him (following His initiative).

I believe Genesis is in the Bible primarily to teach us the following lesson: People can enjoy a personal relationship with God, and thereby realize their own fulfillment as human beings—only through trust in God and obedience to God. This is what I would call the message statement of the book. Genesis reveals that God is faithful to His promises and powerful enough to bring them to fulfillment.

Genesis reveals that God originally intended people to have an immediate (nothing between) relationship with their Creator. Evidences for this are that God made man in His own image (1:26-27). Second, He regarded man as His son (1:28-30). Third, He made man as a special creation (2:7). Fourth, He made man with special care (2:7). And fifth, He consistently demonstrated concern for man's welfare (3:9).

¹G. Campbell Morgan, The Unfolding Message of the Bible, p. 25.
God's immediate relationship with Adam was broken by the Fall (ch. 3). In the Fall, man did two things: First, he failed to trust God's goodness with his mind. And, second, he rebelled against God's authority with his will (3:6).

God then took the initiative to re-establish the relationship with man that He had created man to enjoy. He provided atonement for man's sin until He would finally remove it. This temporary covering came through the sacrificial system. Animal sacrifices covered peoples’ sins adequately, but not completely. A final sacrifice had to be made that would remove our sins permanently. God accepted sacrifices for sin before Calvary like a merchant accepts a credit card in payment for goods or services. A final payment still had to be made, and Christ's death was that final payment.

Throughout Genesis, we see that people in general consistently failed to trust and obey God (e.g., in Noah's day, at Babel, and throughout the patriarchal period).

Genesis also records what God has done to encourage people to trust and obey Him. It is only by living by these two principles, trust and obedience, that people can enjoy a relationship with God and realize all that God created them to experience.

On the one hand, Genesis reveals much about the person and work of God. This revelation helps us to trust and obey Him. It is through His personal revelations to the main characters in Genesis that God revealed Himself initially (e.g., Adam and Eve, Noah, and the patriarchs).

On the other hand, Genesis reveals much about the nature of man. Not only did God reveal the perversity and depravity of fallen man, but He also identified many positive examples of faith and obedience in the lives of the godly.

In Genesis we learn that faith in God is absolutely essential if we are to have fellowship with Him and realize our potential as human beings.

Faith is the law of life. If one lives by faith, he flourishes, but if he does not, he fails. The four patriarchs are primarily examples of what faith is and how it manifests itself. In each of their lives we learn something new about faith.

Abraham's faith demonstrates unquestioning obedience. When God told him to do something, he almost always did it. This is the most basic
characteristic of faith. That is one reason Abraham has been called "the father of the faithful." God revealed Himself nine times to Abraham (12:1-3, 7; 13:14-17; 15; 17:1-21; 18; 21:12-13; 22:1-2; 22:15-18), and each time Abraham's response was unquestioning obedience.

Isaac's faith helps us see the quality of *passive acceptance* that characterizes true faith in God. This was his response to God's two revelations to him (26:2-5, 24). Sometimes Isaac was too passive.

Jacob's story is one of conflict with God until he came to realize his own limitations: *then* he trusted God. We can see his faith in his *acknowledged dependence* on God. God's seven revelations to him eventually led him to this place (28:12-15; 31:3, 11-13; 32:24-29; 35:1, 9-12; 46:2-4). Most believers today can identify with Jacob most easily, because we too struggle with wanting to live independent of God.

Joseph's life teaches us what God can do with a person who trusts Him consistently in the face of adversity. The outstanding characteristic of Joseph's life was his *faithful loyalty* to God. He believed God's two revelations to him in dreams (37:5-7, 9), even though God's will did not seem to be working out as he thought it would. Patient faith and its reward shine through the story of Joseph. The Lord Jesus supremely illustrates this quality of faith, though He also illustrates the others perfectly.

*Faith*, the key concept in Genesis, means trusting that what God has prescribed is indeed best for me, and demonstrating that trust by waiting for God to provide what He has promised. A "person of faith" is one who commits to acting on this basis—even though he or she may not see *how* God's way is best.

The Pentateuch is all about God, man, and our mutual relationship. The key concept in Genesis is faith.\(^1\)

Morgan introduced his comments on Genesis with the following admission:

"How many people have read the Book of Genesis? I do not mean study it. I have been studying it for sixty years and I do not know it yet. Its heights and depths are beyond me and that

---

is the glory of the Bible. It may exhaust you, but you can never
exhaust it."\footnote{Idem, \textit{The Unfolding} ..., p. 25.}

May all the readers of these notes follow Morgan's admirable example of
repeated studying and learning from this great book.
Exposition

I. PRIMEVAL EVENTS 1:1—11:26

Chapters 1—11 provide an introduction to the Book of Genesis, the Pentateuch, and the whole Bible.

"Although the story of the Bible begins in Genesis 12, that is not where the Bible begins. It begins with what we now recognize as a prologue, a preparatory statement, so that we may be informed and equipped to understand the story that follows."¹

"What we find in chaps. 1—11 is the divine initiation of blessing, which is compromised by human sin followed by gracious preservation of the promise: blessing – sin - grace."²

"His [Moses'] theological perspective can be summarized in two points. First, the author intends to draw a line connecting the God of the Fathers and the God of the Sinai covenant with the God who created the world. Second, the author intends to show that the call of the patriarchs and the Sinai covenant have as their ultimate goal the reestablishment of God's original purpose in Creation."³

"Evidently an interest in the way in which the world and humankind came into existence and in the history of the earliest times was characteristic of the ancient civilized world. At any rate, various 'origin stories' or 'creation myths' about the activities of a variety of creator-gods are still extant in what remains of the literatures of ancient Egypt and ancient Mesopotamia. But the combination of such accounts with narratives about more recent times testifies to an additional motivation. The aim of such works was to give their readers—or to strengthen—a sense of national or ethnic identity,

²Mathews, p. 60.
particularly at a time when there was for some reason a degree of uncertainty or hesitation about this ...

"The placing of Gen. 1—11 as a prologue to the main body of the work also afforded the opportunity to express certain distinctively Israelite articles of faith which it would have been more difficult to introduce into the later narratives, particularly with regard to the doctrine of God."¹

"Gen 1—11 as we read it is a commentary, often highly critical, on ideas current in the ancient world about the natural and supernatural world. Both individual stories as well as the final completed work seem to be a polemic against many of the commonly received notions about the gods and man. But the clear polemical thrust of Gen 1—11 must not obscure the fact that at certain points biblical and extrabiblical thought are in clear agreement. Indeed Genesis and the ancient Near East probably have more in common with each other than either has with modern secular thought."²

W. H. Griffith Thomas summed up the contents of the first 11 chapters of Genesis memorably as: creation, corruption, deluge, deliverance, and dispersal.³

A. **The Story of Creation 1:1—2:3**

God created the entire universe, and then formed and filled it, in six "days." He brought order and fullness for humankind to enjoy and to rule over. He then blessed and set apart the seventh day as a memorial of His creative

---


work. The God of Israel, the deliverer of His chosen people, is the Creator of all that exists.

"... Gen 1:1—2:4a is clearly recognizable as a unit of historical narrative. It has an introduction (1:1), a body (1:2—2:3) and a conclusion (2:4a)."

Historical narrative is one of several biblical types of literature (French genre). Other genre include genealogy, poetry, epistolary, and apocalyptic.

"Genre is of crucial importance, since the reader's identification of a text's genre directs his or her reading strategy ..."

"For the most part, its [the Old Testament's] contents may be described under two rubrics: stories and poems."

"It has frequently been recognized that the final shaping of the canonical Pentateuch involves the sorting and placement of material consisting of at least four literary types: narrative, poetry, law, and genealogy."

---

1 Ross, *Creation and Blessing*, has influenced this and subsequent introductory and concluding summaries of the major sections of the text, though I have not always footnoted his views in these summaries.

2 John H. Sailhamer, "Exegetical Notes: Genesis 1:1—2:4a," *Trinity Journal* 5 NS (Spring 1984):74. This article outlines some principles to use in finding the writer's intent and purpose in selecting the events he chose to record in historical narratives. It provides an excellent introduction to the interpretation of historical narrative.


4 Longman and Dillard, p. 29. See ibid., pp. 29-31, for clarification of genre.

5 Ibid., p. 25.

6 John H. Sailhamer, "Genesis," in *Genesis-Leviticus*, vol. 1 of *The Expositor's Bible Commentary*, revised ed., p. 34.
Some scholars understand the stories in Genesis 1—11 to be parables, as the following quotation explains:

"For reasons of clarity and simplicity, the present writer prefers the word parable [when describing the stories in Genesis 1—11]. We are already familiar with this word from Jesus' frequent use of parables as a method of teaching his disciples and the people of his time. Surely no one would accuse Jesus of being false because he told the story of the Good Samaritan or the parable of the Prodigal Son."¹

I do not believe the stories in Genesis 1—11 are parables. Parables are invented stories that picture something that could or might have happened but probably did not really happen (e.g., the Good Samaritan, the Prodigal Son). There seems to be too much evidence that the Creation, Fall, and Flood actually happened to conclude that the stories that Moses told about them, in these chapters, describe things that did not really occur as described. If this is so, then probably the other stories in these chapters are not parables either. Clearly the genealogies in chapters 5, 10, and 11 record the names of real people; they have not been made up simply to teach a lesson. I believe that the stories in chapters 1—11 were revealed by God to Moses, directly or indirectly (from other sources), and that Moses recorded them as historical narrative as the Holy Spirit guided him (cf. Exod. 20:9-11; 31:17; Ps. 8; 104; Matt. 19:4-6; 2 Pet. 3:5; Heb. 4:4).²

"The creation account [in Genesis 1—2] is theocentric, not creature centered. Its purpose is to glorify the Creator by magnifying him through the majesty of the created order. The passage is doxological as well as didactic, hymnic as well as history. 'God' is the grammatical subject of the first sentence (1:1) and continues as the thematic subject throughout the account."³

¹Cochrane, p. 15.
³Mathews, p. 113.
understanding of the nature of God and his relationship with his people."¹

1. **An initial statement of creation 1:1**

"The purpose of the statement is threefold: to identify the Creator, to explain the origin of the world, and to tie the work of God in the past to the work of God in the future."²

There are three major views concerning the relationship of 1:1 to the rest of the creation account.

1. Verse 1 describes God's *original creation* of the universe. Then God began *fashioning* the earth, and it became fully formed, as we now know it, in verse 2 or verse 3. This "double-creation" view may or may not involve a gap in time between verses 1 and 2.³ Some advocates of this view believe that the original creation became chaotic as a result of divine judgment.⁴ More information on this theory follows in my comments on 1:2.

2. Verse 1 describes *part* of what God did on the *first day* of creation (1:1-5). It is a general statement followed by specific details.⁵

3. Verse 1 describes, in very general, introductory terms, the same creation activity that God did on *all six days* of creation (1:2-31).

¹Longman and Dillard, p. 34.
²Sailhamer, "Genesis," revised ed., p. 50.
is a topic sentence that introduces the whole creation account that follows.¹ I prefer this view.

This "beginning" (v. 1) is the beginning of the creation of the cosmos (physical universe), not the beginning of all things (cf. Mark 1:1 and John 1:1 for other beginnings).² This appears to be clear from the context. Genesis has been called "the book of beginnings" because it records the beginning of so many things. Perhaps it would be more accurate to describe it as "the book of foundations."

"Contrary to ancient Near Eastern mythologies, in which the earth had no beginning, and in contrast to Greek philosophical thought, in which the existence of the world from eternity is a basic presupposition, the Genesis cosmology fixes by the use of the phrase 'in the beginning' (bere'sit) an absolute beginning for creation."³

The Hebrew word translated "God" (ʼelohim) is a plural noun. The plurality simply adds intensification to the name El, as does the personal pronoun "us" in verse 26. Hebrew is the only ancient Semitic language that intensifies nouns and pronouns by making them plurals.⁴ The writers of Scripture used ʼelohim as a title of honor. Though it is a plural in form, it is singular in meaning when referring to the true God. This name represents the Creator's transcendent relationship to His creation; He is completely separate from and independent of nature. Some have called this the plural of majesty or "excellency."⁵ Others call it a potential plural.⁶ It emphasizes the fact that the God referred to is the fullness of deity, the only true God.

"The Hebrew word translated 'God' ('elohim) may be used as a plural noun and be translated 'gods.' But when this word is

¹Gerhard von Rad, Genesis, p. 49; George Bush, Notes on Genesis, p. 26; Edward J. Young, Studies in Genesis One, p. 14; Bruce K. Waltke, Creation and Chaos; idem, Genesis, p. 58; Ross, Creation and ..., p. 105; Hamilton, pp. 103-8.
²Quotations from the English Bible in these notes are from the New American Standard Bible (NASB), 2020 edition, unless otherwise indicated.
⁴See Livingston, pp. 53-63, for a discussion of the languages of the ancient Near East.
⁵Milton S. Terry, Biblical Hermeneutics, p. 86.
⁶Leupold, 1:43.
used of true God, then it is not a plural but is an intensified noun, exhausting the meaning of the underlying root ('alah) which means 'to be powerful.' He 'us' [is majestic and great in plurality]. When used of God, this is not really a plural (despite the common translation); it is a similar intensification of the pronoun which describes God."¹

"He goes too far who sees in this plural a direct and explicit reference to the Holy Trinity. ... he who would claim that the term can have no connection with the truth of the Holy Trinity goes too far."²

Theologian A. H. Strong defined God as "the infinitely perfect Spirit in whom all things have their source, support, and end."³

The Hebrew verb *bara‘* ("create") refers only to the living God as its subject in the Bible. God alone is the Creator; no one else shares in the activity of truly creating (*bara‘ing*).⁴ Other Hebrew words are used to describe the creative activities of human beings.

The "heavens and earth" refer to the universe as we know it (i.e., the sky above with all that is in it and the earth below). There is no single word in Hebrew for "universe." "Heavens and earth" is a figure of speech (a merism) for totality; God created everything. A "merism" uses two extremes to represent the whole. The English translators often rendered the Hebrew word *'eres* (earth) as "land." By translating it this way here, we can see that Moses wanted his readers to realize that God created—and therefore owned—all land (cf. 12:7 and all subsequent references to the Promised Land; Ps. 24:1).⁵

"The sublime ideas expressed in this first verse of the Bible set the tone for the entire Genesis cosmology."⁶

This verse is important because it contradicts six popular philosophies:

---

¹Email from Ronald B. Allen, August 31, 2006.
²Leupold, 1:43.
⁴See Ronald B. Allen, *The Majesty of Man*, pp. 181-84, for a study of *bara‘*.
⁵Sailhamer, "Genesis," p. 19.
1. **Atheism**: God does exist.

2. **Pantheism**: God is distinct from His creation.

3. **Polytheism**: "Created" is singular in the text. An obvious difference between the biblical account of creation and those of other ancient Near Eastern cultures is that the biblical account is monotheistic.

4. **Radical materialism (matter is eternal)**: Matter had a supernatural origin (emphasis on origin).

5. **Naturalism (evolutionism)**: Creation took place when Someone outside nature intervened (emphasis on process).

6. **Fatalism**: A personal God freely chose to create.\(^1\)

God created the universe "from nothing" (Latin *ex nihilo*). While the text does not state this fact *per se*, the reader can deduce it from the following evidence. The phrase "in the beginning" implies it, as do the Hebrew word for "create" (*bara*) and the expression "formless and void." New Testament passages also support this conclusion (e.g., John 1:3; Rom. 4:17; Heb. 11:3).\(^2\)

The emphasis in verse 1 is on the origin of the universe. God created it.\(^3\) He alone is eternal, and everything else owes its origin and existence to Him.\(^4\)

### 2. Conditions at the time of creation 1:2

Verse 2 probably describes what we now call the earth in its pre-formed—like a lump of clay—existence, before God gave it form and filled it.\(^5\)

---

\(^1\)See also Baxter, 1:34.


\(^3\)Walter C. Kaiser Jr.'s article, "The Literary Form of Genesis 1—11," in *New Perspectives on the Old Testament*, pp. 48-65, is of great value in understanding and responding to the major critical attacks on Genesis 1—11.


\(^5\)von Rad, pp. 551.
Here "earth" refers to the whole planet, though the same English word also refers to the earth and the heavens (when combined with "heaven," v. 1), and to dry land (v. 10).

In verse 2 we learn that the earth was "a formless and desolate emptiness" (a hendiadys meaning unorganized, unproductive, and uninhabited), before God graciously prepared it for human habitation (cf. Isa. 45:18; Jer. 4:23-27).\(^1\) (A "hendiadys" is a figure of speech, in which the writer expresses a single complex idea by joining two substantives with "and," rather than by using an adjective and a substantive.) Various English translations have rendered this expression "formless and void," "formless and empty," and "without shape and empty."

"... no clear biblical text testifies to the origins of chaos or of the Serpent [3:1], nor to the reason for their existence."\(^2\)

"The Hebrew word [for "darkness"] simply means “darkness,” but in the Bible it has come to symbolize what opposes God, such as judgment (Exod 10:21), death (Ps 88:13), oppression (Isa 9:1), the wicked (1 Sam 2:9) and in general, sin. In Isa 45:7 it parallels “evil.” It is a fitting cover for the primeval waste, but it prepares the reader for the fact that God is about to reveal himself through his works."\(^3\)

"Deep" (Heb. tehom) describes the water-covered planet. In the Old Testament, tehom refers to the ocean(s), which the ancient world regarded as symbolic of chaos and evil, which needed overcoming and which Yahweh overcame. However, its use in the Pentateuch helps us understand the writer's intent in using this term here.

"The thirty-five usages of tehom and its derivative forms in the Old Testament reveal that it is generally 'a poetic term for a large body of water'."\(^4\)

---

\(^1\)In these notes, I have normally quoted the *New American Standard Bible*, 2020 edition, unless otherwise noted.
\(^3\)The NET2 (*New English Translation*, second ed.) Bible note on v. 2.
\(^4\)Hasel and Hasel, p. 17. Their quotation is from Mary K. Wakeman, *God's Battle with the Monster: A Study in Biblical Imagery*, p. 86.
"... he calls the global ocean (the 'deep') in 1:2 a 'desert.' This is not apparent in the English translation 'formless,' but the NASB notes it in the margin as a 'wasteland.' Moses uses this term (Deut 32:10) to describe the desert wasteland where Israel wandered for forty years. Why call an ocean a desert? What better way to teach the people that the God who will lead them out of the wilderness and give them the promised land is the same God who once prepared the land for them by dividing the waters and producing the 'dry land'? The God of the Pentateuch is One who leads his people from the wasteland to the promised land."\(^1\)

Some scholars believe that references to "the Spirit" of God in the Old Testament indicate the power or influence of God, not the Third Person of the Trinity. Some conservative scholars believe that, even though the Spirit was actually the Third Person of the Trinity, people living during the Old Testament period did not associate the Spirit with God Himself. They supposedly thought of the Spirit as a power or influence of God. However, there are several indications in the Old Testament that some informed Israelites identified "the Spirit" as God (cf. Gen. 1:2; 2 Kings 2:9; Ps. 104:30; Ezek. 3:12-14; 11:1; Zech. 4:6).\(^2\) Alexander Hislop has shown that many of the ancient religions believed in a three-in-one god.\(^3\)

On the basis of comparison with Deuteronomy 32:11 and the Aqhat Epic, W. F. Albright believed that "hovering over" would better read "soaring," like an eagle.\(^4\) Moses pictured the Holy Spirit as a wind—the words are identical in Hebrew—moving over the unorganized creation. As God did His work of creating by means of His Spirit, so also we believers are to do our work by His Spirit (Zech. 4:6; Rom. 8; Eph. 5:18).

"Waters" is also capable of being interpreted the same way as "deep." It probably refers to what covered the earth, but it also implies chaos.

---

\(^1\)Sailhamer, "Exegetical Notes ....," pp. 80-81.
\(^3\)Alexander Hislop, The Two Babylons, pp. 12-19.
"Hitherto all is static, lifeless, immobile. Motion, which is the essential element in change, originates with God’s dynamic presence."\(^1\)

"We should not be averse to holding that the foundation for all physical laws operative in the world now was held by this preparatory activity."\(^2\)

Verse 2 seems to me to describe conditions that existed before God created the earth. Whereas verse 1 summarizes the entire creation of the universe, verse 2 pictures its pre-creation condition. Verses 3-31 explain the process of creation by which God formed what was formless and filled what was void.

There are two basic theories of the creation process that have grown out of interpretations of verse 2:

**The Gap Theory**

**Statement:** The *classic* statement of this theory contains the following ideas, though there have been many variations of this theory.

1. There is an indefinite time gap (hence the name of the theory) between 1:1 and 1:2.
2. Verse 1 reveals the creation of a perfect heaven and earth very different from what we see around us now.
3. A pre-adamic race of humans inhabited this original creation.
4. Lucifer (unfallen Satan), whose "headquarters" was in the Garden of Eden, ruled over this race of people.
5. When Lucifer rebelled—many advocates see this in Isaiah 14 and/or Ezekiel 28—sin entered the world.

---

\(^1\) Nahum Sarna, *Understanding Genesis*, p. 7.
\(^2\) Leupold, 1:50.
6. Part of God's judgment of this rebellion was the destruction of the earth with a flood (in Noah's day) followed by a global ice age, which accounts for the fossils.¹

**History:** This is a very old theory that certain early Jewish writers and some church fathers held. Thomas Chalmers promoted it in 1814.² Chalmers' purpose was to harmonize Scripture with science.³ Charles Darwin's *Origin of Species* first appeared in 1859, but Chalmers published his theory earlier: in 1814. Franz Delitzsch supported it in 1899.⁴ G. H. Pember's book *Earth's Ancient Ages*, published in 1884, gave further impetus to this view. Many Christian geologists favored the view because they saw in it "an easy explanation for the fossil strata."⁵ Harry Rimmer supported it,⁶ as did J. N. Darby,⁷ Arno Gaebelein,⁸ and Arthur W. Pink.⁹ Lewis Sperry Chafer held it,¹⁰ but he did not emphasize it. Arthur Custance is one writer who has defended it fairly recently.¹¹

**Arguments and Responses:**

1. The first word in verse 2 (Heb. *waw*, "and") is a conjunction that indicates consecutive occurrences. (This verbal form, by the way, is the basic characteristic of narrative in the Hebrew Bible.¹²) *Waw* introduces something that happened after what precedes. Response. The verb tense and word order in this sentence do not permit this

²See Chalmers, 1:1.
⁵Whitcomb and Morris, p. 93. See pp. 89-115, for a history of attempts to harmonize uniformitarianism and the Flood.
⁸Gaebelein, 1:1:16-17.
¹⁰Chafer, 6:67.
¹²Longman and Dillard, p. 54.
use of this conjunction (vv. 1-2). Rather here, as is normal, the conjunction indicates a break in the consecutive order of events and introduces a circumstantial (independent) clause (v. 2) that describes something in a preceding clause (v. 1). This is a waw disjunctive, not a waw consecutive. A better translation of the waw would be "now," as some English translations have it (e.g., the NIV, the TNIV, and the HCSB). In short, the Hebrew grammar does not support a chronological gap between verses 1 and 2.

2. The verb (hayata, "was") can and should read "became." The translators have rendered it this way in many other places in the Old Testament. Response. This is a legitimate translation, but "became" is not always the best translation (cf. Jonah 3:3; Zech. 3:3). Here the translation should be "was."

3. The chaos (tohu wa bohu, "a formless and desolate emptiness") describes an evil condition (cf. Isa. 24:1; 45:18; Jer. 4:23). Response. This is usually the case, but not always (cf. Deut. 32:10; Job 6:18; 12:24; 26:7; Ps. 107:40). It is not so here.

4. "Darkness" is a symbol of evil in Scripture (cf. 1 John 1:5; et al.). This supports the badness of the condition that resulted from Satan's rebellion. Response. This is true in some cases, but not always (cf. Ps. 104:19-24). Furthermore, "evening" was part of the days God declared "good."

5. The two primary words for "create" (bara' and asah, used respectively in 1:1 and 1:25) refer to two different kinds of creativity. Bara' usually refers to primary creative activity. Since Moses used bara' in 1:1, this was the original creation—and not just a general description of the process that follows (in 1:3-5 or 1:3-31). If 1:1 were a general description, he would have used asah, since some of what God created in the six days He formed out of previously existing material (e.g., man and woman). Response. These two words are not so distinct. For example, Moses used bara' of the creation of man out of previously existing material (1:27), and he used asah of the whole creation as the primary creative activity of God (Exod.

---

Furthermore, he used *bara*’ of the creation of some animals (1:21) and *asah* of the creation of other animals (1:25). The real difference between these two words is that Moses used *bara*’ only of divine activity, and he used *asah* of both divine and human activities.\(^1\) Thus, *bara*’ and *asah* are very close together in meaning. We should not distinguish them on the basis of *bara*’ describing primary creative activity and *asah* referring to the reforming of previously existing material.

6. Adam was to "replenish" the earth (1:28, AV), implying a previous race. **Response.** The Hebrew word used means "fill," not "refill." Many modern English translations so render it.

**Summary:** Though many evangelicals still hold the gap theory, few Hebrew scholars do, because the Hebrew grammar does not favor a chronologically sequential reading of verses 1 and 2. Rather, verse 2 in some way clarifies verse 1.\(^2\)

**THE NO-GAP THEORY**

The crux of the 1:2 interpretive problem lies in the identification of the chaos (*tohu wa bohu*, "a formless and desolate emptiness") mentioned in this verse. There have been three primary views concerning this condition:

1. **The chaos was a condition that resulted after God judged the earth that He had originally created good.**\(^3\)

**Explanation:** 1:1 refers to God’s original creation of the universe. 1:2 is a reference to the form He gave it thereafter. 1:3 refers to the beginning of the process of reforming the judged earth into the form in which we know it.

**Vocabulary:** We should translate the first word in the verse (*waw*) "and" or "then" (not preferable grammatically) and the verb (*hayeta*) "became"

---


\(^2\) For a good explanation of the gap theory, as well as the atheistic evolution, theistic evolution, progressive creation, and fiat creation views, see James M. Boice, *Genesis*, 1:37-68. See also Henry M. Morris, "The Gap Theory," *Creation Ex Nihilo* 10:1 (December 1987-February 1988):35-37; Ham, et al., pp. 16, 157-75; Davidson, pp. 87-102.

\(^3\) Advocates include Chalmers 1:1-2; Keil and Delitzsch, 1:49; Pember, pp. 33-77; C. I. Scofield, *The Scofield Reference Bible*, footnotes on Gen. 1:1 and 2; Custance, pp. 1-8.
(possible but not preferable). We should interpret the chaos (*tohu wa bohu*) as an evil condition (not necessarily so).

**Sequence:** This interpretation permits, but does not require, a gap in time between 1:1 and 1:2.

2. **The chaos was the condition that characterized the earth when God created it good.**

**Explanation:** 1:1 states the creation of the universe as we know it, and it is a general statement of creation. 1:2 describes the earth at the time of its creation. 1:3 describes God bringing order out of chaos, which continued through the six creative days.

**Vocabulary:** We should translate *waw* "now" (better) and *hayeta* "was" (also better). We should also take *tohu wa bohu* to mean either unformed or evil.

**Sequence:** This interpretation involves no gap in time between 1:1 and 1:2.

3. **The chaos existed before God began creating the earth good.**

**Explanation:** We should take 1:1 the same as in view 2. 1:2 describes conditions as they existed before creation. We should also take 1:3 the same as in view 2.

**Vocabulary:** Advocates translate and interpret the key Hebrew words the same as in view 2.

**Sequence:** This interpretation involves no gap in time between 1:1 and 1:2.

---


"... the disjuncture at v 2 is employed by the author to focus his creation account upon the land."¹

The more popular theory among evangelicals now is the no-gap theory in either one of the last two forms described above. Let me restate these last two views:

1. **View 2 above**: God created the earth in a formless and void state. He then proceeded to give it form and to fill it.

   "We would affirm that the first verse serves as a broad comprehensive statement of the fact of creation. Verse two describes the earth as it came from the hands of the Creator and as it existed at the time when God commanded the light to shine forth. The first recorded step in the process of fashioning the earth into the form in which it now appears was God's remarkable utterance, 'Let there be light' [verse 3]."²

   **Problem**: It seems unusual that God would create the earth formless and then form it. It seems more likely and consistent with His activity in 1:3-31 that He would create it fully formed.³

   **Answer**: The whole process of creation in 1:3-31 is a movement from a more primitive to a more advanced stage of existence. I prefer this view.

2. **View 3 above**: Before God created the earth there was nothing where it now exists, and verse 2 describes that nothingness.⁴

   **Problem**: Some terms in verse 2 (darkness, surface, deep, waters) imply that something existed at this time, suggesting some creative activity before verse 3.

   **Answers**: Verse 1 may be part of the first day of creation. Moses may have used these terms to describe, in terms that we can begin to understand (i.e., figurative terms), a condition that is entirely foreign and incomprehensible to us.

---

¹Idem, "Exegetical Notes ...," p. 77.
²Young, p. 14. See also Berkhof, pp. 158-59.
3. **The six days of creation 1:3-31**

Explaining the bringing of cosmic order out of chaos involved clearly demarcating the various elements of the universe. God divided light and darkness, waters and dry land, the world above from the world below. Likewise people should observe and maintain other divisions in the universe, such as things that God has separated in the moral realm.¹

In the first three "days," God made the uninhabitable earth productive, and in the last three "days," He filled the uninhabited earth with life. The process of creation, as Moses described it, typically follows this pattern for each day of creation: announcement, commandment, separation, report, naming, evaluation, and chronological framework.²

One writer sought to retain six literal days of creation and to harmonize them with an old age earth model, allowing a long period of time (possibly billions of years) between Gen. 1:2 and 3.³ However, this explanation does violence to the Hebrew text.⁴

**The first day 1:3-5**

1:3 The world came into being by God’s spoken word (cf. Ps. 33:9; Heb. 11:3). Each of the six creative days began with God speaking.

"The phrases 'the Lord said', 'the Lord spake', 'the word of the Lord came', are actually used 3,808 times in the Old Testament."⁵

This is a powerful testimony to the authority of the spoken word of God and the written Word of God: Scripture.

"The goal of divine action is to maintain and to create life; to achieve this aim Yahweh chiefly avails himself of two means which we encounter

---

¹See Mathews, p. 124.
²Waltke, *Genesis*, p. 56.
³Gorman Gray, *The Age of the Universe: What Are the Biblical Limits?*
⁵D. Martyn Lloyd-Jones, *Authority*, p. 50.
in varying intensities in all the realms of his manifestation: the Spirit [v. 2] and the Word."\(^1\)

"The creation of light on the first day by word of mouth (Gen. 1:3-5) is without parallel in Mesopotamian and Egyptian mythology."\(^2\)

God's ten pronouncements in this chapter anticipate His ten commandments at Mt. Sinai (Exod. 20:2-17). All but one of Jesus Christ's miracles occurred immediately after He spoke. The exception occurs in Mark 8:25 when He laid His hands on a blind man. Jesus Christ, the Word of God, was God's agent in creation; He was the Creator (John 1:3). The theme of God's word (spoken, written, or incarnate) continues throughout the Bible. His word is consistently powerful, as here. *Fiat* (the Latin word for "Let there be") creation means creation that came into being by God's word.

"The idea of creation by the word preserves first of all the most radical essential distinction between Creator and creature. Creation cannot be even remotely considered an emanation from God; it is not somehow an overflow or reflection of his being, i.e., of his divine nature, but is rather a product of his personal will."\(^3\)

"This creative word is different from any human word; it is not 'empty' (Gen. 32:47; Isa. 55:11), but powerful and of the highest creative potency. In the second place, therefore, this conception contains the knowledge that the world wholly belongs to God; it is the creation of his will, and he is its Lord."\(^4\)

The "light" might not have been sunlight (cf. v. 14). Perhaps it came from a source fixed at a distance from the earth, such as the *shekinah*, the light that manifests God's glory (cf. Rev.

---

1. Jacob, p. 121.
4. Ibid., p. 52.
22:5).\(^1\) Perhaps God created the sun on the first day, but it became visible on the fourth day.\(^2\)

"The week thus begins with the sunrise in v. 3, 'and there was light.'"\(^3\)

A third view is that God created the sun, moon, and stars on the first day and assigned them their specific functions on the fourth day (cf. vv. 14-18).\(^4\)

"The Oriental ... did not think of light and darkness exclusively in connection with the heavenly bodies (Job 38:19-20)."\(^5\)

"The eternal city will enjoy endless light without the help of the sun or moon (Rev. 22:5), so why couldn't there be light at the beginning of time before the luminaries were made?"\(^6\)

A principle theme of the Bible appears here. God is the One who brings light into darkness. Here He produced physical light, but later He sent His Son to be the Light of the World (John 8:12). In the future, there will be no darkness at all (Rev. 21:23).\(^7\)

1:4

"Darkness" was not a creation, like light, but rather the absence of light (cf. v. 2). As previously noted, darkness (Heb. hosek) in Scripture often connotes evil (cf. Exod. 10:21-23; 1 Sam. 2:9; Job 3:4, 5; Ps. 35:6; Joel 2:2).

The Hebrew word translated "good" (tob) refers more to purpose and harmony (i.e., in keeping with God’s will) than to aesthetic beauty.\(^8\) Moses presented God as wise, knowing what was good for man, and as loving, providing those good

---

\(^1\) Hamilton, p. 121.
\(^3\) Ibid., "Genesis," revised ed., p. 56.
\(^4\) See Ibid., "Genesis," pp. 33-34.
\(^5\) von Rad, p. 50.
\(^6\) Warren W. Wiersbe, *The Bible Exposition Commentary/Pentateuch*, p. 16
\(^7\) *The Nelson Study Bible*, p. 4; Waltke; *An Old ..., p. 213*.
\(^8\) von Rad, p. 52.
things for him. This not only reveals aspects of the Creator's character, but it also prepares the reader for the tragedy of the Fall (ch. 3).

1:5 God named things ("called" them such and such), in addition to creating them. Having a name equals having existence, in biblical thought, and the act of giving a name meant the exercise of a sovereign right (cf. 41:45; 2 Kings 24:17; Dan. 1:7). In this chapter, naming or blessing follows some act of creation—seven times. The Israelites regarded the number "seven" as connoting a complete, divine act, as will become clearer later.

The terms "day," "night," "evening," and "morning" imply the beginning of the earth's rotation on the first day. The use of the Hebrew word 'ehad ("one" [first] day; cf. "second day," "third day," etc.) as an ordinal number also supports this view. The Jews reckoned the beginning of a day with the evening (the setting of the sun) rather than the morning (the rising of the sun). It is probable, therefore, that by "evening" Moses meant "beginning," and that by "morning" he meant "ending."

"A few years ago in England some Christians became excited about the Big Bang theory, thinking that it favored Christianity. But they really missed the point—either the point of Scripture or the Big Bang theory or both. The simple fact is that what is given in Genesis 1:1 has no relationship to the Big Bang theory—because from the scriptural viewpoint, the primal creation goes back beyond the basic material or energy. We have a new thing created by God out of nothing [Lat. ex nihilo] by fiat [formal decree], and this is the distinction."

---

1Leupold, 1:56, 69. See my further comments on 2:3.
2See Andrew E. Steinmann, "'Ehad as an Ordinal Number and the Meaning of Genesis 1:5," Journal of the Evangelical Theological Society 45:4 (December 2002):577-84. Ordinal numbers express order (e.g., first, second, third, etc.) whereas cardinal numbers are used in counting (e.g., one, two, three, etc.).
3Frances A. Schaeffer, Genesis in Time and Space, pp. 28-29.
Nevertheless, though it is not the same, "The Big Bang theory sounds very much like the story that the Old Testament has been telling a long time."¹

From the beginning God made divisions. He later divided the clean from the unclean, the holy from the profane, the Holy Place from the Holy of Holies, and Israel from the nations. This shows His sovereignty (i.e., ultimate authority). And it shows that He intended that some things should remain separate and distinct from other things. This is important to note since some radicals advocate that we should do away with all distinctions under the banner of "equality."²

The second day 1:6-8

1:6 The "expanse" (Heb. raqia') refers to the heavens above the earth (lit. "something stretched out"; i.e., the sky, comprising the atmosphere, the solar system, and the universe beyond). Some English translators have rendered this Hebrew word "firmament" (AV, from the Latin firmamentum), or "vault" (TNIV). God placed the sun, moon, and stars in it (vv. 16-17). The ancients grouped the stars and planets together, referring to the former as fixed stars and the latter as wandering stars (cf. Jude 13).

1:7 God "separated the waters," so that some of them remained on the earth in a liquid state, and some above the earth as moisture in the atmosphere, probably as clouds, but not as a celestial ocean of solid water above the earth.³ Before God made this division, there may have been a dense fog over the whole surface of the earth.⁴

---

²See Erwin W. Lutzer, *We Will Not Be Silenced*.
⁴Leupold, 1:59. See my comments on the "canopy theory" at 2:4-6.
1:8  "Heaven" is the same as the "expanse." Moses used it here as a general term to describe everything above the earth from man's viewpoint (v. 8).

**The third day 1:9-13**

1:9  "The waters below the heavens" (Heb. *yammim*) probably refers broadly to all bodies of water, not just oceans. Gathering them into one place does not mean that all the bodies of water were one huge ocean necessarily, but that God separated the bodies of water on the earth from the dry land on the earth.

"... what we call geologic formations took place in titanic and gigantic measure at a vastly accelerated pace in a truly miraculous creative work as astounding as the rest."

1:10  The separation of water from the land, so that man could enjoy the land, prepares us for the stories of the Flood (chs. 6—9) and the Red Sea crossing (Exod. 14—15). God later used the waters as His instrument to judge those who opposed His will. The "waters" were an obstacle to man's enjoying the land, so God removed them from the land. Even though the Hebrew word *`eres* ("earth") appears in both this verse and verse 1, it does not refer to the same thing in both cases. In verse 1 it refers to the entire planet Earth, but in this verse it refers to dry land in contrast to oceans.

"Good" (Heb. *tob*) indicates beauty as well as purpose and order. Here it is not good as opposed to evil, since evil was then unknown, but good in the sense of pleasing to God. It was only when the land was ready for man that God called it good. This shows God's loving concern for human beings. The land was good for people. A good God provided a good land for good people.

1:11  Moses described the "plants yielding seed, and fruit trees ... bearing fruit according to their kind with seed in them."

---

1Ibid., 1:64.
3Cochrane, p. 28.
Perhaps he did so because these are the plants that provide food and shelter for man. He created others, of course, but Moses may have been stressing God's care for humans. Another possibility is that "plants" and "trees" encompass all "vegetation."

Since God created "plants yielding seed," the original creation evidently had the appearance of age. He created trees with rings and Adam as an adult. The presence of "seed" also shows that God intended the vegetation to reproduce.

1:12 "Kind" (Heb. min) is not a biologically exact term. It indicates that God created several different families of plants as separate acts of creation (cf. vv. 21, 24-25; 6:20; 7:14; Lev. 11:14-29; Deut. 14:13-18). All plants, therefore, did not evolve from one. Creationists generally affirm microevolution (the development of different varieties of plants and animals through crossbreeding), but deny macroevolution (the development of all plants from one plant, animals from plants, and humans from animals).

"With the conclusion of the third day yet another color is added to God's cosmos. To the basic white and black of day and night has been added the blue of sky and sea. Now the canvas is adorned with green. The golden-yellow sun and the reddish human being will complete this rainbow of colors."

Note that on the first and second days, God did one creative work each day: He created light and the firmament. On the third day, He did two works: He created the land and vegetation. Similarly, on the fourth and fifth days, God did one work each day: He created the lights and their functions on the fourth day, and the birds and fish on the fifth day. Then on the sixth day, He again did two works: He created the land animals and man. On the first three days He gave form to what was formless, and on the last three days He filled what was void. On the first three days He created motionless

---

1 See Pieters, pp. 23-24.
3 See Pieters, pp. 52-54, for quotations from 10 scientists who reject human evolution.
4 Hamilton, p. 126.
5 Ibid., p. 125.
objects, and on the last three days He created objects that move or appear to move.

"Both vegetation and humanity, symbolizing the fertility of life, were considered pinnacles of creation in the ancient Near East. The first triad [of days] ends climactically with the creation of vegetation; the second, the creation of humanity."¹

The fourth day 1:14-19

The luminaries (lights, objects that shine) served four purposes.

1. They distinguished day from night.
2. They provided signs.
3. They distinguished the seasons.
4. They illuminated the earth.

"The narrative stresses their function as servants, subordinate to the interests of the earth ... This differs significantly from the superstitious belief within pagan religion that the earth's destiny is dictated by the course of the stars."²

"Here is a stern warning for our times for any who would seek the stars in charting their lives."³

"The term 'signs' has been given special attention by the author elsewhere in the Pentateuch. For example, the so-called 'plagues' of Egypt are, in fact, called 'signs' by the author of the Pentateuch (e.g., Deut 29:2-3). The meaning given this term in the Exod account ... is that the acts of God in the bringing of disorder upon the Egyptians were 'signs' that God was more powerful and majestic than the Egyptians' gods. This sense of the term 'signs' fits well in Gen 1:14. The author says that not only are the sun and moon to give light upon the land but they are to be visual reminders of the power and majesty of God. They are 'signs' of who the God of the covenant is.

¹Waltke, Genesis, p. 36.
²Mathews, p. 154.
³Ibid., p. 155.
The [sic] are 'telling of the glory of God,' as the psalmist puts it (Ps 19:1). Not only does the term 'signs' serve as a reminder of the greatness and glory of God for the author of the Pentateuch, 'signs' are also a frequent reminder in the Pentateuch of his grace and mercy (Gen 4, 9, 17).”

Moses did not mean that these signs were the signs of the zodiac or astrological signs.

"Rather, the Hebrew text reads, 'And God said, "Let the lights in the expanse of the sky be for separating...."' In other words, in v. 14 God's command assumes that the lights are already in the expanse, and in response to his command the lights are given a purpose, namely, 'to separate the day from the night' and 'to mark the seasons and days and years.'"

The Hebrew word translated "seasons" (v. 14) appears elsewhere in the Pentateuch. It means "appointments," but the translators have also rendered it "feasts" in Leviticus.

"They [the sun and moon] were not mere lights or reminders of God's glory, they were, as well, calendars for the celebration of the covenant. The world is made for the [Mosaic] covenant. Already at creation, the land was being prepared for the covenant."

Why did Moses use the terms "greater" and "lesser light(s)" to describe the sun and moon (v. 16)? He probably did so, not just because of their relative size, but because these Hebrew words, which are very similar in other Semitic languages, are also the names of pagan gods. He wanted the Israelites to appreciate the fact that their God had created the entities their pagan neighbors worshipped as gods.

---

1 Sailhamer, "Exegetical Notes ....," p. 79.
3 Ibid., p. 80.
"... the biblical creation story gives the stars only the barest mention, as though the writer shrugged and said, 'And, oh, yes. He also made the stars.'"\(^1\)

"This, the fourth day, is the only day on which no divine word subsequent to the fulfillment is added. On days 1-3 this divine word names the created objects (vv 5, 8, 10); on days 5-6 the creatures are blessed (vv 22, 28). The omission may be just elegant stylistic variation, or it may be a deliberate attempt to avoid naming 'sun' and 'moon' with their connotations of deity."\(^2\)

The writer's perspective throughout is earth-oriented. He used phenomenological language (of appearance) that is very common in the Old Testament. Even modern scientific textbooks use such language without fear of being criticized as unscientific, when they refer to "sunrise," "sunset," etc. Moses and the other biblical writers did not believe that the earth was at the center of the universe and that the sun revolved around the earth.

"Where has the interpretation arisen that the Bible presents [such] a geocentric picture? This arose in the post-New Testament times when leading theologians adopted the Ptolemaic cosmology of the second century AD and interpreted the Bible on the basis of this nonbiblical cosmology."\(^3\)

Probably God created light on the first day (v. 3), but then on the fourth day the sun, moon, and stars appeared distinctly for the first time.\(^4\) Another view is that, since God did not create the sun and moon until the fourth day, we should understand the "days" of creation as longer than 24-hour days.\(^5\) Still another view is that God created the sun, moon, and stars on the first day, but they did not become bearers of light (luminaries) until the fourth day.\(^6\)

---

1. The Nelson ..., p. 5.
2. Wenham, p. 23.
4. Pieters, p. 40; Sailhamer, The Pentateuch as Narrative, p. 93; McGee, 1:15.
Creationists have proposed several solutions to the problem, of how light from stars that are millions of light-years away, could get to Adam if the universe was only days old. These explanations are too involved to discuss here, but I have included some sources for further study in the following footnote.¹ I think the best explanation is the appearance of age. As God created humans, plants, and animals fully formed, so He created the light from distant stars already visible on the earth.

**The fifth day 1:20-23**

"Great sea monsters" (Heb. tauninim, v. 21) were large fish, whales, squid, and all large creatures living in the water (cf. Ps. 104:25-26). The pagans worshipped these, but they are under God's authority. The Old Testament writers adopted pagan imagery, but not pagan theology. The selection of these large creatures for mention may also have been for the purpose of balance: to show that God made all creatures, great and small.²

Note that Moses wrote that God created both marine animals and birds on the same "day." Evolution claims that birds evolved from reptiles, and that this process took millions of years.

"The blessing of God is one of the great unifying themes of Genesis. God blesses animals (1:22), mankind (1:28), the Sabbath (2:3), Adam (5:2), Noah (9:1), and frequently the patriarchs (12:2-3; 17:16, 20, etc.). God's blessing is most obviously visible in the gift of children, as this is often coupled with 'being fruitful and multiplying.' But all aspects of life can express this blessing: crops, family, and nation (Deut 28:1-14). Where modern man talks of success, OT man talked of blessing."³

Interestingly, this first mention of God's blessing—"God blessed them" (v. 22)—refers to fish and birds! These creatures also had the capability to

---

¹D. Russell Humphreys, *Starlight and Time*, discussed five creationist models. See also Ham, et al., pp. 18, 187-95; and "Distant Starlight' Not a Problem for a Young Universe" DVD featuring Dr. Jason Lisle.
³Wenham, p. 24.
reproduce themselves (cf. v. 12). Birds and fish rule their respective realms by multiplying.¹

The sixth day 1:24-31

1:24-25 "Creature[s]" (v. 24) translates the Hebrew word nephesh, which is usually translated "soul" (e.g., 2:7). This Hebrew word and the English "soul" imply conscious life, in contrast to plants that have unconscious life. So in the sense of having conscious life, animals as well as people have souls.

"Livestock" (v. 24) refers to domesticated animals (that man could tame), and "animals" refers to wild animals.

What happened to the dinosaurs? Conservative Bible interpreters generally believe they existed, having been created along with the other animals, but that they became extinct, either before the Flood or after it.

"Before the Flood, dinosaurs and man lived together on our planet. Extinction of the great marine reptiles, along with the majority of all other types of sea creature, would have been caused by the violent upheavals of the Flood, many being buried and preserved as fossils."²

1:26-27 "Us" (v. 26) is probably a plural of intensification (or potentiality or majesty; see my comment on verse 1 above), though some regard it as a plural of self-deliberation (cf. 11:7; Ps. 2:3).³ Others believe that God was addressing His heavenly court (cf. Isa. 6:8).⁴ However, "us" does not include the angels, since God made man in His image alone—not also in the image of angels. "Us" gives us another hint—and it is only a hint at this point—that God is a triune being (cf. v. 1, "Elohim"). As Scripture unfolds, it becomes clear that God is indeed a triune being. God the Father may have been addressing the other two members of the Trinity. (This is an

¹Waltke, Genesis, p. 63.
²Ham, et al., p. 10. See also pp. 21-39; Whitcomb and Morris, pp. 279-81.
³E.g., Claus Westermann, Genesis 1—11, p. 145.
⁴The NET2 Bible note on 1:26.
anthropomorphism: a description of God in human terms, in this case doing something that humans do.\(^1\) However, we should not use this verse as a formal proof of the Trinity, since this reference by itself does not prove that one God exists in three persons.\(^2\)

"Although the Christian Trinity cannot be derived solely from the use of the plural, a plurality within the unity of the Godhead may be derived from the passage."\(^3\)

Some feminists have restricted the use of "man" (v. 26; AV and some other translations) to males, but this is not the primary meaning of the English word. Its primary meaning is "human being" or "human race," according to the standard Oxford dictionaries. Likewise "mankind" normally means "the human race" or "humanity," unless it is in contrast to "womankind." The Hebrew word \textit{adam} also has a broad range of meaning, from "the human race" to "Adam." Consequently I have used these English words, trusting that the reader will interpret them in harmony with their customary meanings.

The theological controversy in Moses' day was not between trinitarianism and unitarianism but between one self-existent, sovereign, good God—and many limited, capricious, often wicked gods.\(^4\)

What does being made in the image of God involve? We can learn this from the context. God created all the plants and animals with the capacity to reproduce "after their (or its) kind" (vv. 11, 12 [twice], 21, 24 [twice], 25 [twice]). Oak trees bring forth little oak trees, dogs reproduce little dogs, etc. Likewise, a personal God created persons.\(^5\) But man was


\(^{5}\)Cochrane, p. 27.
also made to rule "over all the earth" (the plants and animals, v. 28). So God not only created mankind (male and female, v. 27) with the ability to "be fruitful and multiply" (v. 28), but He created human beings so that they could also carry out His desires. Thus the image of God involves the capacity to interact with God in order to serve as His representative ruler on earth.¹

"Morally responsible personality is what is meant by 'the image of God.' ... Personality involves three things: self-consciousness, reasoning power, and moral sense. In other words, any being that can say to himself: 'I am, I ought, I will,' is made in the image of God."²

Parents not only produce a child physically, but they normally desire that their child will carry out their desires. The child bears the image or likeness of the parent both in how he or she looks and in how he or she behaves: in his or her obedience to the will of the parent. Children who follow in their parents' footsteps by their obedience really reflect the image of their parents. Just so, Adam and Eve were created to represent God by carrying out His desires and will and so reveal His image.

"Image and likeness, means an image which is like. The simple declaration of the Scripture is that man at his creation was like God."³

Does the image of God in man include man's body?

"Most theologians have recognized that that [sic] we cannot interpret it [i.e., the phrase 'the image of God'] literally—that is, that man's physical being is in the image of God. Such an interpretation should be rejected for at least four reasons. In the first place, we are told elsewhere that God is a spirit (John 4:24; Isa. 31:3) and that

²Pieters, p. 47. See also The Theological Wordbook, s.v. "Image of God," by John A. Witmer, pp. 177-79.
³Hodge, 2:96.
he is ubiquitous [present everywhere] (1 Kgs. 8:27). In the second place, a literal interpretation would leave us with all sorts of bizarre questions. If man's physical being is in the image of God we would immediately wonder what, if any organs, God possesses. Does he have sexual organs, and if so, which? Does he have the form of a man, or of a woman, or both? The very absurdity that God is a sexual being renders this interpretation highly unlikely. Thirdly, it seems unlikely that man's dignity above the rest of the animals (Gen. 9:5 f.; Jas. 3:7-9) is due to his slight physiological differences from them. Is it credible that animals may be killed but that man may not be killed because his stature is slightly different? Finally, a literal interpretation seems not only contradictory to the rest of Scripture, and unlikely, but also inappropriate, Gardener aptly observed: 'But our anatomy and physiology is demanded by our terrestrial habitat, and quite inappropriate to the one who inhabits eternity.' For these reasons, theologians have concluded that the statement in Genesis 1:26-28 must be metaphorical of man's spiritual or immaterial nature."¹

"... although God's glory shines forth in the outer man, yet there is no doubt that the proper seat of his image is in the soul."²

"People are created as (not in) the image of God so that they can have dominion over all things as God's surrogates (1:26-28; see also Ps. 8)."³

---


²Calvin, 1:15:3. See also 1:15:4.

"First, God's deliberation [in v. 26] shows that he has decided to create man differently from any of the other creatures—in his image and likeness. God and man share a likeness that is not shared by other creatures. This apparently means that a relationship of close fellowship can exist between God and man that is unlike the relationship of God with the rest of his creation. What more important fact about God and man would be necessary if the covenant at Sinai were, in fact, to be a real relationship? Remove this and the covenant is unthinkable.

"Secondly, in Gen 1, man, the image bearer, is the object of God's blessing. According to the account of creation in Gen 1, the chief purpose of God in creating man is to bless him. The impact of this point on the remainder of the Pentateuch and the author's view of Sinai is clear: through Abraham, Israel and the covenant this blessing is to be restored to all mankind."¹

People ("them," v. 26) are to rule over all that God has made (fish, birds, cattle, etc.) as God would: wisely and prudently.

"Whatever true scientific endeavor has produced comes under this broad charter which the Creator has given to man."²

"Man" (v. 27) refers to mankind, not Adam individually. "Them" indicates this generic significance. God "created" (cf. v. 1) mankind male and female; they did not evolve from a lower form of life (cf. Matt. 19:4; Mark 10:6). Adam and Eve were not "androgynous" (two individuals joined physically like Siamese twins), or each of them "a hermaphrodite" (one individual possessing both male and female sexual organs). There is no basis for these bizarre ideas in the text. God

¹Sailhamer, "Exegetical Notes ....," p. 80.
²Leupold, 1:92.
formed Eve from Adam's rib (2:21), not from half of his body or from his genitals.

"The image is found in the type of relationship that was designed to exist between male and female human beings, a relationship where the characteristics of each sex are valued and used to form a oneness in their identity and purpose. When God created human beings as male and female he formed them to exhibit a oneness in their relationship that would resemble the relationship of God and his heavenly court.

"By ruling as one, male and female fulfill the purpose of God for which they were created. United as one humanity, male and female are one with God and his heavenly court. And it is this unity between male and female, and between humanity and God, that is destroyed in the Fall described in Genesis 3."¹

As a husband and wife demonstrate oneness in their marriage, they reflect the unity of the Godhead. Oneness involves being in agreement with God's will and purposes. Oneness is essential for an orchestra, an athletic team, and a construction crew, as well as a family, to achieve a common purpose. Oneness in marriage is essential if husband and wife are to fulfill God's purposes for humankind. (Generally speaking, women feel a marriage is working if they talk about it, but men feel it is working if they do not talk about it.)

God created mankind male and female as an expression of His own plurality: "Let us make mankind." God's plurality anticipated man's plurality. The human relationship between man and woman thus reflects God's own relationship with Himself.²

"Image" and "likeness" are essentially synonymous terms.¹ Both indicate personality, moral, and spiritual qualities that God and man share (i.e., self-consciousness, God-consciousness, freedom, responsibility, speech, moral discernment, etc.) These distinguish humans from the animals, which have no God-consciousness even though they have conscious life (cf. v. 24). Some writers have called the image of God man's "spiritual personality."² In another sense man is the image of God (e.g., he rules and creates as God does, under God's authority, thus reflecting God).³ The Fall obscured but did not obliterate the image of God in man (cf. 9:6).⁴

"What is the image of God in man? The traditional view is that God's image is certain moral, ethical, and intellectual abilities. A more recent view, based on Hebrew grammar and the knowledge of the ancient Middle East, interprets the phrase as meaning 'Let us make man as our image' (the Hebrew preposition in this phrase can be translated as). In ancient times an emperor might command statues of himself to be placed in remote parts of his empire. These symbols would declare that these areas were under his power and reign. So God placed humankind as living symbols of Himself on earth to represent His reign. This interpretation fits well with the command that follows—to reign over all that God has made."⁵

Verse 27 may be the first poem in the Bible. If so, the shift from prose to poetry may emphasize human beings as God's image bearers, the shift in genre indicating the importance of

---

¹See Calvin, 1:15:3.
⁵The Nelson ..., p. 5. See also Robert A. Pyne, Humanity and Sin, pp. 51-70.
what is being said. There is some disagreement among Old Testament scholars regarding what distinguishes biblical poetry from biblical prose, so the genre of this verse is debatable.¹

1:28 Note that God's blessing of man finds expression in terms of posterity that connotes the ideas of seed and life, two prominent themes as Genesis and the whole Bible unfold.² God's blessing enables humanity to fulfill its twofold destiny: to procreate in spite of death, and to rule in spite of enemies. Blessing denotes all that fosters human fertility and assists in achieving dominion.³

Interpreters have generally recognized the commands to "be fruitful and multiply" as commands to Adam and Eve (and later to Noah, 9:1) as the heads of the human race, not simply as individuals. That is, most interpreters believe that God has not charged every human being with begetting children. This seems clear from the fact that God has made many men and women incapable of reproducing—some when they marry young, and others when they marry later in life.⁴ Consequently one should not appeal to this command as a support for the view that God wants all people to bear as many children as they possibly can. This verse is a "cultural mandate," not an individual mandate. It was to Adam and Eve as heads of the human race that God gave this command, not simply to them as individuals.

"This command, like others in Scripture, carries with it an implicit promise that God will enable man to fulfill it."⁵

Sexual union is God's ordained method of implementing His command to multiply descendants. Consequently sex is essentially good. When God gave this command, Adam and Eve were in an unfallen condition. Therefore the descendants they

---

¹See Tremper Longman III, Song of Songs, pp. 9-54, for a discussion of biblical poetry.
²Sailhamer, "Genesis," p. 38.
³Waltke, Genesis, p. 67.
⁴For a good book on childlessness, see Vicky Love, Childless Is Not Less.
⁵Wenham, p. 33.
would produce would have been godly. It is particularly a godly seed that God has charged the human race to raise up. Likewise He commanded Noah and his wife, who were both righteous, to be fruitful (9:1).

God did not make men or women emotionally, spiritually, or physically capable of raising children without a marriage partner. Consequently single parents struggle. As children observe both godly parents modeling a harmonious marriage, they learn to appreciate their own sexual identity, the roles of husband and wife, and unconditional love. Unconditional love is necessary for a harmonious marriage.

"Subdue" and "rule," the second aspect of this mandate, imply a degree of sovereignty and control that God delegated to mankind over nature.¹ This constitutes God's "Magna Carta" for all true scientific and material progress. God commanded Adam and Eve to acquire knowledge so they could master their environment, to bring all its elements into the service of the human race.

"The dominion which man enjoyed in the Garden of Eden was a direct consequence of the image of God in him."²

"Why this need to subjugate the earth? There are at least four possibilities: (1) Sin would ruin the earth, and people would have to expend great effort to live there (see 3:17-19). (2) Satan would defy the will of God and make all good efforts difficult. (3) The earth left to itself would not remain good. Instead, God planned that people would need to manage and control it. (4) The beauty of the earth was only in the garden that God planted (see 2:8); the rest of the earth would be hostile. Whatever the case, subdue does not mean 'destroy' or 'ruin.' It does mean to 'act as managers who have the authority to run

²J. J. Davis, p. 81.
everything as God planned.' This command applies equally to male and female."¹

This verse explains that God’s purpose in creating human beings was that they should rule over the animal world, indeed, over the rest of His creation. When Adam and Eve fell (3:6), they took themselves out from under God’s authority and put themselves under Satan's authority. Today, Satan is the authority under whom Adam and Eve's descendants live. Nevertheless, God promised to raise up a descendant of the woman (Eve) who would conquer Satan and thereby enable mankind to fulfill the commission to rule under God's authority (3:15). In time, this Seed proved to be Jesus Christ, who will one day return to earth to subdue His enemies and rule over the creation, thus fulfilling this commission. This is really the story of the Bible from Genesis to Revelation.²

For a married couple, oneness in marriage is necessary in order to manage God's creation effectively.

"Our Christian proclamation of hope has antecedents in the theological soil of three divine programmatic expectations first heard in Genesis: (1) God will bless the human family with procreation and dominion (1:26-28); (2) he will achieve victory over mankind's enemy (3:15); and (3) he will bring about both through the offspring of Abraham (12:1-3)—namely, the one man Jesus Christ."³

We have in this verse the three essential elements of a dispensation (stewardship, household management): a divine revelation of God's will for human conduct, consequent human responsibility, and a period of time during which God tests people as to their obedience to this responsibility. A "dispensation" is a period of time during which God tests man in relation to his obedience to a specific revelation of God's

¹ The Nelson ..., p. 6.
³ Mathews, p. 22.
will. The "dispensations" constitute a progressive, connected revelation of God's dealings with humankind. God gave some of them to the whole human race, and some to a part of it (e.g., Israel). Dispensations are not separate ways of salvation; in every dispensation, man is saved by God's grace, because of the work of Jesus Christ. Before the Cross, people were saved in prospect of Christ's sacrifice, as on credit so to speak, by believing a revelation given to them by God. After the Cross, people are saved in retrospect of Christ's sacrifice, by believing the revelation that He satisfied God's just demands against sinners (1 John 2:2).

"The dispensational study of the Bible consists in the identification of certain well-defined time-periods which are divinely indicated, together with the revealed purpose of God relative to each."¹

Whereas specific human responsibilities change as divine revelation unfolds, and dispensation succeeds dispensation, people have a continuing responsibility to live in the light of previous revelation. For example, even though the dispensation of the Mosaic Law has ended (Rom. 10:4), Christians are nevertheless helped to discharge their responsibilities to God by being aware of what God required of the Israelites under the Mosaic Law (cf. Rom. 15:4; 2 Tim. 3:16-17). The purpose of each dispensation has been to place people under a specific rule of conduct, not as a condition for salvation, but to demonstrate that people always fail to live up to God's standards—and so need to accept the salvation that God extends to them as a gift. I believe that seven dispensations are distinguishable in Scripture, which are: (1) Innocence (Gen. 1:28); (2) Conscience (Gen. 3:7); (3) Human Government (Gen. 8:15); (4) Promise (Gen. 12:1); (5) Law (Exod. 19:1); (6) Church (Acts 2:1); and (7) Kingdom (Rev. 20:4).²

¹Chafer, 1:xii.
This verse marks the first dispensation: Innocence. God created man innocent, placed him in a perfect environment, subjected him to a simple test, and warned him of the consequences of disobedience. Adam did not have to sin—but chose to do so. The serpent deceived Eve (cf. 2 Cor. 11:3), but Adam sinned deliberately (cf. 1 Tim. 2:14). This dispensation ended when God judged Adam and Eve guilty, and expelled them from the Garden of Eden (3:24). We do not know how long after their creation our first parents fell.

1:29-31 God gave man authority and responsibility to regulate nature and to advance civilization. Nature was to serve man, not vice versa. This does not give man the right to abuse nature, however. Neither does it justify giving animals and plants the "rights" of human beings.

"Man is the climax of creation, and instead of man providing the gods with food [as was common in the ancient world], God provided the plants as food for man (1:29)."

Verse 29 suggests that man was originally a vegetarian. After the Flood, God told Noah that he could eat animals (9:3). The animals may also have been herbivorous at first (v. 30). Alternatively, some animals may have been carnivorous from the beginning. In this case, the death of some animals may have occurred before the Fall. Death was a judgment on humankind after the Fall, but it may have been part of what God called "good" before the Fall. It is argued that death is a result of moral evil. But animals are incapable of moral evil. Perhaps nothing God created died before the Fall.

---

2 Wenham, p. xlix.
3 See Ham, et al., pp. 29-30.
4 See Pieters, pp. 59-61, for this view.
Verses 27-31 are a general account of human creation. The more detailed account of the creation of Adam and Eve follows in 2:4-25. These two accounts do not necessarily reflect a two-document composition (two versions that differ) of the creation story, but they illustrate the writer's purpose. In chapter 1, he wanted to emphasize the creation of humankind in the larger context of the cosmic creation. The name *elohim* ("God") occurs over 30 times in this chapter, emphasizing that it was the powerful God who created everything. "Good" appears seven times in this chapter (vv. 4, 10, 12, 18, 21, 25, 31), highlighting the goodness of God in blessing His creation—especially mankind.

"Some people ask, 'How can God be good when there is so much evil and suffering in the world?' The answer is that God made a perfect world and man messed it up!"¹

There are three major viewpoints regarding the origin of man as recorded in 1:26-31; 2:7; and 2:21-25.

1. "Evolution" (both Darwinian and neo-Darwinian) asserts that all living organisms arose from a single, simple cell through a process that took millions of years. This first cell resulted from the accumulation of chemical and protein elements that came together because of unknown change factors over a long time period. This view contradicts Scripture, and it is not scientifically demonstrable.²

"... Mr. Darwin's theory is incapable of proof. From the nature of the case, what concerns the origin of things cannot be known except by a supernatural revelation. ... Science as soon as she gets past the actual and the extant, is in the region of speculation, and is merged into philosophy, and is subject to all its hallucinations."³

"The assumptions of historical continuity and scientific naturalism are no more susceptible of genuine scientific

---

³Hodge, 2:22.
proof than are Biblical catastrophism and supernaturalism."¹

2. "Theistic evolution" attempts to blend Scripture and scientific theories. It holds that God ordered and directed the evolutionary process. This view fails to explain specific statements in the text of Scripture adequately; it accommodates the text to scientific theory. The major problem with this view is that it is not completely true to either science or Scripture but is inconsistent.²

"In fact, theistic evolution is a contradiction in terms. It is just as destructive of faith in the Biblical doctrine of creation as naturalistic evolution is; and by calling in the creative activity of God time and again it also nullifies the evolutionary hypothesis."³

3. "Special creation" asserts that God produced the universe and all life forms through a series of supernatural acts. Some special creationists believe He did this in a relatively brief period of time. Others, such as progressive creationists, believe the creation process took thousands of years. This view gives primacy to the text of Scripture and interprets it more literally, historically, and grammatically.⁴


²Representative evangelicals who hold this view include Pieters, p. 64; Kidner, p. 48; Waltke, An Old ..., p. 202; Edward J. Carnell, An Introduction to Christian Apologetics.


"Progressive creationism" is another view, but it is not as common as the three view described above. It teaches that God created the universe in several acts of creation that time periods of indefinite duration separated. The process of evolution was at work within these eras and accounts for the development of phyla, species, etc.\(^1\) The following quotation distinguishes theistic evolution from progressive creationism:

"I do not believe in theistic evolution. Theistic evolution means simply that God guided the evolutionary process so that it is not to be explained on a purely naturalistic basis. It assumes that all living things, including man, are biologically descended from a common ancestor. By contrast with theistic evolution, Scripture indicates that God made different basic kinds of beings and that all existing plants and animals are not descended from a common ancestor."\(^2\)

I do not believe that Scripture supports progressive creationism, as these notes will explain.

4. The seventh day 2:1-3


which is reinforced by the inclusion 'God created' linking 1:1 and 2:3."^1

The mood of the narrative also returns to what it was in 1:1-2. Silence and calm prevail again.^2

2:1 Moses probably meant everything that existed above the earth and on the earth when he wrote their "host" or "hosts" (AV, NASB 1971 ed., ESV, NKJV, RSV).^3 Other translations render the Hebrew word "heavenly lights" (NASB 2020 ed.), "vast array" (NIV), "multitude" (NRSV), "mighty throng" (NEB), and "everything in them" (HCSB, NET2).^4 The "host" of heaven usually refers to the stars in the Old Testament (e.g., Deut. 4:19) more than the angels (e.g., 1 Kings 22:19), so the sun, moon, and stars are probably included.

2:2 "Seventh" comes from a Hebrew root meaning "to be full, completed, entirely made up."^5 "Rested" (Heb. shabat) means ceased or desisted from activity (cf. Exod. 40:33). There is no implication that God felt fatigued by His creative activity and needed to rest. He simply stopped creating because He had finished His work (cf. Isa. 40:28-29).

"The eternal God did not rest, as one weary, but as one well-pleased."^6

"Unquestionably, the number seven marks in Scripture the sacred measurement of time."^7

Some other ancient Near Eastern civilizations regarded the seventh day as especially significant, but not the same as

---

^1 Wenham, p. 5.
^2 Michael Fishbane, Text and Texture, p. 9.
^4 NET2 refers to The NET (New English Translation) Bible version of 2019, and NEB is The New English Bible with the Apocrypha.
^5 Bush, p. 46.
^6 Matthew Henry, Commentary on the Whole Bible, p. 5. See also Cochrane, pp. 28-29.
Israel's Sabbath day.¹ The origin of this mutual regard may trace back to God's resting on the seventh day of creation.

2:3 God "blessed" the seventh day of inactivity in that He set it apart as different from the other days of creation. It was a memorial of His creative work. God was satisfied with the work that He had done. Note the unique threefold repetition of "seventh day," highlighting its special significance.

"... according to one Babylonian tradition, the seventh, fourteenth, nineteenth, twenty-first, and twenty-eighth days of each month were regarded as unlucky: Genesis, however, declares the seventh day of every week to be holy, a day of rest consecrated to God (2:1-3)."²

Note that God did not command Adam to abstain from work on the Sabbath. This came later with the Mosaic Law. However, Scripture does teach the importance of periodic rest (cf. Exod. 20:8-10; 23:10-12; Lev. 25:2, 4; Deut. 15:1-18; Heb. 4:1-11; et al.). Part of bearing the likeness of God involves resting as He did after completing His work.³

"In the first six days space is subdued; on the seventh, time is sanctified. This day is blessed to refresh the earth. It summons humanity to imitate the pattern of labor and rest of the King and so to confess God's lordship and their consecration to him. On this day they cease to subdue the earth."⁴

The writers of Scripture used the Sabbath to anticipate the hope of Messianic redemption throughout the Old Testament. In the creation account the Sabbath points forward to the time when God will bring ...

¹See J. D. Davis, pp. 23-35.
²Wenham, pp. xlix-l.
⁴Waltke, Genesis, p. 67.
"... a perfect and complete cosmos out of chaos. The weekly rest-experience of the Sabbath [under the Mosaic Law] served to epitomize the future peace and rest of the Messianic age."  

"The seventh day of the week, the Jewish Sabbath, symbolized the old creation and the covenant of law; first you work, then you rest. The first day of the week, the Lord's day, symbolizes the New Creation and the Covenant of Grace: first you believe in Christ and find rest, and then you work (Eph. 2:8-10)."

The sabbatical and jubilee years in ancient Judaism also pointed to the liberation Messiah would provide for His people.

The structure of 1:1—2:3 bears the marks of literary artistry, as does the structure of the rest of Genesis.

"The correspondence of the first paragraph, 1:1-2, with 2:1-3 is underlined by the number of Hebrew words in both being multiples of 7. 1:1 consists of 7 words, 1:2 of 14 (7 x 2) words, 2:1-3 of 35 (7 x 5) words. The number seven dominates this opening chapter in a strange way, not only in the number of words in a particular section but in the number of times a specific word or phrase recurs. For example, 'God' is mentioned 35 times, 'earth' 21 times, 'heaven/firmament' 21 times, while the phrases 'and it was so' and 'God saw that it was good' occur 7 times."

These characteristics of repeating important words or phrases in multiples of seven and using them to bracket sections of the narrative continue

---

4 Wenham, p. 6.
throughout Genesis, though not consistently. They help the reader of the Hebrew text to identify distinct sections of the text as such.

How long were the six days of creation? This is a problem because the inspired writers used "day" (Heb. yom) in various ways in the Old Testament.¹

"The simple fact is that day in Hebrew (just as in English) is used in three separate senses: to mean (1) twenty-four hours, (2) the period of light during the twenty-four hours, and (3) an indeterminate period of time. Therefore, we must leave open the exact length of time indicated by day in Genesis."²

Moses used "day" these three ways in Genesis 1 and 2: (1) a 12-hour period of daylight (1:5, 14, 16, 18), (2) a 24-hour day (1:14), and (3) the entire seven-day period of creation (2:4). A few scholars have argued that the sequence of days is not chronologically ordered at all.³ They believe that Moses numbered the days on the basis of content rather than sequence in time. This view has not enjoyed wide acceptance. Other scholars believe there are some portions of the text that are not in chronological order.⁴ There are four major views as to the length of the days of creation.

1. **The literal 24-hour day theory.** The normal conclusion one would most likely draw from the terminology in the text (e.g., evening, morning, day, night, etc.) is that God created the world in six 24-hour days.⁵ This view is most consistent with the principles of literal, historical, and grammatical interpretation. The fact that the number of days corresponds to the number of weekdays also favors this view. Furthermore, whenever "day" (yom) occurs with a numeral in the Old Testament, as here, it refers to a 24-hour period. Some advocates cite Exodus 20:11 as support also.⁶ The main problem

---

¹See Cochrane, pp. 21-24.
²Schaeffer, p. 57.
⁴E.g., Waltke, *Genesis*, pp. 75-78; H. Blocher, *In the Beginning*, p. 78.
⁵See Baxter, 1:45-50; Free, pp. 19-21; Berkhof, pp. 153-55.
with this view is that the activity of some days (e.g., the sixth) seems to some to require more than 24 hours.\(^1\)

2. **The day-age (or geologic day) theory.** This view interprets the terminology less literally. Advocates argue that the events recorded seem to require more than 24-hour days (e.g., v. 12). They also point out that solar days may not have begun until the fourth day. Some advocates of this theory are theistic evolutionists. Others are progressive creationists. Progressive creationists generally seek to correlate the geologic ages with the six days of creation. Not all advocates of this view link the long creative days with the geologic ages.\(^2\) The main problem with the day-age theory is that it interprets terms figuratively that seem to have obvious literal meaning.

3. **The literal days with intervening ages theory.** This view regards each day as a time of completion of creative activity only. It is an attempt to take the "morning and evening" references seriously but still allow the time that seems necessary within the days (e.g., v. 12). It is a combination of the two preceding views. However, it strains the text. Also, Moses could have described this method of creation more clearly than he did if long ages interspersed the six days. Few scholars have adopted this view.

4. **The revelatory day theory.** The least literal interpretation holds that God revealed, rather than accomplished, creation in six days. A major problem with this view is Exodus 20:11, where Moses says that God "made," not "revealed," His creation in six days. A variation of this view understands the days as "structures of a literary framework designed to illustrate the orderly nature of God's creation and to enable the covenant people to mime the Creator."\(^3\)

Presuppositions are extremely important in this controversy. If one believes that scientific "facts" are true, he or she may try to make the Bible fit these. On the other hand, if one believes in an inerrant Bible, he or she will give priority to statements in the text. If one believes both are true, he or she will soon learn that both cannot be true. For example, the text says God created the trees before marine life (1:11, 20), but most evolutionists

---

\(^1\)See Ross, *Creation and ...*, p. 109.  
\(^2\)E.g., Pieters, pp. 31-33; Shedd, 1:477-78, 483.  
\(^3\)Waltke, *Genesis*, p. 61. See Appendix 2 at the end of these notes for a summary of five popular views of Creation.
believe that trees developed after marine life. Also, the Bible implies that marine life and birds came into existence about the same time (1:20), but evolutionists hold that they evolved millions of years apart.\(^1\) No theory explains the conflict between biblical statements and scientific claims adequately. In the end, one really is forced to ask: "Do I put more confidence in what God says or in what scientists say?"\(^2\) One's presuppositions will also affect whether he or she interprets more or less literally.

"One cannot help being concerned about the drift of some evangelical scholars to subject the interpretation of Genesis 1 to modern scientific opinions. There is a dangerous tendency to interpret the first chapter of Genesis, not by strict and accurate exegesis, but in a manner so as to satisfy the 'scientific mind.'"\(^3\)

Belief in the inerrancy of Scripture does not obviate the problem of the age of the earth, however. Several evangelical scholars who are competent scientists and affirm inerrancy believe the proper interpretation of Scripture results in an old earth model of creation.\(^4\) Other equally qualified inerrantists see a young earth model in the Bible.\(^5\) One writer gave biographical information about Archbishop James Ussher (1581-1656), whose chronology appeared first in the 1701 edition of the AV and later in the margin of the original *Scofield Reference Bible*. He also gave an explanation of how Ussher arrived at his dates and a table listing the dates of the more important events in Old Testament history contained in Ussher's chronology.\(^6\)

---


\(^3\)J. Marcellus Kik, in the editor's preface to Young's *Studies in ....*


\(^6\)James Barr, "Why the World was Created in 4004 B.C.: Archbishop Ussher and Biblical Chronology," *Bulletin of John Rylands University Library of Manchester* 67:2 (Spring
"Clearly a difference between these positions at this precise point of the relationship between science and Scripture is clear and unmistakable. The old-earth view is built on the position that an old universe and an old earth is an established factual base. Thus the Bible at the true meaning level must be interpreted to show that it is not out of harmony with this fact. The young-earth model is based on the position that the scientific data used to establish the concept of an old earth can be interpreted differently and that, strictly speaking, there is no need to defend an old earth. Thus the Bible is approached without this a priori demand for an old earth, and the differences are markedly clear, in this writer's opinion."¹

Evangelicals who believe in a young earth (usually less than 10,000 year old) normally do so because they believe that the biblical genealogies in Genesis 5 and 11 are complete or very nearly complete. Some of the other genealogies in Scripture are clearly incomplete, which opens the door to the possibility that these genealogies in Genesis may also be incomplete.² I believe that the genealogies in Genesis have few gaps in them if any, and so I prefer a young earth model.

Where did the names we use for the days of the week come from? The days of the week originally received their names in honor of seven pagan gods, whom the ancients associated with the five major planets plus the sun and moon. The names of Germanic (Teutonic) gods replaced those of some Roman gods as time passed. The early church, following Jewish custom, numbered the days of the week to avoid using the names of pagan gods (e.g., Luke 24:1; Acts 20:7).³

---

²See Hodge, 2:40-41.
"Though historical and scientific questions may be uppermost in our minds as we approach the text, it is doubtful whether they were in the writer's mind, and we should therefore be cautious about looking for answers to questions he was not concerned with. Genesis is primarily about God's character and his purposes for sinful mankind. Let us beware of allowing our interests to divert us from the central thrust of the book so that we miss what the LORD, our creator and redeemer, is saying to us."¹

The main point of the story of creation (1:1—2:3) is that God turned chaos into an orderly, blessed, good creation by His word. The original Israelite readers of Genesis would have found encouragement in this revelation to trust God. They would have hoped in Him to transform their national life from chaos, in a pagan chaotic environment (Egypt), to order and blessing, in an environment He would create for them (Canaan). God's superiority over the forces their pagan neighbors worshipped out of fear (gods of the darkness, the sun, moon, planets, and stars, the watery deep, etc.) would have strengthened their faith.² Their God had also created them as a nation, so they could look forward to the future with confidence.

¹Wenham, p. liii.
"This passage is significant also in the lives of Christians. Above and beyond asserting the fact of creation in much the same way it did for Israel, the passage provides an important theological lesson. The believer enters into a life of Sabbath rest from works and embarks on a life of holiness in that rest. We learn from the creation account (1) that God is a redeeming God who changes darkness to light, death to life, and chaos to blessing; (2) that God is absolutely sovereign over all life and all pagan ideas that would contend for our allegiance; and (3) that God works by His powerful Word—to create, to redeem, and to sanctify. Obedience to His powerful Word, either the written Word, or the living Word, our Savior, will transform believers into His glorious image."\(^1\)

**B. WHAT BECAME OF THE CREATION 2:4—4:26**

Genesis 2:4—4:26 tells us what became of ("the account of," 2:4) the creation that God described in 1:1—2:3. Genesis 2:4-25 retells the creation of man and woman as preparation for the account of the Fall in chapter 3. Moses gave us the broad outline of creation in 1:1—2:3 and then filled in details having to do with the creation of human beings in the rest of chapter 2 (cf. Ps. 104; Prov. 8). He then described what happened to the creation by recording significant events in the Garden of Eden, the murder of Abel, and the family of Cain.

"The section begins with a description of the creation of Adam and Eve and traces their sin, God’s curse on sin, and the expansion of sin in their descendants. No longer at rest, mankind experienced flight and fear, making his way in the world, surviving, and developing civilization. As if in answer to the blessings of Creation, this passage supplies a threefold cursing (of Satan [3:14], of the ground because of man [3:17], and of Cain [4:11]). Yet in this deteriorating life there is a token of grace (4:15) and a ray of hope (man began to call on Yahweh)."\(^2\)

---


1. The Garden of Eden 2:4—3:24

This story has seven scenes that a change in actors, situations or activities identifies. Moses constructed this section of Genesis in a chiastic (palistrophic, crossing) structure to focus attention on the central scene: the Fall. The preceding scenes lead up to the Fall, and the following scenes describe its consequences.

A Scene 1 (narrative): God is the sole actor, and man is passive (2:4-17).

B Scene 2 (narrative): God is the main actor, man plays a minor role, the woman and the animals are passive (2:18-25).

C Scene 3 (dialogue): The snake and the woman converse (3:1-5).

D Scene 4 (narrative): The man and the woman are primary (3:6-8).

C' Scene 5 (dialogue): God converses with the man and the woman (3:9-13).

B' Scene 6 (narrative): God is the main actor, man plays a minor role, the woman and the serpent are passive (3:14-21).

A' Scene 7 (narrative): God is the sole actor, and man is passive (3:22-24).

The story of the Garden of Eden begins with a second, more detailed account of the creation of humankind that Moses gave as an introduction to the Fall and its consequences.

"More light is shed on the relationship between Genesis 1 and Genesis 2 by a consideration of a literary structure that occurs throughout the entire book of Genesis: First, less important things are dealt with rapidly, and then the things more

---

1 For a different narrative analysis, see Waltke, Genesis, pp. 80-81.
2 Wenham, p. 50.
important to the central theme of the Bible are returned to and developed more fully."¹

Note the following contrasts between the accounts of man's creation.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>1:1—2:3</th>
<th>2:4-25</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Name of God</strong></td>
<td>Elohim (Strong One)</td>
<td>Yahweh (Covenant-keeping One)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Purpose</strong></td>
<td>Facts of Creation</td>
<td>God's relationship with human creatures</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Emphasis</strong></td>
<td>The world generally</td>
<td>Humankind specifically</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Moses identified "Yahweh," the God who called Abraham (12:1) and who delivered Israel from Egypt (Exod. 3:15), with "Elohim," the God who created the cosmos.² The name "Jehovah," which appears in some English translations, comes from combining the vowels of the Hebrew adonay ("Lord") with the consonants of the Hebrew Yahweh (i.e., YHWH).

"In Genesis 1 'elohim (God) refers to God's transcendence over the world, while in Genesis 2—3 yhwh (LORD) speaks of God's immanence with his elect. When the narrator combines the two names, he makes a bold assertion that the Creation God is the Lord of Israel's history. Just as God ordered creation, he orders history. All is under God's sovereign control, guaranteeing that Israel's history will end in triumph, not in tragedy."³

**The creation of man 2:4-17**

The differences between 1:1—2:3 and 2:4-25 have led many literary critics of the Bible to insist that two different writers composed these sections. But the similarities between these sections argue for a common writer.⁴

Critics who hold to the documentary hypothesis believe that passages in Genesis (and elsewhere) that contain the name "Elohim" derive from one source document (E), and passages where "Jehovah" or Yahweh appear

---

¹Schaeffer, pp. 40-41.
²Sailhamer, "Genesis," p. 20.
³Waltke, *Genesis*, p. 34.
come from a different source document (J). A better explanation is that the speaker in the passage, or the writer of the passage (Moses), chose each of these names of God deliberately to emphasize a particularly characteristic of God that that name connotes. In the case of "Elohim," that characteristic is His power as Creator, and in the case of "Jehovah" or Yahweh, it is His covenant relationship.\footnote{In his \textit{Exposition of Genesis}, Leupold often pointed this out where these names of God appear throughout Genesis.}

2:4 Having related the creation of the universe as we know it, God next inspired Moses to explain for his readers what became of it. Sin entered it and devastated it.

"The destiny of the human creation is to live in God's world, with God's other creatures, \textit{on God's terms}."\footnote{W. Brueggemann, \textit{Genesis}, p. 40.}

The Hebrew word \textit{toledot} occurs first in 2:4, where it introduces the next section of the book. This Hebrew word often reads "generations," "histories," "descendants," or, as here (in the NASB and NIV), "account" (cf. 5:1; 6:9; 10:1; 11:10, 27; 25:12, 19; 36:1, 9; 37:2). The word summarizes what follows in the section and introduces what became of something, in this case the universe, or, more often, someone. The person mentioned after \textit{toledot} is not usually the central figure in the section but the person who originated what follows. The \textit{toledot} statements contribute the major structural and conceptual framework for the whole Book of Genesis.\footnote{Cf. Martin Woudstra, "The \textit{Toledot} of the Book of Genesis and Their Redemptive-Historical Significance," \textit{Calvin Theological Journal} 5:2 (1970):188-89.}

"... the material within each\textit{ tol'dot} is a microcosm of the development of the Book of Genesis itself, with the motifs of blessing and cursing playing a dominant role. Within each of the first several \textit{tol'dot} is a deterioration to cursing until 12:1-12, where the message moves to the promise of blessing. From this point on there is a constant striving for the place of blessing, but still with
each successive narrative there is deterioration, for Isaac and Jacob did not measure up to Abraham. Consequently at the end of Genesis the family is not in the land of blessing but in Egypt."¹

A new name for "God" appears in this verse. "God" is again Elohim, but "LORD" (Yahweh, Jehovah) translates the proper name of God that elsewhere highlights the Almighty's covenant relationship with His people. The "God" of chapter 1 and the "LORD God" of chapter 2 are the same Person.

2:5-6

These verses describe global conditions before man's creation in terms that stress God's gracious preparation of the world for him. They are a flashback to conditions before 1:26. Moses chose terms that contrast with conditions that existed after the Fall.² "Shrub[s]" were evidently not edible, whereas "plant[s]" were. Thus Moses distinguished two types of land: arable and non-arable.³

Moses' reference to "rain" (v. 5) anticipates the story of the Flood (chs. 6—9). The absence of "rain" and the presence of the "mist" (v. 6) have led some writers to postulate a "canopy theory."⁴ According to this theory, a canopy of water vapor covered the earth initially and watered it. It reduced the destructive rays of the sun so that antediluvian man lived much longer, and it distributed heat more evenly over the surface of the earth. Such a water canopy covers Venus. This canopy supposedly broke up when God sent the Flood (7:11). This is another of those theories that are impossible to prove or disprove conclusively.⁵

"This idea still has its defenders today [2015], although its exegetical foundation is rejected by most evangelical scholars and its science is

³Wenham, p. 58.
⁵For a critique of this view, see Thomas Key, "Does the Canopy Theory Hold Water?" See also Stanley Rice, "Botanical and Ecological Objections to a Preflood Water Canopy," Journal of the American Scientific Affiliation 37:4 (December 1985):223-29.
rejected by both evangelical and secular scientists. Nevertheless, liberal scholars have been delighted to receive support from the more fundamentalist vapor-canopy theorists for their assertion of the ancient Hebrews' naïve views of the cosmos."

Another explanation is that mists rose from the earth, condensed and fell *like* rain, and so watered the earth.

I believe Genesis 1:1—2:3 is the big picture of creation, and the rest of chapter 2 retells the creation of man. Chapter 2 verses 4 and 5 set the stage for what follows by explaining what agricultural land was like before man started farming. Verse 5 explains the original order of plant life, which did not yet grow as a result of rain ("no plant of the field had yet sprouted"). Initially plants grew from the mist that arose from the ground (v. 6). In other words, verses 5 and 6 apparently give the chronological sequence of mist—plants—man, and the comment about rain was added because that is how plants grow now.

2:7 "Formed" (Heb. *yasar*) means to shape or mold and implies that God deliberately did this with tender loving care. It describes the work of an artist (cf. Job 10:8-9). However, one should not conclude that God literally formed Adam with God's hands, since God does not have hands; He is a spirit being. This is one of numerous anthropomorphisms in the Bible that describe God and His activities. The point being emphasized is that God created Adam with loving care—like a potter forms a vessel on his wheel.

"Dust" (Heb. *haadama*) reflects man's lowly origin. Even though he was in God's image, man was a creature like other creatures God had made. This rules out the view that man descended from the gods, which was popular in the ancient Near East and was foundational in Egyptian cosmology. In the

---

1Younker and Davidson, p. 45.
2Leupold, 1:114.
3Sailhamer, "Genesis," p. 41.
Creation, God raised man out of the dust to reign.\(^1\) However, in the Fall, man returned to the dust by his own work (3:19).\(^2\) By "dust" Moses probably meant "earth:" existing material.

"Practically the universal belief of antiquity in regard to man's origin was that he was made of earth. It could not be otherwise, for the truth was evident to him that had eyes to see. Man's body moulders to dust after death. Plainly it is made of earth. The tales which would tell the story of man's creation differ, indeed, but the difference between the accounts which assume the intervention of a creator lies in the method of divine procedure."\(^3\)

The "breath of life" (Heb. *nesama*) was God's breath that gave Adam life, spiritual understanding (Job 32:8), and a functioning conscience (Prov. 20:27). It may also have imparted moral, intellectual, relational, and spiritual capacities.\(^4\) Adam's life-breath came from God's breath.\(^5\) In other words, God imparted life to Adam. Man's uniqueness consisted in his having been made in God's image. God's breath may be a synonym for His word (cf. Ps. 33:6).\(^6\) Again, one must avoid the conclusion that God literally blew breath into Adam's nostrils from God's mouth, since God does not have a mouth and lungs. Man, therefore, is a combination of dust and divinity.\(^7\)

---


\(^2\)Sailhamer, "Genesis," p. 41.

\(^3\)J. D. Davis, p. 36.

\(^4\) *The Nelson ...,* p. 7.

\(^5\)See Mathews, pp. 197-99.


\(^7\)For defense of the historicity of Adam and Eve, see Waltke, *Genesis*, p. 80, n. 2.
"Not this breath itself but the manner of its impartation indicates man's dignity."\(^1\)

This verse is the basis for the belief that man consists of two entities: a body and a soul—one corporeal and the other spiritual. This is the doctrine of human dichotomy. Those who hold this view of man usually subsume all of the spiritual and immaterial aspects of humanity under the soul (e.g., the human spirit, the metaphorical heart, the will, the mind, etc.).\(^2\)

2:8-15 Another indication of God's love and grace is that He placed Adam in a garden that He had prepared for him. The God who was powerful enough to create the cosmos with a word (ch. 1) was also a good and loving God.

The trees in the garden were beautiful ("pleasing to the sight") and edible ("good for food"), an orchard for man to enjoy (v. 9). The "tree of life" (v. 9) appears to have been a means, with its fruit, whereby God sustained Adam and Eve's lives. Again, God's desire to bless man comes through. "The knowledge of good and evil" (vv. 9, 17) probably refers to man's ability to decide for himself what is best for him and what is not (i.e., wisdom).\(^3\) "Good and evil" may be a merism for all the things that protect and destroy life. It may mean total knowledge.\(^4\) These were real trees. The one God associated with life, and the other He associated with the knowledge of good and evil.\(^5\)

Similarities between the descriptions of the garden and the tabernacle are also interesting (cf. Exod. 25-27). Both places

---

\(^1\)Leupold, 1:116.
\(^2\)See Hodge, 2:42-51, for defense of this view.
\(^3\)Waltke, Genesis, p. 86. For some other views, see Hamilton, pp. 164-66; Wenham, pp. 63-64.
\(^4\)Jacob, p. 284.
\(^5\)For comments about the tree of life in ancient civilizations, see J. E. Jennings, "Ancient Near Eastern Religion and Biblical Interpretation," in Interpreting the Word of God, pp. 18-19.
reflected the glory of God's presence in their beautiful surroundings (cf. Hag. 2:7-8; Rev. 21:18).¹

The Hebrew word translated "put," in verse 8 (wayyasem), is not the same one rendered "put" in verse 15 (wayyannihehu). The former term is the normal one for putting something somewhere. The latter one connotes rest and safety (cf. 19:16; Deut. 3:20; 12:10; 25:19), as well as dedication in God's presence (cf. Exod. 16:33-34; Lev. 16:23; Num. 17:4; Deut. 26:4, 10). God specifically put man in "the garden," where he could be safe and rest, and where he could have fellowship with God (cf. 3:8). Mankind's primary responsibility there was actually to worship and obey God, though not explicitly stated, rather than to merely "cultivate" and "keep" the garden (v. 15).² In other words, Adam served—and thereby worshipped God—by tending the garden.³ Work is essentially a good gift from God, not a punishment for sin.

"The Garden of Eden is a temple-garden, represented later in the tabernacle. Cherubim protect its sanctity (Gen. 3:24; Ex. 26:1; 2 Chron. 3:7) so that sin and death are excluded (Gen. 3:23; Rev. 21:8)."⁴

The modern equivalent of the "Pishon" River (v. 11) is unknown for certain. Commentators have suggested that it was the Indus, the Ganges,⁵ a river of Arabia, or a river of Mesopotamia. The "land of Havilah" seems to have been in southwestern Arabia (cf. 25:18). The "Gihon" (v. 13) may be the pre-flood Nile, since Cush (the region surrounding the river) in the Old Testament usually describes modern Ethiopia (cf. 10:6-8; Num. 12:1; 2 Sam. 18:19-33; 2 Kings 19:9; 2 Chron.

¹Sailhamer, "Genesis," p. 43.
²Ibid., p. 45.
³See Richard Bauckham, The Bible and Ecology.
⁴Waltke, Genesis, p. 85.
⁵Flavius Josephus, Antiquities of the Jews, 1:1:3. Josephus' writings reflect certain traditional Jewish opinions in his day (first century A.D.) and are not always consistent with Scripture.
14:9-15; Isa. 37:9; Jer. 13:23; 38—39). However, some interpreters believe this site was in the land of the Cassites, east of Mesopotamia. Perhaps these rivers are unidentifiable with certainty today because of the great geographical changes that the Flood produced.

The "Tigris" and "Euphrates" (v. 14) are now in the area formerly called Babylonia (modern Iraq). "Eden" (v. 15; meaning "delight," "pleasure," or perhaps "place of abundant waters") therefore appears to have been located in the general area of the Promised Land (cf. Isa. 51:3; Ezek. 36:35; Joel 2:3; Zech. 14:8; Rev. 22:1-2). The "Garden of (sometimes "in") Eden" seems to have been in the eastern part of Eden, perhaps in Mesopotamia. This rather extensive description sets the stage for Adam and Eve's expulsion from the garden in 3:24. It probably also encouraged the Israelites to anticipate the Promised Land.

"It can hardly be a coincidence that these rivers, along with the 'River of Egypt,' again play a role in marking boundaries of the land promised to Abraham (Ge 15:18)."

2:16-17 God gave Adam great freedom of choice. Note that He graciously gave him broad permission before one narrow restriction. God only forbade one of all the trees. God's command also implies that He alone knows what is good and not good for man. Adam would die because of disobedience, not because of the fruit of the tree. (Someone posted on their church marquee: "Forbidden fruits create many jams.")

---

2E.g., Ross, "Genesis," p. 31.
3Leupold, 1:124.
4Free, p. 30; Archer, Encyclopedia of ..., pp. 69-70.
6For a discussion of what God had in mind in the two trees, see Keil and Delitzsch, 1:84-86.
"Adam was denied the tree of the knowledge of good and evil to test his obedience and prove that he was willingly under God's command. The very name of the tree shows the sole purpose of the precept was to keep him content with his lot and to prevent him from becoming puffed up with wicked lust. But the promise by which he was bidden to hope for eternal life so long as he ate from the tree of life, and, conversely, the terrible threat of death once he tasted of the tree of the knowledge of good and evil, served to prove and exercise his faith."¹

"That famous tree symbolizes the ability to discern good (i.e., what advances life) and evil (i.e., what hinders life). Such knowledge belongs to God alone because, as Agur inferentially argues in Prov. 30:1-6, one must know comprehensively in order to speak absolutely about what is good and bad."²

"On the whole it seems probable that we should understand 'death' to mean a spiritual state, but a state aptly symbolized by physical death. When man sinned he passed into a new state, one dominated by, and at the same time symbolized by death. It is likely that spiritual death and physical death are not being thought of as separate, so that the one involves the other."³

"O, if Adam had only believed God about sin and death! O, if he had only stopped his ears against the father of lies! O, if he could only have foretasted guilt and remorse and agony of conscience as he was led up to the tree! O, if he could only at that fatal moment have foreseen that coming garden where the Son of God Himself

¹Calvin, 2:1:4. See also Pieters, p. 81.
²Waltke, Genesis, p. 46.
³Leon Morris, The Wages of Sin, p. 10.
lay among the dark olive-trees recoiling from sin and death in a sweat of blood! O, if he could only have seen spread out before him all the death-beds of all his children on the earth, and all the beds of their second death in hell! O Adam and Eve in Eden, and still under the tree of temptation, look before it is too late; look on through the endless ages at the unutterable woes that you are working!"\(^1\)

The Hebrew construction emphasizes the *certainty* of death, however it is defined. Why did Adam and Eve not die immediately? Because the phrase "on the day" (v. 17) in Hebrew is an idiom meaning "for certain" (cf. Exod. 10:28; 1 Kings 2:37, 42).

"Did God fail to carry out His promise? Certainly not! But the death that overtook the guilty pair that day was spiritual only; physical death did not come until centuries later (Gen. 5:5)."\(^2\)

"Before Adam and Eve fell into sin, God made a proposition to them that some have regarded as a covenant, as stated in Genesis 1:26-31 and 2:16-17. God gave Adam authority over the creatures of the world, commanded him to be fruitful, and gave him permission to eat from every green plant. The only restriction was that Adam and Eve not eat of the tree of the knowledge of good and evil, for if they did so they would surely die (2:16-17). Basically, the covenant was conditional, requiring obedience; but it also declared God’s purpose to elevate humanity to a place of authority and prominence, ultimately fulfilled by Christ."\(^3\)

---

\(^1\)Alexander Whyte, *Bible Characters*, 1:18.


The covenant in 2:16-17 has been called the Edenic Covenant. A covenant is a divine pronouncement by which God establishes a relationship involving responsibility. The relationship may involve Himself and an individual (e.g., Adam in the Edenic Covenant; Gen. 2:16-17), or Himself and humankind in general (e.g., humanity in the Noahic Covenant; Gen. 9:9-17). It may involve Himself and a nation (e.g., Israel in the Mosaic Covenant; Exod. 19:3-8), or Himself and a human family (e.g., David's family in the Davidic Covenant; 2 Sam. 7:12-17). A covenant of one type may overlap another covenant or other covenants of a different type or different types. For example, the Noahic Covenant overlaps the Mosaic Covenant, and the Davidic Covenant overlaps the Mosaic and New Covenants.

The biblical covenants normally involved unconditional promises in which God obligated Himself to accomplish certain purposes despite human failure, though they may contain conditional elements. An exception is the Mosaic Covenant, in which the fulfillment of the promises contained in the covenant depended on Israel's obedience. The Edenic Covenant was also different, in that God promised death for failure to obey His command to abstain from eating from the tree of the knowledge of good and evil.¹

The three universal covenants, which affect the whole human race, are the Edenic, Adamic, and Noahic Covenants. All the subsequent covenants affect Israel primarily, though they all affect the rest of humanity secondarily. There are eight major biblical covenants, and they all help us understand how God is working out His purposes with humankind. These are: the Edenic (Gen. 2:16), the Adamic (Gen. 3:15), the Noahic (Gen. 9:16), the Abrahamic (Gen. 12:2), the Mosaic (Exod. 19:5),

the Palestinian (Deut. 30:3), the Davidic (2 Sam. 7:16), and the New (Heb. 8:8).\(^1\)

"On the plane of human relationships, the truth almost always points to a covenant between two partners who are on an unequal footing; it is the stronger who proposes the berit [covenant]."\(^2\)

The Edenic Covenant required five things from Adam. He was: (1) to propagate the human race, (2) to subdue the earth for human habitation, (3) to exercise dominion over the animal creation, (4) to care for and enjoy the Garden of Eden and its fruits, and (5) to abstain from eating from one tree in the garden.

"Form Genesis to revelation the Bible makes it clear that no one was ever saved by his own good works but only by faith in the promises of God. Only in Eden was salvation put on the basis of obedience, with the accompanying warning of death for transgression of God’s command ..."\(^3\)

Verse 17 also contains the first prophecy in the Bible. Note that what God predicted was fulfilled literally and in detail.

"One of my books, *The Prophecy Knowledge Handbook* (Wheaton, Ill.: Victor, 1990), traces one thousand scriptural passages on prophecy, some of them single verses and some of them entire chapters. The book shows that half of these prophecies have already been fulfilled literally, an astounding proof that prophecy is accurate even when dealing with distant future events."\(^4\)

---

\(^1\) Some regard the so-called Palestinian Covenant as simply a clarification of the land promise in the Abrahamic Covenant, rather than an independent covenant, thus reducing the number of biblical covenants to seven.


\(^3\) Archer, *Encyclopedia of ...,* p. 70.

The creation of woman 2:18-25

2:18 Adam's creation was not complete because he lacked a "helper" who corresponded to him. This deficiency led God to pronounce Adam's condition "not good," that is, not in accordance with God's will for man. This provision of a companion follows the pattern of the triune God's own relationships in which He is surrounded by His heavenly court. Man should normally live in community, even as God does. God not only evaluated Adam's condition, He also rectified it.

"In Judaism, from the very moment of origins of the Jewish people, marriage was considered to be the ideal state."\(^1\)

God's provision of a wife for Adam is a concrete example of God knowing what is good for man.\(^2\) Companionship replaced isolation. For companionship to be satisfying, however, there must be oneness in the marriage (cf. 1:26-27). Self-centered living destroys oneness and companionship.

The term "helper" does not mean a servant. Jesus Christ used the same word (the Greek equivalent) to describe the Holy Spirit, who would help believers following the Lord's ascension (John 14:16, 26; 15:26; 16:7). "Helper" means one who supports us in our task of doing the will of God (cf. Deut. 33:7; Ps. 33:20; 115:9-11; 146:5; Hos. 13:9). It is not a demeaning term, since Scripture often uses it to describe God Himself (e.g., Ps. 33:20; 70:5; 115:9).

"The word help suggests that the man has governmental priority, but both sexes are mutually dependent on each other. The man is created first, with the woman to help the man, not vice versa (see also 1 Tim. 2:13); however, this does not mean ontological superiority or inferiority. The word helper, used for God sixteen of the nineteen times it appears in the Old

---


\(^2\) Sailhamer, "Genesis," p. 46.
Testament, signifies the woman's essential contribution, not inadequacy."¹

"Suitable to him" or "corresponding to him" means "equal and adequate." What was true of Adam (cf. v. 7) was also true of Eve. They both had the same nature. She was comparable to him, in contrast to the rest of the animal creation.

"Since Adam and Eve were a spiritual unity, living in integrity without sin, there was no need for instruction here on headship."²

This verse is not saying that it is "not good" for all men to remain single but that they should marry. This verse is often misquoted in modern marriage ceremonies to make this point. Some men are better off single than married. Paul explained that the single state is perfectly acceptable to God (1 Cor. 7). This verse is saying that God regarded His creation of Adam ('the man" in view, not just any man) as "not good" until He provided a suitable helper for Adam. The point is that the creation of humankind required both a male and a female to make it "good" in God's sight.

The ancient Near Eastern texts contain no account of the creation of woman. Moses, however, devoted six verses to her formation compared to only one for Adam (2:7). This indicates God's concern for women.

These verses do not mean that Adam named every individual animal. He apparently gave names to the different kinds God brought before him. This exercise demonstrated Adam's authority over the animals and the dissimilarity between humans and animals. As God had named things (ch. 1), now Adam demonstrated his right as God's viceregent to name the animals ("whatever the man called a living creature, that was its name"). He became aware of his own need for a companion as he named the animals.

¹Waltke, Genesis, p. 88.
²Ross, "Genesis," p. 31.
"Adam" (v. 20) comes from the Hebrew word for "earth" (adamah). "Adam" means "one that is red," like the earth.¹ Likewise the names of the animals probably expressed the nature of each animal. Names of humans in Old Testament times usually reflected the nature of the persons who bore them. This indicates that Adam must have had great intelligence and wisdom to be able to identify and label the various types of animals according to their natures.

Man is not like the other animals. Adam could find no suitable partner who was comparable to him among them (v. 20). So God graciously provided for his need by creating Eve.

The events of this sixth "day" of creation (cf. 1:24-31) have led some interpreters to conclude that Adam could not have done all that he is reported to have done in one 24-hour period.² However, he could have named all the animals very quickly.

2:21-22 More than once, when God initiated a new relationship for someone, He first put that person into a "deep sleep" (cf. 15:12; 28:11). He evidently did so to assure the recipient that his own works had no part in his receiving it.³ It was totally a gift of God's grace.

"... the woman was made of a rib out of the side of Adam, not made out of his head to rule over him, nor out of his feet to be trampled upon by him, but out of his side to be equal with him, under his arm to be protected, and near his heart to be beloved."⁴

"Similarly, it was observed [by the Rabbis], that God had not formed woman out of the head, lest she should become proud; nor out of the eye, lest she should lust; nor out of the ear, lest she should be curious; nor out of the mouth, lest she should

¹Josephus, Antiquities of..., 1:1:2.
²E.g., Walter C. Kaiser Jr., Toward an Old Testament Theology, p. 75.
³Sailhamer, "Genesis," p. 46.
⁴Matthew Henry, p. 7.
be talkative; nor out of the heart, lest she should be jealous; nor out of the hand, lest she should be covetous; nor out of the foot, lest she be a busybody; but out of the rib, which was always covered. Modesty was, therefore, a prime quality."¹

"Just as the rib is found at the side of the man and is attached to him, even so the good wife, the rib of her husband, stands at his side to be his helper-counterpart, and her soul is bound up with him."²

"Adam was put to sleep and his side opened that he might have a wife, but Jesus died on a cross and His blood shed that He might have a bride, the church (John 19:33-37)."³

God "fashioned" Eve (v. 22) to be a suitable companion for Adam. Then He presented her to him as a gift ("brought her to the man").

"That woman was taken from man no more implies the inferiority of woman to man than the taking of man from the ground (ʼadam from ʼadamah) implies the inferiority of man to the ground."⁴

"... the whole account of woman's creation has a poetic flavor: it is certainly mistaken to read it as an account of a clinical operation or as an attempt to explain some feature of man's anatomy. Rather, it brilliantly depicts the relation of man and wife. Here the ideal of marriage as it was understood in ancient Israel is being portrayed, a

---

³Wiersbe, p. 24.
⁴Merrill, "A Theology ...," p. 19.
relationship characterized by harmony and intimacy between the partners."¹

2:23 The word "woman" (Heb. *ishah*) sounds similar to the Hebrew word translated "man" (*ish*). This similarity reflects the close union between the two. Moses identified Adam by his relation to the ground, but Adam identified his wife in relation to himself.

"... name-giving in the ancient Orient was primarily an exercise of sovereignty, of command."²

"Gen. 2 is unique among the creation myths of the whole of the Ancient Near East in its appreciation of the meaning of woman, i.e., that human existence is a partnership of man and woman."³

"Though they are equal in nature, that man names woman (cf. 3:20) indicates that she is expected to be subordinate to him, an important presupposition of the ensuing narrative (3:17)."⁴

When Adam discovered that God had provided him with a partner like himself, not like one of the other animals, he rejoiced greatly. He received his mate as God's good gift to him because he trusted in God's wisdom, goodness, and integrity. Adam was now "beside himself"! (Pardon the pun.)

Following Adam's example, it is essential for every husband and wife to thankfully receive the mate God has given him or her as His best provision for them. To do so we must know and trust God's goodness. Our mate's differences are good things that God "brings to us" (as part of the whole "package"), that He will use as tools to shape us into the people He wants us to be. Failure to accept one's mate as a good gift from a loving

¹Wenham, p. 69.
³Westermann, p. 232.
⁴Wenham, p. 70.
God, leads to many problems in marriage, and frustrates God's purpose and plan for marriage. It expresses rejection of God and His provision for one's life. It also demonstrates unbelief, disobedience, and displeasure with God's character. Your mate needs your unconditional acceptance.

Sanford Yoder considered this verse to be the first of 26 poems in the Pentateuch. He believed that the only book of the Pentateuch that does not contain some poetry is Leviticus.

2:24 This verse clarifies God's purpose in marriage. It may be a parenthetical observation by the writer (cf. 10:9; 26:33; 32:32). It involves leaving parents and cleaving (being "joined") to one's spouse.²

"In Gen 2:24, 'for this cause' did not refer to God's making the first human beings 'male and female,' but to God's making Eve out of Adam's rib. The reason for a man's leaving his father and mother, cleaving to his wife, and becoming one flesh with her was not sexual, then. It had to do with Eve's origin in Adam: since woman came from man, man should unite himself with woman to recapture their original unity."³

Note that God gave the command to "leave" and "be joined" (or "cleave" AV, NASB 1971 ed., "be united" NIV, cf. NEB, "hold fast" ESV, "bond[s]" HCSB) to the man, not the woman, indicating that the man should take the leadership in marriage.

"... Israelite marriage was usually patrilocal, that is, the man continued to live in or near his parents'…"

¹Sanford C. Yoder, Poetry of the Old Testament, pp. 29-54.
²See Mathews, pp. 222-24.
home. It was the wife who left home to join her husband."

"Leaving" and "be[ing] joined" probably means both psychological and physical separation and union, under normal conditions. A newly married couple is wise to establish relative independence from both sets of parents emotionally, physically, financially, and in other ways. The couple also needs to solidify commitment to one another. The vows in marriage ceremonies express this commitment. Marriage is a covenant between two people to remain committed to one another.

"Be[ing] joined" resembles weaving two threads into one new piece of cloth. The word suggests the ideas of passion and permanence. In marriage, a man's priorities must change. Before, they were primarily to his parents, but now, they are primarily to his wife. Moses was probably correcting those cultures that gave parental bonds priority over marital bonds.

Marriage also involves physical consummation that unites two individuals as "one flesh" in a physical union that symbolizes that they become intimately related to each other—that they are a unit. "One flesh" is not the same as marriage (1 Cor. 6:16). For a marriage to exist, there must also be a commitment to "leave" parents and "be joined" to one's spouse from then on. The bond of marriage (spouse with spouse) even takes precedence over the bond of procreation (parent with child).

In the Old Testament there are many examples of polygamy. According to this verse, polygamy is a perversion of God's intention for marriage. His intent was that one man should be joined in marriage to one woman. Jesus and Paul later affirmed this view of marriage (Matt. 19:4-6; Mark 10:6-10; 1 Cor. 6:16; Eph.5:31).

2:25 The "naked" condition of Adam and Eve does not just describe their unclothed physical appearance. It also refers to the

---

1 Wenham, p. 70.
2 Waltke, Genesis, p. 90.
3 Alfred Edersheim, The Life and Times of Jesus the Messiah, 2:334.
physical and psychological oneness and transparency that existed in their relationship. *Physically* they were "naked"; they shared their bodies with each other freely. *Psychologically* they were "not ashamed"; they hid nothing from each other. They were at ease with one another, without any fear of exploitation for evil. Transparency should increase with trust, commitment, and friendship. It involves communicating what we know, think, feel, and are—with the person or persons we choose. We should not be transparent with everyone, however, but only with people who commit themselves to us. A transparent person is an open and vulnerable person.

This is a hinge (*janus*) verse; it looks backward into chapter 2 and forward into chapter 3.\(^1\) The similarity of the Hebrew words for naked ("'arom") and "crafty" (3:1, "'arum") points to a wordplay. The word here for "nakedness" means unclothed, whereas the one in 3:7 ("'erom"), and elsewhere, describes those under God's judgment (cf. Deut. 28:48; Ezek. 16:39; 23:29).\(^2\)

To summarize, verses 18-25 teach us much about marriage:

1. God instituted it.

2. God intended it to be monogamous (not monotonous). One woman completed Adam.

3. God intended it to be heterosexual. This passage does not support the idea that same-sex marriage was in God's plan when He instituted marriage.\(^3\)

4. It involves both a physical and a spiritual union.

5. The husband was to be the head of the wife. God created Adam before Eve, and He created Eve for Adam (cf. 1 Cor. 11:8-9; 1 Tim. 2:13).

---

\(^1\) Janus was a Roman god depicted as having two faces on his head, one looking backward and the other looking forward.

\(^2\) Sailhamer, "Genesis," p. 49.

6. A woman can be a complete person without bearing children. A wife’s primary function in marriage is to complement her husband, not to bear children.

7. Normally, a couple, following the lead of their representatives, Adam and Eve, should "be fruitful and multiply" (1:28). God did not specify how early in the marriage and to what extent. He left this up to the couple. Couples may choose when and how many children they plan to have, though God may sovereignly overrule their plans.

The Family Ministry organization has summarized these purposes as five. Marriage should: mirror God's image, multiply a godly heritage, manage God's realm, mutually complete one another, and model Christ's relationship to the church.\(^1\)

The Bible writers made use of the creation account in many different ways, and we too can use it in these ways for our own personal benefit. These purposes include: glorifying the God of creation, stimulating praise and worship, and fortifying faith in God's promises. They also include: learning about God's attributes, expressing wonder at man's position in God's universe, dispelling fear, and exalting the Lord Jesus.\(^2\)

However, a main point of this unit (2:4-25) seems clearly to be that God made human beings "male and female," with a spiritual capacity, and mutually dependent. He did so that they might serve and obey Him, and so enjoy His creation. As with Adam and Eve, God later placed Israel in a place of blessing. The nation could enjoy His blessing by being obedient and trusting, with the assistance He had provided for them in marriage. Even today, serving and obeying God is man's greatest privilege, and we find help to do this in the marriage relationship.

"Two primary themes dominate the Creation account [1:1—2:25]: the land and the blessing."\(^3\)

The theme of descendants (seed) is also present, though perhaps not as prominent (1:28).

---

\(^1\) *Family Life Conference*, p. 45.


The temptation of Eve 3:1-5

As in chapters 1 and 2, the word of the LORD is very important in chapter 3. Here Adam and Eve doubted God's integrity when He spoke to them. This pericope also has something to teach about the acquisition of wisdom. Chapter 2 anticipated God's gift of the Promised Land to the original readers, and chapter 3 anticipates their exile from it.¹

Claus Westermann observed that chapters 1 through 11 (really 3 through 11, I think) "are in fact dominated by the crime/punishment motif which shapes the narrative."²

We cannot read this chapter without wondering if the events described really happened as presented, or if this is an allegory or pictorial description merely designed to teach some truth. The rest of Scripture regards these things as having actually happened (cf. 2 Cor. 11:3; 2 Tim. 2:13). Thus we conclude that we should take this chapter literally.³

3:1 Who was the tempter? Among evangelicals there are two major views regarding the identity of "the serpent."

1. **It was a literal snake.**
   
   a. Moses called it an "animal of the field" (v. 1).
   
   b. It possessed a natural characteristic of serpents: subtlety.
   
   c. Though snakes normally do not speak, Satan could have spoken through a snake. A spirit being spoke through Balaam's donkey (Num. 22:21-30), and spirit beings spoke through demoniacs in Jesus' day.
   
   d. God judged a snake in this case (v. 14).⁴

¹Idem, "Genesis," pp. 48-49.
²Claus Westermann, *The Promises to the Fathers*, p. 55.
2. **It was Satan himself described here as a snake.**

   a. God called Satan a "serpent" elsewhere in Scripture (e.g., Rev. 20:2).

   b. Satan can and does *speak*, as recorded elsewhere in Scripture (e.g., Job 1).

   c. What the serpent said here is in character for Satan, who is also called "the father of lies" (John 8:44).

Another less popular view is that the serpent was not a reptile like serpents today, but a beautiful creature that Satan used to deceive Eve.¹

Probably the tempter was actually Satan, who in this event possessed and controlled a literal snake.² Satan came to Eve disguised, unexpected, and using a subordinate, as he still does today.

God made Adam and Eve to *rule over* the plants and animals (1:28), but Satan was able to subvert this and make them *subject to* an animal. Ever since, man has not been able to dominate his environment. Jesus Christ will reverse this when He, the second Adam, comes back to the earth to rule and reign.

The pattern of temptation observable here is one that Satan has used often and still uses (cf. the temptations of Achan, David, and Jesus Christ).

Satan's first step was to plant a seed of doubt in Eve's mind concerning God's *good character and His purpose to bless her* (vv. 1-3). The key phrase is "from any" (v. 1). Satan focused Eve's attention on God's one prohibition. He suggested that God did not really want what was best for Adam and Eve, but rather was withholding something from them that was

---

¹Gaebelein, 1:1:23.
²See Robert P. Lightner, *Angels, Satan, and Demons*, pp. 77-78.
essentially good. Satan implied that God's line of protection was actually a line that He drew because He was selfish! Satan still tempts women to believe that God's role for them is primarily for His benefit rather than for their welfare.¹

The Hebrew word translated "cunning" ('arum) does not imply "wicked" as much as "wise." Eve's sin also was not so much an act of great wickedness as it was an act of great folly. She already had all the good she needed, but she wanted more. She wanted to glorify self, not God.

3:2-3

Eve was vulnerable to the serpent's suggestion to doubt God's goodness, because she distorted the word of God. She added to the words "or touch it" (v. 3).

"In her reply to [the serpent's] question, she perverted and misquoted three times the divine law to which she and Adam were subject: (1) She disparaged her privileges by misquoting the terms of the Divine permission as to the other trees. (2) She overstated the restrictions by misquoting the Divine prohibition. (3) She underrated her obligations by misquoting the Divine penalty."²

God reveals His character through His word—both His spoken word, and His written Word. When we do not remember His Word precisely, a distorted concept of God is often the result. This led Eve to doubt God's goodness.

The serpent's claim directly contradicted the main point of chapters 1 and 2, namely, that God would provide what is good for mankind.

"It is because 'Yahweh Elohim' expresses so strongly the basic OT convictions about God's being both creator and Israel's covenant partner that the serpent and the woman avoid the term in their discussion. The god they are talking about is malevolent, secretive, and concerned to restrict

¹ *Family Life* ..., p. 99.
man: his character is so different from that of Yahweh Elohim that the narrative pointedly avoids the name in the dialogue of 3:1-5.\textsuperscript{1}

One natural tendency that we have, when we do not understand or recall God's Word precisely, is to make it more restrictive than He does. This is what Eve did. This is a form of legalism.

3:4-5

The second step in Satan's temptation was to deny God's word. In denying it, he imputed motives to God that were not consistent with God's character. God's true motive was the welfare of man, but the serpent implied it was God's welfare at man's expense.

This added suggestion seemed consistent with what the serpent had already implied about God's motives in verse 1. Having entertained a doubt concerning God's word, Eve was ready to accept a denial of His word.

What the serpent said about Eve being "like God (or gods, divine beings)" (v. 5) was a half-truth. Ironically, she was already "like God," having been made in His image (1:26). She also knew good. She did become like God, or divine beings (Heb. 'elohim), in that she obtained a greater knowledge of good and evil by eating of the tree. However, she became less like God, because she was no longer innocent of sin. Her relationship with God suffered. She also became like God in that she became the center of her world and assumed the authority to do what she pleased. Though she remained like God, she could no longer enjoy unhindered fellowship with God (3:24).

We, like Eve, are sometimes tempted to explore evil for our own sensual gratification. We pursue the evil behavior of sinners, various forms of evil, and the sensations that come along with evil. We know what is good, but we also want to satisfy our curiosity about evil. In doing this, we reenact Eve's sin—sin so serious that it plunged the human race into its

\textsuperscript{1}Wenham, p. 57.
present fallen condition. Paul wanted his Roman readers "to be wise in what is good, and innocent in what is evil" (Rom. 16:19). Sometimes ignorance is a good thing, specifically ignorance of various forms of evil.

The first doctrines that Satan denied in Scripture was that sin results in death and that God will not punish sin. These are still the truths that Satan tries the hardest to get people to disbelieve.

**The Fall 3:6-8**

In this section, the relationship that God had established with man, which is the focus of the creation story, is broken. We can gain great insight into human nature from this story. Adam and Eve’s behavior as recorded here has been repeated by every one of their descendants.

"It is hardly too much to say that this chapter is the pivot of the Bible ... With the exception of the fact of Creation, we have here the record of the most important and far-reaching event in the world's history—the entrance of sin."¹

"... Genesis does not explain the origins of evil; rather, the biblical account, if anything, says where evil does not have its source. Evil was not inherent in man nor can it be said that sin was the consequence of divine entrapment. The tempter stands outside the human pair and stands opposed to God's word."²

3:6 Having succumbed to temptation, Eve disobeyed God’s will. Whereas the serpent initiated the first two steps, he let Eve’s natural desires (her flesh) carry her into his trap. Instead of listening to the serpent, Eve should have spoken to it what God had said (His prohibition), as Jesus did when He was tempted (Matt. 4:4, 7, 10). God commissioned man to "subdue" the earth, including the animal world (1:28), but instead he allowed it to subdue him, by listening and heeding the serpent.

---

¹ Thomas, *Genesis*, p. 46.
² Mathews, p. 226.
All three avenues of fleshly temptation are present in verse 6:

1. Eve saw that the tree was "good for food" (the lust of the flesh: the desire to do something contrary to God's will, i.e., eat the tasty fruit).

2. It was "delightful to look at" (the lust of the eyes: the desire to have something apart from God's will, i.e., possess the beautiful fruit).

3. It was "desirable for obtaining wisdom" (the pride of life: the desire to be something apart from God's will, i.e., as wise as God, or gods). It was the illegitimate quest for forbidden wisdom that led Eve to disobey God.1

"Our first parents, who knew so much, did not know this—that they knew enough."2

Eve saw, coveted, and took and ate the fruit—Moses did not tell us what kind of fruit it was—(cf. Josh. 7:21; 2 Sam. 11:2-4). We see, then lust, then act.

"We have already noted how the scenes themselves are arranged in a concentric palistrophic pattern (ABCDABA). Within this central scene, the same device is used; the midpoint 'and he ate' employs the key verb of this tale—'eat.' On either side we have the woman's hopes of eating, 'good to eat,' 'delight to the eyes,' 'giving insight,' balanced by its effects, 'eyes opened,' 'knowing they were nude,' 'hiding in the trees.' These contrasts are deliberately drawn."3

---

1 Sailhamer, "Genesis," p. 51.
2 Matthew Henry, p. 9.
3 Wenham, p. 75.
"The proposition that an adult can gaze at anything is ludicrous and naive, for gazing is too often followed by desiring and sinning."¹

In view of Jesus' statement that a lustful look is as sinful as an overt act of sin (Matt. 5:27-28), did Eve commit the first sin when she desired the forbidden fruit? Temptations are not sins until we respond by giving in to them. Eve yielded to temptation when she ate the fruit. Until she did that, she was only experiencing temptation (desire). God created man in His image to reflect His desires (as well as to rule over His creation), so when we yield to desires (temptations) that are contrary to God's desires, we are sinning.

"Here is the essence of covetousness. It is the attitude that says I need something I do not now have in order to be happy."²

"What Adam and Eve sought from the tree of knowledge was not philosophical or scientific knowledge desired by the Greeks, but practical knowledge that would give them blessing and fulfillment."³

"The problem was not the fruit on the tree; it was the pair on the ground!"⁴

Ignorance or disregard of God's Word makes one very vulnerable to temptation (Ps. 119:11). These conditions produce distrust, dissatisfaction, and finally disobedience. Failure to appreciate God's goodness leads to distrust of His goodness. God's prohibitions as well as His provisions are for our good.

"The root of sin should be understood. The foundation of all sin lies in man's desire of self-assertion and his determination to be independent

²Hamilton, p. 190.
³K. Armstrong, In the Beginning, p. 27.
⁴McGee, 5:508.
of God. Adam and Eve chafed under the restriction laid upon them by the command of God, and it was in opposition to this that they asserted themselves, and thereby fell. Man does not like to be dependent upon another, and subject to commands upon another, and subject to commands from without. He desires to go his own way, to be his own master; and as a consequence he sins, and becomes 'lord of himself, that heritage of woe.'"{1}

"The basic position of man in rebellion against God is that man is at the centre of the universe, that he is autonomous—here lies his rebellion."{2}

"Since the day that Adam took the fruit of the tree of knowledge, man has been engaged in deciding what is good and what is evil."{3}

God has always asked people to believe and trust His promise that His will for us will result in our blessing. However, Satan has always urged us to have experiences that will convince us that we can obtain even greater blessings. He says, "Try it; you'll like it!" But God says, "Trust me, and you'll live." Satan's appeal to get us to experience something, just to assure ourselves of its goodness, directly contradicts God's will for us. It is the way of sight rather than the way of faith.

Adam chose to obey his wife rather than God (cf. 3:17).

"... Adam would never have dared oppose God's authority unless he had disbelieved in God's Word."{4}

"In this integrity [i.e., in his unfallen state] man by free will had the power, if he so willed, to attain eternal life. Yet his choice of good and evil was

---

{1} Thomas, Genesis, p. 49. Cf. Waltke, Genesis, p. 103.
{2} Francis A. Schaeffer, Escape from Reason, p. 42.
{3} Watchman Nee, Sit. Walk. Stand, p. 17.
{4} Calvin, 2:1:4.
free, and not that alone, but the highest rectitude was in his mind and will, and all the organic parts were rightly composed to obedience, until in destroying himself he corrupted his own blessings.

"Now we need bear only this in mind: man was far different at the first creation from his whole posterity, who, deriving their origin from him in his corrupted state, have contracted from him a hereditary taint. For, the individual parts of his soul were formed to uprightness, the soundness of his mind stood firm, and his will was free to choose the good. But the reason he [God] did not sustain man by the virtue of perseverance [i.e., keep him from sinning] lies hidden in his plan."

3:7-8 The separation (spiritual death) that sin produces in man’s relationship with God stands out clearly in these verses. Adam and Eve’s new knowledge, that the serpent promised would make them as God, actually taught them that they were no longer even like each other. They were ashamed of their nakedness and "sewed fig leaves together" in order to hide their differences from each other (v. 7). Perhaps they chose fig leaves because they are large and strong.

The "cool" of the day (v. 8) is literally the "wind" of the day. God came to Adam and Eve in this wind. He came in a wind earlier in Creation (1:2) and later to Job (Job 38:1), Israel (Exod. 20:18-21; cf. Deut. 5:25), and Elijah (1 Kings 19:11).

"Jeffrey Niehaus has proposed a different translation of the verse, as follows: 'Then the man and his wife heard the thunder of Yahweh God as he was going back and forth in the garden in the wind of the storm and they hid from Yahweh God among the trees of the garden.'"

---

1Ibid., 1:15:8.
2Sailhamer, "Genesis," p. 52.
3Douglas K. Stuart, "'The Cool of the Day' (Gen. 3:8) and 'the Way He Should Go' (Prov. 22:6)," Bibliotheca Sacra 171:683 (July-September 2014):259. His quotation is from
"Though unlikely to be adopted by published Bibles anytime soon and not seen by all scholars as proving the presence of a storm theophany in the passage, Niehaus's translation of Genesis 3:8 remains the correct one. The verse is about God's appearance in the wind of a storm, not the cool of the day."\(^1\)

"A more complete transformation could not be imagined. The trust of innocence is replaced by the fear of guilt. The trees that God created for man to look at (2:9) are now his hiding place to prevent God seeing him."\(^2\)

Verse 7 marks the beginning of the second dispensation, the dispensation of Conscience (or moral responsibility). Adam and Eve had failed in their responsibility under the dispensation of Innocence; they were now sinners. They had rebelled against a specific command of God (2:16-17), and this rebellion marked a transition from theoretical to experiential knowledge of good and evil. Their new responsibility now became to do all known good, to abstain from all known evil, and to approach God through blood sacrifice, which anticipated the sacrifice of Christ. As a period of testing for humanity, the dispensation of Conscience ended with the Flood. However, people continued to be morally responsible to God, as He added further revelations of Himself and His will, in succeeding ages (cf. Acts 14:14-16; Rom. 2:15; 2 Cor. 4:2).

Eve did not die at once physically, but she did die at once spiritually. She experienced alienation in her relationship with God. "Death" means separation in the Bible, never annihilation. Sin always results in alienation: theologically (between God and man), sociologically (between man and man), psychologically (between man and himself), and ecologically (between man and nature). We might also add, sexually (between men and women) and domestically (between husbands and wives).

---

\(^2\) Ibid., p. 263.
Three kinds of death appear in Scripture: physical—separation of the body and soul (the material and immaterial parts of the person), spiritual—separation of the person and God, and eternal—permanent separation of the person and God.

The Apostle Paul wrote that Eve was "deceived" (1 Tim. 2:14). This does not mean that women are by nature more easily subject to deception than men.

"There is nothing in Scripture to suggest that the woman was inferior to the man in any way or more susceptible to temptation than he was."¹

"The tempter addresses himself to the woman, probably not because she is more open to temptation and prone to sin, for that is hardly the conception of the Old Testament elsewhere. The reason may have lain in this, that the woman had not personally received the prohibition from God, as Adam had."²

Eve may have received God's command through Adam. Perhaps Satan appealed to Eve because she was not only under God's authority—but also under her husband's authority—and, therefore, more inclined to think God was withholding something from her.

"It is interesting to observe that when this sin is referred to throughout Scripture, it is not referred to as the sin of Eve—but rather as the sin of Adam! The phrase in verse 6, 'with her,' seems to suggest that Adam was at Eve's side when she was tempted by Satan. As God's theocratic administrator, and as the appointed head of the family, it was Adam's responsibility to safeguard Eve and to assure that she remained in submission to the command of God. But Adam failed in his God-given responsibility and permitted Eve to eat of the forbidden fruit."³

Adam, however, "was not deceived" (1 Tim. 2:14). He sinned with his eyes wide open (v. 6b). Eve's was a sin of initiative, whereas Adam's was one of

---

³Pentecost, p. 37.
acquiescence.¹ Too much aggressiveness in a woman, and too much passivity in a man, still are tendencies of the respective sexes. Death "passed unto all men" (Rom. 5:12) when Adam sinned—because Adam, not Eve, was the head of the human race under God's administration (cf. 3:18-23).²

Some commentators have interpreted eating the forbidden fruit as a euphemism for having sexual intercourse.³ They say that the original sin was a sexual sin. However, the text makes such an interpretation impossible. Eve sinned first (v. 6), she sinned alone (v. 6), and besides, God had previously approved sex (1:28).

"Adam and Eve's nakedness (2:25) does not idealize nudity but shows why human beings must wear clothes. With the Fall came a tragic loss of innocence (together with resulting shame). When people's minds are enlightened by the gospel, they understand their moral frailty and practice customs of dress that shield them against sexual temptation."⁴

The timeless lesson of these verses is, that victory over the temptation to violate God's good will, depends on a thorough knowledge of God's Word and an unwavering confidence in God's goodness. As Israel faced temptations to depart from God's revealed will, from the pagans she encountered, this record of the Fall would have provided a resource for remaining faithful, as it does for us today. Often these temptations attract because they promise superior blessing and fulfillment, even divinity. Therefore, knowing God's Word is extremely important (cf. Deut. 6:5-9, 13-25; Ps. 119:9-16). Satan tempted Jesus similar to the way he tempted Eve. However, Jesus overcame victoriously by accurately using the Word of God to remain faithful to the will of God. True wisdom comes by obeying, not disobeying, God's Word.

God's confrontation of the sinners 3:9-13

This section begins to relate the effects of the Fall. We now see the God, who acted as Creator and Benefactor in chapters 1 and 2, acting as Judge

---

¹Hamilton, p. 191.
⁴Waltke, Genesis, p. 103.
He first interrogated the offenders to obtain a confession, then announced new conditions for life, and finally provided for the sinners graciously. God's grace is His divine favor, forgiveness, and righteousness freely granted. The sinners' responsibility was to confess their sins and to accept and trust in God's provision for them (cf. 1 John 1:9). They did not confess their sins but blamed others for them.

"Note, Though [sic though] God knows all our sins, yet he will know them from us, and requires from us an ingenuous confession of them; not that he may be informed, but that we may be humbled."\(^1\)

Note also that God took the initiative in seeking out the sinners to re-establish a relationship with them. Evidence of God's love is His unwillingness to abandon those He loved, even when they failed to do His will. His approach was tender as well as gracious (vv. 9, 11, 13).

"In ... spite of the apparent similarity in expression to pagan religions the anthropomorphisms of the Old Testament reveal all the more remarkably a sharply contrasting concept of deity."\(^2\)

"It's unfortunate that some people have made an issue over what pronouns we should use when referring to God. The Bible consistently uses 'he,' but not because the male gender is more godlike. God is spirit, and spirit beings (including angels) have no gender. For some reason, people who object to God being called 'he' don't object when Satan is called 'he'; yet Satan is also a spirit creature who is sexless."\(^3\)

The text records several effects of the Fall on Adam and Eve.

1. They felt guilt and shame (v. 7).
2. They tried to change these conditions by their own efforts (v. 7).
3. They fled from God's presence out of fear of Him (vv. 8, 10).

---

\(^1\)Matthew Henry, p. 10. See also Archer, *Encyclopedia of ...*, pp. 75.


\(^3\)Wiersbe, p. 67.
4. They tried to blame their sin on another rather than confessing personal responsibility (vv. 12, 13).

The fact that Adam viewed God's good gift to him—Eve—as the source of his trouble, shows how far he fell (v. 12). He virtually accused God of causing him to fall, by God having given him—what he now regarded to be—a bad gift! Contrast David's proper response in 2 Samuel 12:13.

The judgment of the guilty 3:14-21

As the result of man's disobedience to God, the creation suffered a curse and began to deteriorate. Evolution teaches that man is improving his condition through self-effort. The Bible teaches that man is destroying his condition through sin. Having been thrice blessed by God (1:22, 28; 2:3), the creation now experienced a triple curse (3:14, 17; 4:11).

"In the Bible, to curse means to invoke God's judgment on someone, usually for some particular offense."¹

Nevertheless, God also began re-creation, with the promise of the seed, the land, the dominion, and the rest for trusting in His powerful Word.

Verses 14-19 reveal the terms of the second major biblical covenant, the Adamic Covenant. Here God specified the conditions under which fallen man was to live (until God lifts His curse on creation in the messianic kingdom; Rom. 8:21). The elements of this covenant can be summarized as follows: God cursed the serpent (v. 14), but promised a Redeemer (v. 15). He changed the status of the woman in two respects: she would experience sorrow and pain in motherhood, and continuing headship by the man (v. 16). God also changed Adam and Eve's light workload, in Eden, to burdensome labor and inevitable sorrow, resulting from His curse on the earth (vv. 17-19). Finally, He promised certain physical death for Adam and all his descendants (v. 19).

¹Wenham, p. 78.
Effects on the serpent 3:14-15

God's judgment on each trespasser (the snake, the woman, and the man) involved both a life function and a relationship.\(^1\) In each case, the punishment corresponded to the nature of the crime.

"Curses are uttered against the serpent and the ground, but not against the man and woman, implying that the blessing has not been utterly lost. It is not until human murder, a transgression against the *imago Dei* [image of God], that a person (Cain) receives the divine curse \(^2\)

1. The snake had been "cunning" (Heb. *'arum*), but now it was "cursed" (Heb. *'arur*). It had to move on its belly (v. 14). Some commentators take this literally and conclude that the snake had legs before God cursed it.\(^3\) Others take it figuratively as a reference to the resultant despised condition of the snake (cf. Lev. 11:42).\(^4\) Josephus wrote that God also deprived the serpent of speech at this time,\(^5\) but there is no biblical support for this conclusion.

2. It would eat dust (v. 14). Since snakes do not literally feed on dust, many interpreters take this statement figuratively. Eating dust is an expression used in other ancient Near Eastern writings to describe the lowest of all forms of life. In the Bible, it also describes humiliation and total defeat (cf. Ps. 44:25; 72:9; Isa. 25:12; 49:23; 65:25; Mic. 7:17).\(^6\) Another explanation is that this is the language of appearance: snakes *appear* to eat dust now, since they glide along on their bellies.

God revealed later through Isaiah that serpents will eat dust during the Millennium (the thousand-year earthly reign of Christ, Isa. 65:25). Presently snakes eat plants and animals. Perhaps God will yet fulfill this part of what He predicted here in Genesis, concerning snakes, in the millennial kingdom. This is a literal interpretation. If this is correct,

---

\(^2\) Mathews, p. 243.
\(^3\) E.g., Josephus, *Antiquities of..., 1:1:4*.
\(^4\) E.g., J. D. Davis, pp. 76-77; Leupold, 1:162; Kidner, p. 70; Mathews, p. 244.
then perhaps we should also take the former part of the curse literally, namely, that snakes did not travel on their bellies before the Fall. Alternatively, Isaiah may have meant that serpents will be harmless (defeated; no longer a threat), after God lifts the curse on creation in the Millennium. I prefer this interpretation.

Was it fair of God to curse the serpent, since it was the instrument that Satan used to tempt Eve? H. C. Leupold cited similar instances (6:7; 7:21; Josh. 7:24) and quoted Chrysostom as follows:

"God destroys the instrument that brought His creature to fall 'just as a loving father, when punishing the murderer of his son, might snap in two the sword or dagger with which the murder had been committed.'"1

3. There would be antagonism (enmity) between the serpent and human beings (v. 15a). This obviously exists between snakes and people, but God's intention in this verse seems to include the person behind the snake (Satan) as well as, and even more than, the snake itself.

"... the seed of the serpent refers to natural humanity whom he has led into rebellion against God. Humanity is now divided into two communities: the elect, who love God, and the reprobate, who love self (John 8:31-32, 44; 1 John 3:8). Each of the characters of Genesis will be either of the seed of the woman that reproduces her spiritual propensity, or of the seed of the Serpent that reproduces his unbelief."2

4. Mankind (through Christ) would eventually destroy the serpent, though the serpent would wound mankind (and Christ; v. 15b). This is a prophecy of the victory of the ultimate "Seed" of the woman (Messiah) over Satan (cf. Rev. 19:1-5; Gal. 3:16, 19; Heb. 2:14; 1 John 3:8).3

---

1Leupold, 1:163.
"The comparative importance of predictive prophecy as related to other aspects of Bible truth is indicated by the fact that at least one-fifth of the Bible was, at the time it was written, an anticipation of the future."¹

"The bruising of the head suggests that the serpent's wound will be fatal; the bruising of the heel is a warning that even the victor will not come away unscathed."²

Most interpreters have recognized this verse as the first biblical promise and prophecy of the provision of salvation (the protoevangelium or "first gospel").³ The rest of the book, in fact the whole Old Testament, proceeds to point ahead to that Seed: Jesus Christ.⁴

"The snake, for the author, is representative of someone or something else. The snake is represented by his 'seed.' When that 'seed' is crushed, the head of the snake is crushed. Consequently more is at stake in this brief passage than the reader is at first aware of. A program is set forth. A plot is established that will take the author far beyond this or that snake and his 'seed.' It is what the snake and His [sic his] 'seed' represent that lies at the center of the author's focus. With that 'one' lies the 'enmity' that must be crushed."⁵

"The text in context provides an outline that is correct and clear in pattern but not complete in all details. Numerous questions are left unanswered. When Christ died on the cross and rose from the dead, the details of the climax were filled in and specified, but the text does


²Cochrane, p. 44.


⁴See Max I. Reich, *The Messianic Hope of Israel*, for a study of the messianic prophecies in the Old Testament.

⁵Sailhamer, "Genesis," p. 55. See also Mathews, pp. 246-48.
not demand to be reinterpreted. Nor does it demand interpretation in a way not suggested in context."¹

"The patriarchs, and the ancient world in general, were perfectly acquainted with the grand primeval promise of Eden, and they knew right well that the bruising of the heel of the promised seed implied his death, and that the curse could be removed from the world only by the death of the grand Deliverer. ... There is hardly a people or kindred on earth in whose mythology it is not shadowed forth."²

Some interpreters have believed that this is the first prediction of the virgin birth of Messiah, since it is specifically the seed of "the woman" and not the man that would crush the serpent.³ I believe that this language allows for a virgin birth but does not necessarily predict it.⁴

God cursed all animals and the whole creation because of the Fall (Rom. 8:20), but He made the snake the most despicable of all the animals for its roll in the Fall.

"The snake is a natural symbol of sin. It comes spontaneously to the mind; for sin, like the serpent, is a monster of hideous mien which creeps in by stealth and infuses poison by its bite."⁵

"Words possess power. God's words of blessing and of curse are most powerful. They determine our lives."⁶

²Alexander Hislop, The Two Babylons, pp. 59, 60.
⁴See also John F. Walvoord, Jesus Christ Our Lord, p 57.
⁵J. D. Davis, p. 73.
J. Barton Payne took this *cursing of the serpent* as an indication that the *fall of Satan* occurred almost simultaneously.\(^1\) This view has not found much acceptance.

**Effects on women 3:16**

1. Eve would experience *increased* "pain" in bearing children. There evidently would have been some pain in the process of bearing children even before the Fall, but Eve and her daughters would experience increased pain ("I will greatly multiply your pain"; emphasis added). The text does not say that God promised more conception as well as more pain, as the NKJV translation "I will greatly multiply your sorrow and your conception" implies.\(^2\) "Pain and childbirth" (a more literal translation than "pain in childbirth") is probably another hendiadys in the Hebrew text meaning "painful pregnancy" or "sorrowful conception" (cf. 1:2; 4:12; 9:2; Ps. 9:2). The HCSB has "I will intensify your labor pains, and you will bear children in anguish." Women's joy in conceiving and bearing children would be turned to sorrow by the pain involved in it.\(^3\)

2. Women's desire would be for their husbands. There have been several different interpretations of what the woman's "desire" would be.

   a. The phrase "your desire will be for your husband" means that a woman's desire would be subject to her husband's desire.

   "Her desire, whatever it may be, will not be her own. She cannot do what she wishes, for her husband rules over her like a despot and whatever she wishes is subject to his will."\(^4\)

   b. The woman will have a great longing, yearning, and psychological dependence on her husband.

   "This yearning is morbid. It is not merely sexual yearning. It includes the attraction that woman

---


\(^2\) Cf. Schaeffer, *Genesis in ...,* p. 93.

\(^3\) *The Nelson ...,* p. 11.

experiences for man which she cannot root from her nature. Independent feminists may seek to banish it, but it persists in cropping out."


\[2\] Foh, p. 69. See also her article, "What is the Woman's Desire?" Westminster Theological Journal 37:3 (Spring 1975):376-383; Mathews, p. 251; Waltke, Genesis, p. 94; Pyne, p. 156.

\[3\] Cochrane, p. 45.
punishment. It may be concluded that, in spite of the Fall, the woman will have a longing for intimacy with man involving more than sexual intimacy.¹

This view takes this statement of God as a blessing rather than a curse.

**Effects on humanity generally 3:17-19**

In view of Adam's sin, we might have expected God to curse him, but, graciously, God cursed the ground for his sake.²

1. Adam would have to work hard ("hard labor," "painful labor" NKJV, "struggle" CEV) to obtain a living from "the ground" (vv. 17-18).³ Adam already had received the privilege of enjoying the garden (2:15), but this had not required "painful toil" (NIV).

   "As for the man, his punishment consists in the hardship and skimpiness of his livelihood, which he now must seek for himself. The woman's punishment struck at the deepest root of her being as wife and mother, the man's strikes at the innermost nerve of his life: his work, his activity, and provision for sustenance."⁴

   "If Adam had not sinned, he had not sweated."⁵

   "These punishments represent retaliatory justice. Adam and Eve sinned by eating; they would suffer in order to eat. She manipulated her husband; she would be mastered by her husband. The serpent destroyed the human race; he will be destroyed."⁶

   "In drawing a contrast between the condition of the land before and after the Fall, the author shows that the present condition of the land was not the way it was

---

²Newell, p. 10.
³CEV refers to *The Holy Bible: Contemporary English Version*.
⁴von Rad, pp. 93-94.
⁵Matthew Henry, p. 11.
⁶Ross, "Genesis," p. 33.
intended to be. Rather, the state of the land was the result of human rebellion. In so doing, the author has paved the way for a central motif in the structure of biblical eschatology, the hope of a 'new heaven and a new earth' (cf. Isa 65:17; [sic] Ro 8:22-24; Rev 21:1)."¹

2. People would "return to dust" when they died (v. 19). Rather than living forever, experiencing physical immortality, people would now die physically and experience physical mortality (cf. Rom. 5:12-14).

"Genesis 3:19 does not attribute the cause of death to the original composition of the human body, so that man would ultimately have died anyway, but states merely one of the consequences of death: Since the human body was formed from the dust of the earth, it shall, upon death, be resolved to earth again."²

Verse 18 shows the reversal of the land's condition before and after the Fall. Verse 19 shows the same for mankind's condition.

"Adam and Eve failed to observe the restrictions of the Edenic covenant [1:26-31; 2:16-17]. Innocence was lost and conscience was born.

"Having failed under the Edenic covenant, human beings were then faced with the provisions of the Adamic covenant [3:14-19]. That covenant was unconditional in the sense that Adam and Eve's descendants would be unable by human effort to escape the consequences of sin.

"A ray of light is provided, however, in the Adamic covenant because God promised that a redeemer would come [3:15]. This is the introduction of the great theme of grace and redemption found in the Scriptures. ...

"Unless tempered by the grace of God and changed by subsequent promises, people continue to the present time to labor under the provisions of the Adamic covenant."\(^1\)

"How admirably the satisfaction our Lord Jesus made by his death and sufferings answered to the sentence here passed upon our first parents. (1) Did travelling pains come in with sin? We read of *the travail of Christ’s soul* (Isa. liii. 11). (2) Did subjection come in with sin? Christ was made under the law, Gal. iv. 4. (3) Did the curse come in with sin? Christ was made a curse for us died a cursed death, Gal. iii. 13. (4) Did thorns come in with sin? He was crowned with thorns for us. (5) Did sweat come in with sin? He for us did sweat as it were great drops of blood. (6) Did sorrow come in with sin? He was a man of sorrows, his soul was, in his agony, exceedingly sorrowful. (7) Did death come in with sin? He became obedient unto death. Thus is the plaster [bandage] as wide as the wound. Blessed be God for Jesus Christ!"\(^2\)

**Additional effects on Adam and Eve 3:20-21**

Adam and Eve accepted their judgment from God and did not rebel against it. We see this in Adam naming his wife "Eve," which means "the mother of all the living." This is a personal name that defines her destiny (v. 20). He believed life would continue in spite of God’s curse. This was an act of faith and an expression of hope. Adam believed God's promise that Eve would bear children (v. 16).

"This may well be at once the most astounding, the most profound, and the most exuberant thing the man ever did."\(^3\)

Adam’s wife's first name, "Woman" (2:23), looked back on her origin, whereas her second name, "Eve," anticipated her destiny. "Eve" is related to the Hebrew verb that means "to live."

"How astonishing the grace which at this moment gave promise of a Saviour and conferred on her who had the

---

\(^1\) Walvoord, "The New ...," p. 188.
\(^2\) Matthew Henry, p. 11.
\(^3\) Cocheran, p. 46.
disgrace of introducing sin the future honor of introducing that Deliverer (I Tim. 2:15).”¹

1. Note that before God sent Adam and Eve out into a new environment, He provided them with "garments of skin" (v. 21) that were adequate for their needs (cf. Rom. 3:21-26). Their own provision of fig leaves (v. 7) was not adequate. He did for them what they could not do for themselves. This is another indication of God's loving care and grace for people.

"Clothing is now Divinely commanded; though despised by pagan idolaters and modern worldlings."²

Though I would not say this was a divine command, God's provision of clothing certainly suggests that God intended Adam and Eve to wear clothing.

"... he [Adam] had to learn that sin could be covered not by a bunch of leaves snatched from a bush as he passed by and that would grow again next year, but only by pain and blood."³

Gleason Archer thought it reasonable to assume that when God provided animal skins for Adam and Eve to wear that He also instructed them about the significance of the atoning blood of the substitute sacrifice. He also believed that they passed this understanding on to Cain and Abel.⁴ There is no way to prove or disprove this theory.

2. Furthermore, God prevented Adam and Eve from living perpetually in their fallen state (vv. 22-24).⁵

²Newell, p. 43.
⁴Archer, *Encyclopedia of...*, pp. 75-76.
⁵On other effects of the Fall, see Whitcomb and Morris, pp. 454-73.
Expulsion from the garden 3:22-24

Verse 22 shows that man's happiness (good) does not consist in his being like God as much as it depends on his being with God (cf. Ps. 16:11).1 "Like one of Us" probably means like heavenly beings (God and the angels; cf. 1:26).2 This clause does not imply the existence of more than one God.3

"He [God] turned him [man] out, from the garden to the common. ... But man was only sent to till the ground out of which he was taken. He was sent to a place of toil, not to a place of torment. He was sent to the ground, not to the grave—to the workhouse, not to the dungeon, not to the prison-house—to hold the plough not to drag the chain."4

"Cherubim" (v. 24) in the Old Testament surround and symbolize God's presence. They are equivalent to God's "bodyguards," "standing guards," or "sentries." Ancient oriental iconography pictured them as human-headed winged lions guarding holy places.5 Moses pictured them here blocking access to the tree of life with a "flaming sword." Evidently eating of "the tree of life" would have caused Adam and Eve to stop aging (cf. Rev. 22:2). Cherubim guarded the ark of the covenant later, just as they earlier guarded the tree of life in the garden. The laws contained in the ark were a source of life for the Israelites. The golden lampstand in the tabernacle represented a tree of life and the presence of God.6

As people moved east from the Garden of Eden, they settled in Shinar and built Babel (Gr. Babylon, 11:2). When Lot departed from Abraham, he moved east to Sodom (13:11). When Abraham returned in victory from the battle against the eastern kings (led by King Chedolaommer), he came back to the Promised Land, and the city of Salem ("Peace," 14:17-20). Thus God's presence continued to reside in the Garden (Promised Land?)

---

1Sailhamer, "Genesis," p. 59.
2Wenham, p. 85; Waltke, Genesis, p. 95.
3See Archer, Encyclopedia of ..., pp. 74-75.
4Matthew Henry, p. 12.
5See James B. Pritchard, ed., The Ancient Near East in Pictures Relating to the Old Testament, pp. 159-60, plates 456, 458. See also the discussion of cherubim in J. D. Davis, pp. 78-84.
6Wenham, p. 86.
Rebellion against God results in suffering and death, but confession secures His gracious protective care. This section explains why human beings toil and agonize all their lives and finally die. Sin is responsible, and only the removal of sin will end this condition. This pericope (section of text, i.e., ch. 3) presents God as a Savior as well as a Judge. Moses introduced God’s required way for covering sin, namely, the death of an innocent substitute. Consequently there is hope in the midst of tragedy.  

"The chapter simply does not support the concept that one finds fulfillment and bliss in liberating oneself from subordination to God’s word, his permissions and his denials. Man is not suddenly metamorphosed from a puppet to a free and independent thinker. In fact, he never was an automaton. If man had lacked the ability to choose, the prohibition from God not to eat of the fruit of the tree of knowledge of good and evil would have been superfluous. One is not told to abstain from something unless he has the capacity not to abstain [or to abstain]."  

Thus Genesis 3 introduces us to the fact of human freedom, as well as reminding us of divine sovereignty.  

Why did God permit the serpent to tempt Adam and Eve? Before their temptation, Adam and Eve were innocent; they had not known sin or temptation. But they were not righteous; their innocence had not been

---

1 Ross, "Genesis," p. 33.
3 Hamilton, p. 211.
maintained in the presence of temptation to sin. God's will for Adam and Eve was that they be righteous, not just innocent.

"Character must be developed, and it can only be developed in the presence of temptation."\(^1\)

"Sin, ... according [to] the Scriptures, is permitted, that the justice of God may be known in its punishment, and his grace in its forgiveness."\(^2\)

"Take away the first three chapters of Genesis, and you cannot maintain a true Christian position nor give Christianity's answers [to the "big" questions that people are asking today]."\(^3\)

2. **The murder of Abel 4:1-16**

Chapter 4 shows the spread of sin from Adam's family to the larger society that his descendants produced. Cain became the first murderer and Abel the first martyr. Chapter 3 records the *root* of sin, and chapter 4 the *fruit* of sin. Not only did sin affect everyone, but people became increasingly more wicked as time passed. Human self-assertion leads to violence. Verses 1-16 show that the Fall affected Adam and Eve's children as well as themselves. Verses 17-26 trace what became of Cain and Seth and their descendants. Note that the chapter begins and ends with the subject of worship.

God had warned Adam and Eve about sin. Even so, Cain murdered his brother, the beginning of sibling rivalry, because God accepted Abel’s offering but not his own. Sibling rivalry plagued each of the godly families in Genesis. Cain denied responsibility for his sin and objected to the severity of God's punishment. God graciously provided protection for Cain in response to his complaint. Chapter 3 gives the cause, and chapter 4 the effect.

---

\(^1\) McGee, 1:23.
\(^2\) Hodge, 1:435.
There are structural and conceptual parallels between this pericope and the previous one (2:4—3:24).¹

A  Scene 1 (narrative): Cain and Abel are active, Yahweh passive (vv. 2b-5).

B  Scene 2 (dialogue): Yahweh questions Cain (vv. 6-7).

C  Scene 3 (dialogue and narrative): Cain and Abel are alone (v. 8).

B' Scene 4 (dialogue): Yahweh confronts Cain (vv. 9-14).

A' Scene 5 (narrative): Yahweh is active, Cain passive (vv. 15-16).

Both stories, this one and 2:4—3:24, conclude with the sinners leaving God's presence and going to live east of Eden (3:24; 4:16).

"Cain's sin, jealousy of his brother, is the replica of Adam's—jealousy of Yahweh's privilege."²

"... though the writer of Genesis wants to highlight the parallels between the two stories, he does not regard the murder of Abel simply as a rerun of the fall. There is development: sin is more firmly entrenched and humanity is further alienated from God."³

4:1-8 Was Eve thanking God for helping her bear a son (Cain),⁴ or was she boasting that she had created a man (Cain) as God had created a man (Adam, v. 1)?⁵ The former alternative seems preferable to me (cf. v. 25). The name "Cain" sounds like the Hebrew word translated "I have acquired" and means "possession" or "acquisition," a portent of his own primary proclivity. His name is related to a Hebrew word meaning "craftsman" or "metalworker." Abel, from the Hebrew hebel, means "breath," "vapor," "exhalation," or "what ascends." As things turned out, his life was short, like a vapor. Perhaps his

---

¹Wenham, p. 99.
²Jacob, p. 284.
³Wenham, p. 100.
⁴Mathews, p. 265; Wenham, pp. 101-2.
⁵Sailhamer, The Pentateuch ..., pp. 111-12; Waltke, Genesis, p. 96.
parents gave him this name after his death, in view of the comparative shortness of his life. Another possibility is that "human existence marred by sin had impressed man with the emptiness of it all." 1 "Abel" also means "meadow" elsewhere in the Old Testament.

"Nearly all Bible names were significant, and were conferred with reference to some circumstance connected with the birth of the child." 2

Why did God have "regard" for Abel's offering and not Cain's (v. 4)? It was because Abel had "faith" (Heb. 11:4). What did Abel believe that Cain did not? The Bible does not say specifically. The answer may lie in one or more of the following explanations. 3

1. Some commentators believed Abel's attitude reveals his faith. Cain's improper attitude toward God is evident in verse 5. 4

2. Others say Abel's faith is evident in his bringing the best ("fat portions") of his flock (v. 4), whereas Moses did not describe Cain's offering as his best (v. 3).

"He [the writer] characterizes Abel's offerings from the flocks as 'from the firstborn' and 'from their fat.' By offering the firstborn Abel signified that he recognized God as the Author and Owner of Life. In common with the rest of the ancient Near East, the Hebrews believed that the deity, or lord of the manor, was entitled to the first share of all produce. The firstfruits

---

1 Leupold, 1:192.
2 Thomson, 1:179.
of plants and the firstborn of animals and man were his.

"Abel's offering conformed with this theology; Cain's did not. In such a laconic story the interpreter may not ignore that whereas Abel's gift is qualified by 'firstborn,' the parallel 'firstfruits' does not modify Cain's.

"Abel also offered the 'fat' which in the so-called 'P' [Priestly] material belonged to the Lord and was burned symbolically by the priests. This tastiest and best burning part of the offering represented the best. Abel's sacrifice, the interlocutor aims to say, passed the test with flying colors. Cain's sacrifice, however, lacks a parallel to 'fat.'"¹

"Every unprejudiced reader of the Bible must feel that sacrifices constitute the centre of the Old Testament."²

3. Possibly Cain's bad attitude ("became very angry and his countenance fell") resulted in his not offering the best to God. In other words, both options 1 and 2 could be correct.³ I prefer this explanation. Evidently the sin that led Cain to murder his brother was envy.⁴

"Abel went out of his way to please God (which meant he had faith in God, Heb. 11:6), whereas Cain was simply discharging a duty."⁵

---

²Edersheim, The Temple, p. 106.
³Archer, Encyclopedia of ..., p. 76.
⁴See Whyte, 1:28-33.
⁵Ross, "Genesis," p. 34.
"We think the absence of 'firstfruits' for Cain in juxtaposition with Seth's [sic Abel's] 'firstborn' would not have been lost on the Mosaic audience.

"Both giver and gift were under the scrutiny of God. Cain's offering did not measure up because he retained the best of his produce for himself."\(^1\)

"The issue was not just between what the two sons brought to the Lord; there was also a significant difference in their hearts. ... True worship happens only when both heart and action are right before God. ... As for Cain, it seems things were even worse: he was wrong in both his heart and his actions. Abel, on the other hand, had both heart and actions that were pleasurable to God."\(^2\)

4. Many believe that Abel realized \textit{the need for the death of a living substitute} to atone for his sins, but Cain did not. If Abel understood this, he may have learned it by divine revelation that Scripture did not record explicitly.\(^3\) Perhaps Cain and Abel learned that an animal sacrifice satisfied God, whereas a vegetable sacrifice did not, from the fact that the fig leaves that Adam and Eve used to cover their nakedness were not satisfactory, but an animal skin was (3:7, 21). Adam and Eve provided the fig leaves, but God provided the animal skins. Thus the contrast in the case of Cain and Abel may also have been between what man provides (works) and what God provides (grace).

\(^1\)Mathews, p. 268. I prefer this view.
\(^3\)Thomas, \textit{Genesis}, p. 34; Jamieson, et al., p. 21.
"Faith always presupposes a Divine revelation to which it is the response."\(^1\)

"The general requisites of all sacrifices [in the Old Testament] were—that they should be brought of such things, in such place and manner, and through such mediatorial agency, as God had appointed."\(^2\)

"Whatever the cause of God's rejection of Cain's offering, the narrative itself focuses our attention on Cain's response. It is there that the narrative seeks to make its point."\(^3\)

God graciously questioned Cain, as He had Adam and Eve (v. 6; cf. 3:9, 11), to elicit Cain's admission of sin with a view toward repentance, not simply to scold him. Had Cain corrected his attitude and repented, he would not have proceeded to kill his brother. God gave him the opportunity and the encouragement to "do well" (v. 7). Adam reluctantly admitted his guilt, but Cain tried to cover it up by lying. Cain was "much more hardened than were the first human pair."\(^4\)

"Sin is lurking at the door" (v. 7) probably means that the power and tragic consequences of sin could master the person who opens the door to it (cf. 3:16).

"The consequences of his reaction to God's correction are more far-reaching than the initial sin itself, for if he pursues sin's anger, it will result in sin's mastery over him. This is his decision. It is possible for Cain to recover from sin quickly if he chooses the right thing."\(^5\)

The Apostle John revealed the reason that Cain killed Abel in 1 John 3:12: "... his own works were evil and his brother's righteous." Abel's attitude of faith in God resulted in righteous

---

\(^1\)Thomas, Genesis, p. 55.
\(^3\)Sailhamer, The Pentateuch ..., p. 112.
\(^4\)von Rad, p. 106.
\(^5\)Mathews, p. 270.
works that produced guilt in unrighteous Cain. This is pattern of cause and effect that has continued forever. The seriousness of Cain's sin is clear from God's repeated references to Abel as Cain's "brother" (vv. 9, 10, 11). Jesus spoke of Cain's murder of Abel as a historical fact (Matt. 23:35). This was the first case of religious persecution.

"If you want to find out Cain's condition of heart you will find it after the service which he pretended to render; you know a man best out of church."\(^1\)

Later, under the Mosaic Law, the fact that a killing took place in a field, out of the range of help, was to be taken as proof of premeditation (cf. Deut. 22:25-27).

"Cain and his unrighteous offspring served as a reminder to Israel that its destiny was measured in the scales of ethical behavior."\(^2\)

Violence by Cain followed disobedience by Adam and Eve. Violence in a culture often reflects and results from rebellion against God and self-assertion.

4:9-16 As in chapter 3, God came investigating the crime with questions (vv. 9-10).\(^3\) In the case of Adam and Eve, the result was God cursing the ground and people generally, but here the result is His cursing Cain, another evidence that wickedness was worsening.

"As always, God does not ask ("Where is Abel your brother?") in order to secure information. The question is pedagogic, in order to remind Cain that God knows where Abel is."\(^4\)

Cain's punishment consisted of his being banished from God's presence ("I will be hidden from Your face," v. 14) and unable

---

4. Leupold, 1:204.
to enjoy his family's company and the peacefulness of a settled agrarian life ("I will be a wanderer and a drifter on the earth," v. 14; cf. vv. 11-12). He would have to wander from place to place seeking food, rather than living a sedentary life. This punishment was appropriate and just, since he had alienated himself from his brother and God by his horrible crime.

"Cain is not being condemned to a Bedouin-like existence; the terminology is too extreme to describe such a lifestyle. Rather it seems likely that the curse on Cain reflects the expulsion from the family that was the fate in tribal societies of those who murdered close relatives. 'To be driven away from the land' (cf. v. 14) is to have all relationships, particularly with the family, broken. Moreover, it is to have one's relationship with the LORD broken."¹

"Nomadism according to the Sumerian flood story is a plight from which the gods rescued man; according to the Bible a nomadic existence was a judgment imposed on the first murderer. This contrast fits in with the overall optimism of Mesopotamia which believes in human progress over against the biblical picture of the inexorable advance of sin. It would seem likely that the other human achievements listed here—farming, metalwork, and music—are also seen by Genesis as somehow under the shadow of Cain's sin."²

Cain's response to God's judgment was self-pity because of his punishment, rather than repentance for his crime and an expression of remorse over the extent of his iniquity.³ No one would be his "keeper" (cf. "Am I my brother's keeper?" v. 9).

¹Wenham, p. 108.
²Ibid., pp. 98-99. For a discussion of the people-groups mentioned in the Pentateuch, see Livingston, pp. 19-41.
³See Waltke, Genesis, p. 98; Sailhamer, The Pentateuch ..., p. 114. See ibid., "Genesis," revised ed., pp. 100-101, for the view that Cain was repentant.
Cain's sin resulted in his being "driven" out (v. 14; cf. 3:23). Note again that sin results in broken relationships and alienation, and alienation from God leads to fear of other people ("whoever finds me will kill me," v. 14; cf. Job 15:20-25). The population had apparently increased by this time, since Cain feared relation by any number of other people (cf. 5:4-5). God in grace allowed Cain and his family to continue to live under His care, but apparently without salvation. Note also that human immorality again impacted earth's ecology (v. 12; cf. 3:17).

The commentators have interpreted Cain's "mark" (v. 15) in a variety of ways. One view is that it was partial paralysis, based on the meaning of the word used to translate the Hebrew word in the Septuagint. An old Jewish interpretation understood it to be the word "Yahweh," and another viewed it as a long horn growing out of the middle of Cain's forehead. Some medieval paintings represent Cain with a horn on his head following this view. Another idea is that it was some other identifying mark on Cain's body, in view of parallels with other marks that identify and protect their bearers in Scripture (cf. Ezek. 9:4; Rev. 7:3; 13:16-18; 14:1).¹

Still other interpreters believe that the mark was a verification of God's promise to Cain. This last view rests on the usual meaning of "sign" in the Old Testament (cf. Judg. 6:36-40; 2 Kings 2:9-12; et al.), which the Hebrew construction supports here.²

"The parallels with texts relating to the cities of refuge ... suggest that Cain's 'sign' may have been the safety he found in the building of a city. His city was a sign of his divine protection from anyone 'who found him.'"³

The text does not identify the mark, but it was some immediate indication that God gave Cain to assure him that he

---

¹von Rad, p. 107; Mathews, p. 278; Wenham, p. 109; Waltke, Genesis, p. 99.
²See Bush, p. 104; Leupold, 1:211.
would not die (cf. 21:13, 18; 27:37; 45:7, 9; 46:3 with 21:14; 44:21). Whatever it was, Cain's mark served to protect him, as well as to remind him and others of his punishment by God.

"Nod" (lit. "homelessness," v. 16) is a wordplay on the Hebrew term for "vagabond" or "wandering," so the very name of the place, where Cain "settled" and "lived," also reminded him of his sentence.

"The point is more theological than geographical; to be apart from the presence of the Lord is to be a vagabond in a 'vagabond-land.'_1

"The ungodly here are portrayed as living on in the world (with a protective mark of grace) without being saved. Their sense of guilt was eased by their cultural development and their geographical expansion."_2

Cain was a man who did not care to please God. Because he did not, God did not bless ("had no regard") for Cain (v. 5), as He did ("had regard for") Abel (v. 4), who was righteous, a man of faith. Cain's anger and jealousy over Abel's blessing brought disaster on himself. God has preserved his example in order to help us avoid it. Those who worship God must have as their goal to please Him, rather than letting envy and hatred ruin their lives (cf. Col. 1:10).

"One of the greatest lessons of this narrative is that God is concerned with sins committed by one man against another."_3

3. **The spread of civilization and sin 4:17-26**

Cain prospered even though he rebelled against God. This is another indication of God's grace. Cain's descendants took the lead in building cities, developing music, advancing agriculture, creating weapons, and spreading civilization. However, the descendants of Seth made an even more important advance: the worship of God.

---

2 Ross, "Genesis," p. 33.
3 Pieters, p. 104.
The descendants of Cain 4:17-24

"By virtue of being Cain's descendants, the people named in the genealogy all inherit his curse. Thus the Cainite genealogy becomes part of the Yahwist's account of man's increasing sin."¹

Cain's "wife" (v. 17) was evidently one of his sisters or nieces, since Adam continued to father "other sons and daughters" besides Cain, Abel, and Seth (5:4).² God did not prohibit marrying siblings and close relatives until the Mosaic Law.

"As long as it pleased God to let the human race descend from one pair, it must be conceded that for a time marriage between brothers and sisters was a necessity."³

"Because harmful mutations so greatly outnumber any supposed helpful ones, it's considered unwise nowadays (and illegal in many states) to marry someone too closely related to you. Why? Because you greatly increase the odds that bad genes will show up. By the way, you also increase the odds of bringing out really excellent trait combinations. But did you ever hear anybody say, 'Don't marry your first cousin or you'll have a genius for a child'? They don't usually say that, because the odds of something bad happening are far, far, far, far, far greater.

"That would not have been a problem, by the way, shortly after creation (no problem for Cain and his wife, for example). Until mutations had a chance to accumulate in the human population, no such risk of bad combinations existed."⁴

The "city" that Cain built (v. 17) must not have been very large, though reference to it suggests that the population at this time was increasing rapidly. It was probably no more than a few structures. "Lamech" (v. 19)

---

¹R. R. Wilson, Genealogy and History in the Biblical World, p. 155.
²See Archer, Encyclopedia of ..., p. 77.
³Leupold, 1:399.
⁴Gary Parker, Creation: Facts of Life, p. 98. This is an excellent book that deals with the evidence of creation, Darwin and biologic change, and the fossil evidence. See also Ham, et al., pp. 17, 177-85.
was the first bigamist. He deliberately subverted God's will that marriage should consist of only one man and one woman (2:24). "Bigamy" (being married to two spouses at the same time) was common in the ancient Near East, but it was never God's desire (cf. Matt. 19:4-5). God permitted it, however, as He did many other customs of which He disapproved (e.g., divorce, marrying concubines, polygamy, etc.). That is, He allowed people who practiced them to continue to live.

"To be sure, no rebuke from God is directed at Lamech for his violation of the marital arrangement. It is simply recorded. But that is the case with most OT illustrations of polygamy. Abraham is not condemned for cohabiting with Sarah and Hagar, nor is Jacob for marrying simultaneously Leah and Rachel. In fact, however, nearly every polygamous household [sic household] in the OT suffers most unpleasant and shattering experiences precisely because of this ad hoc relationship. The domestic struggles that ensue are devastating."¹

"Cain's family is a microcosm: its pattern of technical prowess and moral failure is that of humanity."²

God shows the destructive consequences of sin (cf. 2:24) more often than He states them in the Old Testament. Polygamy is one form of sin.

Polygamy is "... the symptom of an unbalanced view of marriage, which regards it as an institution in which the wife's ultimate raison d'être [reason for being] is the production of children. [This was the attitude in the ancient world, but there are additional reasons why people practice polygamy.] Where God had created the woman first and foremost for partnership, society made her in effect a means to an end, even if a noble end, and wrote its view into its marriage contracts."³

This is the first occurrence of "polygamy" (having more than one wife at the same time) in Genesis. We shall find several cases of it throughout the Old Testament. People practiced it widely in the ancient Near East, but it was contrary to the will of God (2:24). Besides indulging the flesh,

²Kidner, p. 78.
³Ibid., p. 36.
polygamy was an attempt to ensure the survival of the family by providing male successors.\(^1\) The presence of polygamy in Lamech's generation shows how sin escalated in the marriage relationship following the Fall.

The reference to forging (lit. "sharpening"; also forming, shaping) "iron" implements (v. 22) appears anachronistic since, as far as we know, the smelting of iron was not common until the Iron Age, in the second millennium B.C. Perhaps this is a reference to the cold forging of meteoric iron, which was common earlier.\(^2\) Later workers with iron could look back on Lamech as the father of metallurgy.

We could paraphrase the vengeance or retaliation idea in Lamech's mind, as expressed in verses 23-24, more clearly as follows: "If I am threatened again, I will retaliate again, much more forcefully than God retaliated for Cain." God threatened His retaliation and vengeance against anyone who retaliated against Cain for being a murderer: "whoever kills Cain, vengeance will be taken on him seven times as much" (v. 15). Lamech may have been claiming that he had killed in self-defense. Nevertheless he was boasting, and shows himself thereby to be more vengeful in his self-defensive threat than even God Himself (cf. "Vengeance is Mine, and retribution," Deut. 32:35). Jesus taught His disciples to forgive and not take revenge (Matt. 18:22), even as He did (cf. 1 Pet. 2:21-24).

The seven generations from Adam through Cain and Seth, ungodly Lamech (vv. 19-24) and godly Enoch (5:24), stand in sharp contrast to each other. The former man (Lamech) inflicts death, and the latter (Enoch) does not die. Some scholars have called Lamech's poem the "Song of the Sword." Lamech thought himself invincible with his newly acquired, state of the art, weapons.

"Both Cain's antediluvian lineage and the postdiluvian Babel cautioned later Israel that cities founded upon arrogance resulted in violence and ultimately destruction."\(^3\)

---

\(^1\) For a good, brief introduction to polygamy, see M. Stephen Davis, "Polygamy in the Ancient World," *Biblical Illustrator* 14:1 (Fall 1987):34-36.


\(^3\) Mathews, pp. 282-83.
The family of Seth 4:25-26

Verse 25 recalls verse 1 of this chapter, and signals the conclusion of this section of narrative. Seth's name, from the Hebrew verb translated "granted," and meaning "substitute" or "to set" or "to place," expresses Eve's faith that God would continue to provide seed despite death.\(^1\) Seth was "set" or "appointed" to "take up the work and mission of Abel."\(^2\) Simplicity of life and devotion to God characterized the Sethites, generally speaking. The Cainites, in contrast, became more aggressive and determined to find happiness and fulfillment in their lives apart from God (cf. Luke 16:8).

Many commentators regarded verse 26 as the first reference to prayer as we know it in the Bible. Prayer is basic to man's relationship with God, which is a major theme in Genesis. However, the phrase "call upon the name of the LORD," in the Pentateuch, usually refers to proclamation (preaching) rather than prayer.\(^3\) Here it probably refers to the beginning of public worship of Yahweh.\(^4\)

"Gen 4 concludes the story of mankind that was cut off in the flood, a tale that opened with Gen 2:4, 'This is the history.' With the aid of a genealogy from Adam to Lamek [sic Lamech], the seventh generation, it traces the development of technology and arts on the one hand and the growth of violence on the other. Only in the last two verses introducing the descendants of Seth do we have glimmers of hope, for from him, as chap. 5 will describe, descended Noah, the survivor of the flood, and it was in Enosh's day that the public worship of God was reintroduced."\(^5\)

Chapter 4 also teaches that it is important for the righteous to preserve the knowledge of God when they live in an ungodly society. The Israelites needed this encouragement as they anticipated entering the Promised Land, as we do today. Jesus taught His disciples the same lesson (Matt. 5:14-15).

---

\(^2\)Yates, p. 11.
\(^3\)Ross, *Creation and ...*, p. 169.
\(^4\)Pieters, p. 107.
C. WHAT BECAME OF ADAM 5:1—6:8

The story of creation is an introduction to Genesis (1:1—2:3). The first toledot section (2:4—4:26) explains what became of the creation. In this second toledot section (5:1—6:8), we learn what happened to Adam. The primary purpose of this section appears to be to link the generations of Adam and Noah. The cursed human race continued to multiply and grow worse, and human beings continued to die. Yet the record of Enoch gives hope.

"Genealogies in this book of genealogies serve several purposes, depending in part on the nature of the genealogy. Broad genealogies present only the first generation of descendants (e.g., "the sons of Leah ... the sons of Rachel ..." in Gen. 35:23-26; cf. 6:9-10; 25:13-15). Deep genealogies list sequential descendants, in this book usually numbering from two to ten. (There are ten generations from Adam through Seth to Noah. In the eleventh generation the genealogy becomes segmented.) Linear genealogies display only depth (e.g., "Cain ... gave birth to Enoch. To Enoch was born Irad ..." 4:17-18; cf. 5:1-31; 11:10-26; 36:31-39, 40). Segmented genealogies display both depth and breadth (e.g., "This is the account of Shem, Ham and Japheth. ... The sons of Japheth: Gomer ... The sons of Gomer ..." 10:1-29; cf. 11:27-29; 19:36-38; 25:19-26; 36:1-5, 10-30; 46:8-25). The distinctions of broad, deep, linear, and segmented genealogies help explain the various functions of genealogies."\(^1\)

"Genesis begins the process of identifying the seed that will rule the earth (Gen. 1:26-28) and crush the Serpent (3:15). Book 2 [5:1—6:8] traces that lineage from Adam to Noah, even as the matching ten-generation genealogy of Book 5 [11:10-26] traces it from Shem to Abraham. Book 2 concludes with the progressive and rapid hardening of sin and the inability of the godly seed of the woman on its own to reverse it. Sin,

---

like the Serpent, is too strong for them. Clearly, both God's judgment and deliverance are needed."

1. **The effects of the curse on humanity ch. 5**

There are at least three purposes for the inclusion of this genealogy, which contains 10 paragraphs (vv. 1-5, 6-8, 9-11, 12-14, 15-17, 18-20, 21-24, 25-27, 28-31, and 32) and covers over 1,500 years of human history.

1. It shows the development of the human race from Adam to Noah, and bridges the gap in time between these two major individuals. One writer argued that the ages of these patriarchs were inflated to glorify them.¹ I think not, as this would seemingly undermine the trustworthiness of Scripture.

"The genealogies [in chapters 5 and 11] are exclusionist in function, indicating by linear descent the one through whom the promissory blessing will be channeled."²

How was it possible for people to live so long at this time in history?

"At the time Adam and Eve were created, they were in an ideal environment for the preservation of human life. The Garden of Eden was ideally suited to maintaining their health and vigor unimpaired. Even after they were expelled from Eden, it would seem that conditions for longevity were still far more favorable than they later became after the Flood; and there may well have been a virtual absence of disease. When these conditions gradually changed for the worse, particularly after the terrible judgment of the Flood, the life expectancy of man became progressively shorter. By Moses' time a lifetime of seventy years was considered normal, and those who lived on to eighty or beyond were generally beset with discomforts and weaknesses of various sorts,

---

³Mathews, p. 298.
until they finally passed off the scene (see Ps. 9:10 ...)."¹

2. This genealogy also demonstrates the veracity of God's (spoken) word when He said that people would die as a result of sin (cf. 2:17). Note the recurrence of the phrase "and he died" (vv. 5, 8, 11, 14, 17, 20, 27, and 31).

3. The genealogy contrasts the progress of the godly line of Seth culminating in Enoch (lit. Dedicated One), who walked with God and experienced "translation" (i.e., instant transformation and transport into heaven, without dying; 5:6-24; cf. 3:8; 6:8), with the development of the ungodly line of Cain. Cain's branch of the human race culminated in Lamech, who was a brutal bigamist (4:16-24).

"The author's return to the theme of God's 'blessing' man (cf. v. 2) is also a part of his overall scheme to cast God's purposes for man in terms that will recall a father's care for his children. Throughout the remainder of the Book of Genesis, a recurring theme is that of the father's blessing his children (9:26-27; 27:27; 48:15; 49:1-28). In keeping with such a theme, the author shows at each crucial turning point in the narrative that God himself renewed his blessing to the next generation of sons (1:28; 5:2; 9:1; 12:3; 24:11). Seen as a whole, the picture that emerges is that of a loving father insuring the future well-being of his children through the provision of an inherited blessing. In this way the author has laid a theological foundation for the rest of Scripture. God's original plan of blessing for all humanity, though thwarted by human folly, will nevertheless be restored through the seed of the woman (3:15), the seed of Abraham (12:3), and the 'Lion of the tribe of Judah' (49:8-12; cf. Rev 5:5-13). It is on this same foundation that the apostle Paul built his view of Jesus as the one through whom God has 'blessed us' (Eph 1:3) and 'adopted us as his sons' (v. 5) so that 'we have

¹Archer, Encyclopedia of ..., p. 77.
obtained an inheritance' (v. 11, KJV) from the one we may call 'Abba, Father' (Rom 8:15)."\(^1\)

Enoch's walking with God (v. 22) may have been the inspiration for this sign that appeared on a church marquee: "Exercise daily. Walk with God."

Some commentators have seen evidence in the text that this genealogy is not complete.\(^2\)

1. The word "father" can just as accurately be translated "ancestor" (v. 3, et al.). It does not require a literal father-son sequence.\(^3\) Likewise "fathered" or "begat" (AV) can mean *eventually* begat, not necessarily *immediately* begat.

2. The fact that Lamech, the sixth name in Cain's list (4:16-24), corresponds to Enoch, the sixth name in Seth's list (5:6-24), is suggestive: It indicates that God wanted to point out the contrast between the generations of these two sons of Adam. One was *ungodly* and the other *godly*. This purpose seems to some writers to be more dominant, than that God wanted simply to preserve a complete record of *all* the generations between Adam and Noah. Lamech and Enoch were each the seventh generation, as recorded in this list, from Adam (cf. Jude 14). Matthew 1:1-17 contains a similar genealogy, in which 14 men from each of three historical periods appear, and *it* is not complete (cf. Matt. 1:8 with 1 Chron. 3:11-12).\(^4\)

3. The writer did not list Noah's sons in the order of their birth (cf. 5:32 and 9:24).

4. The genealogy in chapter 11 is probably not complete.\(^5\)

---

\(^1\)Sailhamer, "Genesis," pp. 70-71.
\(^3\)See Kenneth A. Kitchen, *The Bible In Its World*, p. 33.
\(^4\)Cf. Thomas, *Through the ...,* p. 35.
\(^5\)See my comments on 11:12. For defense of the view that the Scriptures do not fix and were not intended to fix the dates of any events before the time of Abraham, see W. H. Green, "Primeval Chronology," in *Classical Evangelical Essays in Old Testament*
But the careful recording of the age of each man, when he fathered the next man in the list, strongly suggests to some that this list is complete. Furthermore, the genealogies in 1 Chronicles 1:1-4 and Luke 3:36-38 are identical to the one in Genesis 5. This fact is used to support the theory that there are probably no missing generations in chapter 5’s genealogy.

"The genealogy of Seth in Genesis 5 is thus intended to take up [continue] the creation story which had reached its first climax in the creation, as we would now read it, of Adam. The elemental orderliness of the genealogy continues the order begun at creation; indeed, it reafﬁrms that order after the threatened slide back into chaos narrated in the intervening chapters. But the genealogy does more; it imparts movement to creation. The Genesis 1 creation story is essentially static. When God rests on the seventh day, all phyla of creation are in their proper order and the earth is at rest. There is little suggestion of movement or further development, no story to be traced. The sole dynamic elements lie in God’s command to newly created humanity to 'be fruitful and multiply' and 'subdue the earth.' The genealogies document the fruitfulness of humanity and thus become the expression of the fulfillment of God’s mandate, providing movement away from the steady state of creation but at the same time preserving its orderliness. Creation's order advanced through the genealogy.

"Connection of the genealogy to creation also exerts a reciprocal influence on our understanding of this and subsequent genealogies. The genealogies represent the continuation of creation's fundamental order through time. As
a result, they assume theological significance. The organic and orderly succession of generations is not an expression of thematically empty biological necessity but of God's initial creative activity. Birth awakens not neutral destiny but enrollment in the continuing order of creation ordained by God. The genealogies become bearers of the creation theme and, by their elemental, organic nature, its fit expression.”1

Assuming closed (or "tight") genealogies in chapters 5 and 11, J. Paul Tanner calculated the Creation as having occurred about 4200 B.C., and the Flood about 2550 B.C.2 Archbishop James Ussher (A.D. 1581-1656) believed that the creation of Adam took place in 4004 B.C.3

Even though the death motif is strong in this chapter, there is even more emphasis on God's grace. We see this in the references to life, fertility (sons and daughters), Enoch's translation, and other blessings. The enjoyment of God's blessings depends on walking with God. "Walk" is a biblical figure for fellowship and obedience that results in divine blessing (cf. 1 Sam. 15:25; Eph. 4:1; 1 John 1:7).

"Enoch is pictured as one who did not suffer the fate of Adam ('you shall surely die') because, unlike the others, he 'walked with God.' The sense of the author is clear. Enoch is an example of one who found life amid the curse of death. In Enoch the author is able to show that the pronouncement of death is not the last word that need be said about a person's life. One can find life if one 'walks with God.'"4

"'Walked with God' is metaphorical and indicates that Enoch had a lifestyle characterized by his devotion to God. The sense

---

2 Tanner, p. 44.
3 See Pieters, p. 111.
of 'walk' (halak) in its verbal stem indicates a communion or intimacy with God."¹

"The double repetition of the phrase 'walked with God' indicates Enoch was outstanding in this pious family."²

"Those whose conversation in the world is truly holy shall find their removal out of it truly happy."³

Repetition usually reinforces and emphasizes in Scripture. The central lesson of the section appears to be that the godly can experience victory over the effects of the curse by walking with God.⁴ God will snatch some away (cf. 1 Cor. 15:51-53; 1 Thess. 4:17), like Enoch, but most have to endure physical death, though not necessarily spiritual death.

"The finality of death caused by sin, and so powerfully demonstrated in the genealogy of Genesis, is in fact not so final. Man was not born to die; he was born to live, and that life comes by walking with God. Walking with God is the key to the chains of the curse."⁵

"Within the time-scale of Genesis, this chapter [5] covers the longest period in world history."⁶


---

²Wenham, p. 127.
³Matthew Henry, p. 16.
⁵Cole, p. 294.
⁶Wenham, p. 145.
2. God's sorrow over man's wickedness 6:1-8

As wickedness increased on the earth, God determined to destroy the human race—with the exception of those few people to whom He extended grace.

"Stories of a great flood sent in primeval times by gods to destroy mankind followed by some form of new creation are so common to so many peoples in different parts of the world, between whom no kind of historical contact seems possible, that the notion seems almost to be a universal feature of the human imagination."1

There were two major reasons for the flood: the sins of the sons of God (vv. 1-4), and the sins of humankind generally (vv. 5-8).

The sins of the sons of God 6:1-4

6:1-2 There are three major views about the identity of "the sons of God":

1. They were fallen angels (demons) who married women.2
   Arguments in favor of this view follow, with responses:

   a. The term "sons of God," as it occurs here in Hebrew, refers only to angels in the Old Testament (Job 1:6; 2:1; 38:7; et al.). Response: Angels do not reproduce (Matt. 22:30). Also, "sons of God" is a strange title for evil angels.

   b. 2 Peter 2:4-5 and Jude 6-7 appear to identify angels with this incident. Response: There are no other references to angels in the context here in

1Whybray, p. 45. Josephus cited Berosus, a Chaldean historian, as one such writer, in Against Apion, 1:19.

2The Book of Enoch (a second century B.C. pseudepigrapha); Philo; Josephus; Justin Martyr; Tertullian; Cyprian; Ambrose; Pember, pp. 206-8; Clarence Larkin, The Spirit World, p. 23; Gaebelein, 1:1:29-30; von Rad, p. 114; Henry Morris, The Genesis Record; C. Fred Dickason, Angels: Elect and Evil; M. R. DeHaan, 508 Answers to Bible Questions; Boice, 1:245-48; R. S. Hendel, "When the Sons of God Cavorted with the Daughters of Men," Bible Review 3:2 (Summer 1987):8-13, 37; Yates, p. 12; Merrill, "A Theology...," p. 23; idem, in The Old ..., p. 14; Wenham, pp. 140, 146; The Nelson ..., p. 15; Newell, p. 58; Lightner, pp. 94-98.
Genesis. These New Testament passages probably refer to the fall of Satan.

c. If God could impregnate Mary, spirit beings may be able to do the same thing to human women. Response: Spirit beings cannot do everything that God can do.

2. They were godly Sethites who married ungodly women.¹ I prefer this view. Arguments in favor of this view follow, with responses:

a. The Old Testament often refers to the godly as "God's sons" (e.g., Exod. 4:22; Deut. 32:5; Ps. 73:15; 80:17; Hos. 1:10). Response: This would have to be an exception to the use of "sons of God" as a normal reference to "angels" in the Old Testament.

b. Moses had already established the concept of a godly line and an ungodly line in Genesis (4:16—5:32). Response: This does not mean that godly Sethites are in view here necessarily.

c. Sonship of humans based on election is common in the Old Testament. Response: These "sons" could be elect angels who fell.

d. Warnings against marriages between believers and unbelievers are common in the Pentateuch and throughout Scripture, and this seems to be in view here. Response: The warning seems to be against more abnormal forms of intermarriage than just marriage between believers and unbelievers.

¹Matthew Henry, p. 16; Jamieson, et al., p. 22; Morgan, An Exposition ..., p. 13; Leupold, 1:250; Davis, Genesis and ..., pp. 1-1-6; Free, p. 40; Thomas, Through the ..., p. 36; Payne, p. 206; Wiersbe, p. 42; René Pache, The Future Life, pp. 109-10; Enns, p. 46; Archer, Encyclopedia of ..., pp. 79-80.
3. They were ungodly dynastic rulers who married women. That is, they were upper class men who married lower class women. Fallen angels (demons) may have indwelt, or at least controlled, these men. Arguments in favor of this view, and responses, follow:

a. Ancient Near Eastern literature often called *kings* "sons of gods." Response: This is not the usual meaning of "sons of God" in the Old Testament.

b. The Old Testament refers to *administrators* (e.g., judges) as "gods." Response: Scripture never regards them as "descendants" or "sons" of deities, as pagan ancient Near Eastern literature does.

c. This story is similar to Babylonian antediluvian stories. Response: Similarity does not require identical meaning. Nor does it require that the Babylonian explanation gave rise to the biblical explanation. Rather the reverse seems to be true.

Scholars have debated this passage heatedly. One writer expressed his frustration as follows:

"What does he [Moses] mean? I do not know, and I do not believe anyone knows. So far as I am concerned, this passage is unintelligible."

Context is very important in any interpretive problem, and I believe it argues for view 2 in this case. If so, the purpose of this segment appears to be to document the degradation of even the godly, thus justifying the Flood. Evidently the godly were selecting their wives on the basis of who looked best to

---


5See Keil and Delitzsch, 1:131-34; Wolf, p. 99. Many conservative interpreters hold this view.
them, believers and unbelievers alike, rather than choosing godly wives. In other words, the godly had adopted the values of the world and were behaving like unbelievers. This breakdown of godliness existed in the realm of the most fundamental human institution: marriage (cf. Matt. 24:37-38; Luke 17:26-27).

Some people who believe that the angelic conflict is a major theme of Scripture have emphasized this passage. I do not believe that the angelic conflict is a major theme of Scripture. I believe the angels are important primarily because of their function as God's messengers sent forth to minister to (help) people (Heb. 1:14).

6:3 The "120 years" are evidently the number of years of grace that God would give humankind to repent before the Flood.\(^1\) They probably do not indicate a reduction in the normal human lifespan to 120 years, though people who lived before the Flood lived longer than those who lived after it.\(^2\)

"The judgment is that God will not endlessly and forever permit his life-giving spirit to enliven those who disorder his world. The breath of life (Gen. 2:7; Ps. 104:29-30) remains his to give and to recall."\(^3\)

"The attempt by man to become more than he is results in his becoming less."\(^4\)

6:4 The "Nephilim" were on the earth both before and after the marriages of the "sons of God" with the "daughters of mankind." They were literally "fallen ones" or "tyrants." They are described as "mighty men who were of old, men of renown." That is, they were powerful individuals. The men that Moses sent to spy out the land later described the "people of

\(^1\)Keil and Delitzsch, 1:136; Leupold, 1:256.
\(^2\)von Rad, p. 114. Mathews, p. 335; Westermann, Genesis 1—11, p. 376; Wenham, pp. 142, 146-47, defended the shortening of life view.
\(^3\)Brueggemann, Genesis, p. 72.
great stature" in Canaan as "Nephilim." But this was not just because of their height but also because of their powerful appearance (cf. Num.13:31-33).

"The translation 'giants' (A.V.) is most unfortunate. It originated with the Septuagint (gigantes). It does not follow from Num. 13:33, even if there the 'attackers' should also happen to have been giants."\(^1\)

The sins of humanity generally 6:5-8

The second reason for the Flood, beside the sins of the "sons of God," was the sinfulness of humanity generally.

6:5 Men's and women's actions were very wicked, and their thoughts and affections ("every intent of the thoughts of their hearts," their mind-set, attitudes, and motives) were completely ("continually") "evil" by this time (cf. vv. 11-12; Rom. 1:18-32).

"Near the turn of the 19th century F. W. Farrar wrote a book entitled Seekers After God. The book was a popular seller and was in considerable demand. A certain western bookseller had a number of requests for the volume but had no copies available. He sent a telegram to the dealers in New York requesting them to ship him a number of the books. After awhile [sic] a telegram came back which read, 'No seekers after God in New York. Try Philadelphia.'"\(^2\)

6:6-7 God was "sorry" that He had "made" humankind, because people generally did not want a relationship with Him. They insisted on living life independent of God, and consequently were destroying themselves in sin. He experienced "heart-piercing sorrow"\(^3\) over what His special creation had become.

\(^1\)Leupold, 1:259.
\(^3\)Yates, p. 12.
This is an anthropopathism: Moses was describing the LORD as having human emotions (cf. 9:15, 16).

"God is no robot. We know him as a personal, living God, not a static principle, who while having transcendent purposes to be sure also engages intimately with his creation. Our God is incomparably affected by, even pained by, the sinner's rebellion. Acknowledging the passibility (emotions) of God does not diminish the immutability of his promissory purposes. Rather, his feelings and actions toward men, such as judgment or forgiveness, are always inherently consistent with his essential person and just and gracious resolve (Jas 1:17)."\(^1\)

"God repented that he had made man; but we never find him repenting that he redeemed man."\(^2\)

Verse 7 is another important early promise and prophecy. God proceeded to fulfill it literally. His destruction of all the animals in the Flood was not because they were sinful; it was an inevitable consequence of His judgment on all human kind.  

6:8  
Noah was the one exception to the universal godlessness. "Noah" may mean "grieved" (the Hebrew niphal form) or "rest" or "comfort" (the piel form). "Favor" equals "grace." This is the first mention of this word in the Old Testament, though we have seen many examples of God's grace thus far. There is a wordplay in the Hebrew text (an anagram). The same consonants of Noah's name (\(nh\)) in the reverse order mean "grace" (\(hn\)).

All of God's people can identify with Noah: they have all been recipients of God's grace. It is only by God's grace that we can escape His judgment on the wicked.

---

\(^1\)Mathews, p. 344.  
\(^2\)Matthew Henry, p. 17.
"Genesis is flatly contradicting the humanistic optimism of Mesopotamia: humanity's situation in its view is hopeless without divine mercy."¹

This section—together with the next—shows that pagan idolatry and immorality pain God and incur His judgment, and that man can only escape by His provision of salvation.

D. WHAT BECAME OF NOAH 6:9—9:29

The LORD destroyed the corrupt, violent human race, and deluged its world. But He used righteous Noah to preserve life, and to establish a new world after the Flood.

"Noah's experience presents decisively the author's assertion that the Lord judges human sin but provides a means for perpetuating the creation blessing (1:26-28) and the salvation hope for an elect seed (3:15). The recurring theme of blessing, threatened by sin but preserved by divine mercy, is found in the two narratives that make up the Noah toledot: the flood story (6:9—9:17) and the account of the patriarch's drunkenness (9:20-27). The former is worldwide in scope, and the latter is its microcosm. A genealogical note binds the two (9:18-19), and another concludes it (9:28-29).

"Also Noah's toledot contributes to the broader concerns of early Genesis by preparing the reader for the postdiluvian world. This 'new world' is the setting for understanding the perpetuation of the 'blessing' by the patriarchs (11:27—50:26), which is the main deliberation of Genesis."²

Noah is a very important person in biblical history. In addition to 34 occurrences of his name in Genesis, there are 13 more in 8 other books of the Bible (1 Chron. 1:4; Isa. 54:9 [twice]; Ezek. 14:14, 20; Matt. 24:37, 38; Luke 3:36; 17:26, 27; Heb. 11:7; 1 Pet. 3:20; 2 Pet. 2:5).

¹Wenham, p. xlviii.
²Mathews, pp. 349-50.
1. The Flood 6:9—8:22

The "chiastic" (palistrophic, crossing) structure of this section shows that Moses intended to emphasize *God's grace to Noah*, which occupies the central part of the story.

"One mark of the coherence of the flood narrative is to be found in its literary structure. The tale is cast in the form of an extended palistrophe, that is a structure that turns back on itself. In a palistrophe the first item matches the final item, the second item matches the penultimate item, and so on. The second half of the story is thus a mirror image of the first. This kind of literary structure has been discovered in other parts of Genesis, but nowhere else is it developed on such a large scale. This may be partly due to the fact that a flood narrative is peculiarly suited to this literary form.

"Particularly striking are the references to days (lines H, I, L, O). (Only the references to days form part of the palistrophe; the 40 days *and nights* [vii 4, 12] and the dates do not.) The periods of time form a symmetrical pattern, 7, 7, 40, 150, 150, 40, 7, 7. The turning point of the narrative is found in viii:1 'God remembered Noah.'

"What then is the function of the palistrophe? Firstly, it gives literary expression to the character of the flood event. The rise and fall of the waters is mirrored in the rise and fall of the key words in its description. Secondly, it draws attention to the real turning point in the saga: viii 1, 'And God remembered Noah.' From that moment the waters start to decline and the earth to dry out. It was God's intervention that was decisive in saving Noah, and the literary structure highlights this fact."

The following diagram illustrates this palistrophe (chiasm) more simply:

---


2 Ross, *Creation and ...,* p. 191. See also the charts in Mathews, p. 354; Waltke, *Genesis*, p. 125.
Dr. Constable's Notes on Genesis


A  God resolves to destroy the corrupt race (6:11-13).

B  Noah builds an ark according to God's instructions (6:14-22).

C  The Lord commands the remnant to enter the ark (7:1-9).

D  The flood begins (7:10-16).

E  The flood prevails 150 days and the water covers the mountains (7:17-24).

F  God remembers Noah (8:1a).

E'  The flood recedes 150 days, and the mountains are visible (8:1b-5).

D'  The earth dries (8:6-14).

C'  God commands the remnant to leave the ark (8:15-19).

B'  Noah builds an altar (8:20).

A'  The Lord resolves not to destroy humankind (8:21-22).

Conditions and events before the Flood 6:9—7:10

6:9-12 This is the first time the important words "righteous" and "blameless" appear in the Bible.

"The same explanation for Enoch's rescue from death ('he walked with God') is made the basis for Noah's rescue from death in the Flood: 'he walked with God' (6:9). Thus in the story of Noah and the Flood, the author is able to repeat the lesson of Enoch: life comes through 'walking with God.'"  

---

1Sailhamer, The Pentateuch ..., p. 119.
"Most people know that Noah built an ark. What they may not know is that he also built a godly character and a godly family."\textsuperscript{1}

"Noah is depicted as Adam \textit{redivivus} (revived). He is the sole survivor and successor to Adam; both 'walk' with God; both are the recipients of the promissory blessing; both are caretakers of the lower creatures; both father three sons; both are workers of the soil; both sin through the fruit of a tree; and both father a wicked son who is under a curse."\textsuperscript{2}

"The two words, 'corrupt' and 'violence,' give us respectively the character and expression of the sin, the cause and the effect [v. 11]. The corruption has led to violence, for badness always leads to cruelty in one form or another. A life that is wrong with God necessarily becomes wrong with its fellows."\textsuperscript{3}

We already had an illustration of this corruption in verse 2.

"Whereas God has blessed the human family with the power of procreation to fill the earth (1:28; 9:1), these culprits have 'filled the earth' by procreating 'violence' (cf. v. 13; Ezek 8:17; 28:16)."\textsuperscript{4}

God had created the earth and pronounced it "good" (1:31). But now it was "corrupt" and "filled with violence" (vv. 11-13).

6:13-16 Notice again that "the earth" (i.e., the atmosphere, dry land, bodies of water, all plant and animal life) had to suffer because of human sin (cf. 3:17-19; 4:12; Rom. 8:20-21).

\textsuperscript{1}Wiersbe, p. 45.
\textsuperscript{3}Thomas, \textit{Genesis}, p. 71.
\textsuperscript{4}Mathews, p. 359.
"There come times in the events of this world when God's gracious dealings with men are definitely terminated. Such times come only when grace has been offered in richest measure. But when the end is resolved upon, there is no recall. Such a case is marked by the 'end' that God here determines."¹

Noah received detailed instructions that he was to follow in building the "ark." Much later, Moses received detailed instructions that he was to follow in building the tabernacle. Both men followed their respective instructions and received praise (v. 22; Exod. 39:42-43; Lev. 8:36; Num. 27:22; Deut. 34:9). Both men inaugurated a new epoch. In this respect, Moses was another Noah.

"God must be obeyed in all his instructions if his people expect to enjoy the fruit of life and blessing (e.g., Deut 26:16-19; 28:1-14)."²

The ark was about 450 feet long (1 1/2 American football fields), 75 feet wide (7 standard parking spaces), and 45 feet high (a typical four-story building). It had three decks, and over 100,000 square feet of deck space. There were over 1 million cubic feet of space in it. This is a volume capacity of approximately 860 railroad boxcars. It had a floating capacity (its buoyancy, the total weight it could float) of almost 14,000 gross tons.³

The ark probably looked more like a rectangular box than a ship. After all, its purpose was to stay afloat, not transport its contents from one destination to another. This design used space very efficiently. The ark would have been very stable in the water. Modern ocean-going tankers and aircraft carriers have a similar scale of dimensions. The type of wood ("gopher") out of which Noah made the ark is unknown. The

¹Leupold, 1:268-69.
²Mathews, p. 363.
³See "Noah's Flood: Washing Away Millions of Years" DVD featuring Dr. Terry Mortenson.
Hebrew word occurs only here in the Old Testament, and is transliterated "gopher" in English.

6:17-21 This is the first occurrence of the important word "covenant" (Heb. berith) in the Old Testament (v. 18). The making of and the details of this covenant follow in 9:9-17. There were two basic kinds of covenants in the ancient Near East.¹

1. The parity covenant was one that equals (peers) made, for example: Abraham and Abimelech (21:22-32), Isaac and Abimelech (26:26-33), and Jacob and Laban (31:44-54).

2. The suzerainty covenant was one that a superior (e.g., a king) made with an inferior (e.g., a vassal). Examples of this type of covenant are: the Noahic Covenant (Gen. 9:1-17), the Abrahamic Covenant (Gen. 15:18-21), and the Mosaic Covenant (Exod. 19—Num. 10).

"The Noahic covenant is closer to the royal grant known from the ancient Near East where a deity bestows a benefit or gift upon a king. It has its closest parallels to the Abrahamic and Davidic covenants (Gen 15; 17; 2 Sam 7), which are promissory charters made by God with the individuals and their offspring, characteristically forever. Unlike the Mosaic covenant, in the royal grant form of covenant God alone is under compulsion by oath to uphold his promise to the favored party."²

6:22 We can see Noah's faith (Heb. 11:7) in his complete obedience to God ("Noah did these things; according to everything that God had commanded him"; cf. 7:5, 9, 16; 8:16-18)—even though he faced many obstacles. In this, he was similar to Abraham (cf. 12:4; 22:3).

"The author's purpose in drawing out the list of specifications for the ark in chapter 6, as with the

¹Livingston, pp. 153-54.
²Mathews, p. 368.
details of the building of the tabernacle, is not that readers might be able to see what the ark or the tabernacle looked like, but rather that readers might appreciate the meticulous care with which these godly and exemplary individuals went about their tasks of obedience to God's will. They obeyed God with 'all their hearts.'”

"What a splendid figure this man makes, a picture of solitary goodness! He was the one saint of that day. It is possible, therefore, to be good even though we have to stand alone. It is possible to be right with God even amidst surrounding iniquity. God is the same today as He was to Noah, and if only we are willing to fulfill the conditions we too shall walk with God and please Him.”

"God here makes Noah a great blessing to the world, and herein makes him an eminent type of the Messiah. 1. God made him a preacher to the men of that generation. 2. God made him a saviour to the inferior creatures, to keep the several kinds of them from perishing and being lost in the deluge, ν. 19-21. (1) He was to provide shelter for them, that they might not be drowned. (2) He was to provide sustenance for them, that they might not be starved, ν. 21. Herein also he was a type of Christ, to whom it is owing that the world stands, by whom all things consist, and who preserves mankind from being totally cut off and ruined by sin. Noah saved those whom he was to rule, so does Christ, Heb. v. 9.”

---

1 Sailhamer, The Pentateuch ..., p. 125.
2 Thomas, Genesis, p. 74.
"A type is a divinely purposed anticipation which illustrates its antitype."¹

7:1-10 God, in His grace, invited Noah to enter the ark with his family (v. 1; cf. 8:15). God took the initiative, as He later did in calling Abram (cf. 12:1). This is the first occurrence of the offer "Come" (v. 1, NET2, AV, NKJV) in the Bible.² This invitation continues throughout Scripture, the last offer being in Revelation 22:17. God extends the invitation to people, He urges them to take advantage of the perfect provision He has made for their preservation, and He offers it in a time of impending judgment and gloom.

"It is not that Noah's works of righteousness gain [sic gain] him salvation, for none is cited. Rather, his upright character is noted to condemn his generation, which merits death."³

"Sinful men do not deserve to live on God's earth. This is the basic message of the Genesis Flood."⁴

God did not reveal the basis for His distinction between "clean" and "not clean" animals here (v. 2). Israel's pagan neighbors also observed clean and unclean distinctions between animals, though these distinctions varied from country to country. In the Mosaic Law, God further distinguished between acceptable and unacceptable foods—for the Israelites. Jesus Christ and the Apostle Paul taught that now, in the Church Age, these distinctions no longer need affect people as far as our relationship to God goes (Mark 7:15, 18-19; cf. Acts 10:15; 11:9; Rom. 14:14).

"According to the scriptural use of numbers forty [v. 4] regularly describes a period of trial terminating in the victory of good and the

---

²Other translations have "Go" (NIV, TNIV, ESV) and "Enter" (NASB, HCSB).
³Mathews, p. 371.
overthrow of evil; see Num. 14:33; Exod. 24:18; I
Kings 19:8; Jonah 3:4; Matt. 4:2; Acts 1:3."¹

How did God cause all the animals to come to the ark (vv. 8-
9)? Perhaps all varieties of animals were in the immediate
neighborhood of the ark, or perhaps they came from far away
while the ark was being built. Moses did not explain this.

"... there is absolutely no way of telling [from the
Bible] how the various continents were formed
and shaped in days of old and whether they were
more intimately connected with one another prior
to the Flood and immediately thereafter."²

"The problem of providing food for so many
creatures for somewhat more than a year is
simplified by the very proper consideration that
beasts are very shrewd about adapting their food
supply to their needs. When they have no physical
exercise, like brooding hens, they cut down
promptly on the amount of food consumed.
Likewise during the time of hibernating. A kind of
winter sleep may providentially have taken
possession of all inmates of the ark, materially
cutting down their needs and reducing them to a
very small minimum."³

The Flood proper 7:11-24

There are two views among evangelicals as to the extent of the Flood:

1. The flood was universal, in that it covered the entire earth. Here is a
summary of the evidence that supports this view:⁴

   a. The purpose of the Flood (6:5-7, 11-13).

   b. The need for an ark (6:14).

¹Leupold, 1:291.
²Ibid., 1:303.
³Ibid., 1:278.
⁴See also Whitcomb and Morris, pp. 1-35.
c. The size of the ark (6:15-16).

d. The universal terms used in the story (6:17-21; 7:19, 21-23). Context must determine whether universal terms are truly universal or limited (see Luke 2:1 and Matt. 28:19-20 for examples of universal terms that are limited).

e. The amount of water involved (7:11, 20; 8:2).

f. The duration of the Flood: 371 days (7:11; 8:14).

g. The testimony of the psalmist (Ps. 104:5-9).

h. The testimony of Peter (2 Pet. 3:3-7).

i. The faithfulness of God (8:21).

This view has been the most popular with conservative interpreters throughout history.

"By and large, the tradition of the Christian church is that the context requires a universal flood, and many Christian scholars have maintained this position knowing well the geological difficulties it raises."¹

"Water seeks its own level, so if 'all the high mountains' were covered (7:19), the whole earth was under water to that extent. Moreover, the insistence on the use of 'all' ('all mountains,' 7:19; 'all flesh,' 7:21; 'all in whose nostrils,' 7:22); 'all that was on the dry land,' 7:22); and so forth) can lead to no other view than a universal deluge, modern scientific opinion notwithstanding."²

"The language is not consistent with the theory of a partial deluge."³

---


²Merrill, in The Old ..., p. 15.

³Jamieson, et al., p. 22.
"On the one hand the distribution of the saga (among Indians, Persians, Africans, Melanesians, and Australians, among the Eskimos, the Kamchatkans, Indians of the Americas, etc.), on the other hand its remarkable uniformity (flood caused by rain), require the assumption of an actual cosmic experience and a primitive recollection which, to be sure, is often clouded and in part often brought to new life and revised only later by local floods."¹

2. The flood was local, and covered only part of the earth.² It was, in the words of J. Vernon McGee, "sort of a big swimming pool."³ (McGee believed in a universal flood.) The evidence is as follows:

a. The main arguments rest on modern geology, and the improbability of a universal flood in view of the consequential global changes.

b. Advocates take the universal statements in the text as limited to the area where Moses said the Flood took place.

c. Some advocates believe that Moses described the Flood as an observer would have seen these events. An observer would have seen no mountains that were not covered with water.⁴

This view has gained wide acceptance, ever since the modern science of geology has called into question the credibility of the text.⁵

"The principle concern of those advocating a local flood is to escape the geological implications of a universal flood."⁶

"Since the distorted concept of special creation used by the originator of the geologic column was never truly Creationistic, and organic evolution has long since

---

¹von Rad, p. 124. See also pp. 128-30.
²See, for example, Ramm, pp. 305-43; Baxter, 1:41-42; Morgan, An Exposition ..., p 14.
³McGee, 1:42.
⁴Pieters, pp. 118-19.
⁵See Whitcomb and Morris, pp. 36-88, for refutation of the local flood view.
⁶Davis, Paradise to ..., p. 124. See Ramm, pp. 229-40; and Kidner; who advocated a local flood.
become the conceptual basis for time-equivalence of index fossils, modern Creationists can justifiably point out that organic evolution is the basis for the geological column."¹

Basically, this controversy, like that involving the Creation account, involves presuppositions about the credibility of Scripture or science, and the possibility of supernatural occurrences. The scientific community seems to be more open to catastrophism of some kind than it used to be.²

"We believe that most of the difficulties associated with the Biblical record of the Flood are basically religious, rather than scientific. The concept of such a universal judgment on man's sin and rebellion, warning as it does of another greater judgment yet to come, is profoundly offensive to the intellectual and moral pride of modern man and so he would circumvent it if at all possible."³

Some interpreters have understood the opening of the "floodgates of the sky" (v. 11) as a breaking up of a water vapor canopy that, some say, covered the earth before the Flood. Advocates of this "canopy theory" believe that it may account for longevity before the Flood.⁴ Other less probable explanations of the longevity of the antediluvians are (1) that "years" really means "lunar months," or (2) that the years refer not to the age of individuals but to the age of a family, tribe, or dynasty.⁵

"The water for Noah's Flood came from the release of great underground sources of water (the fountains of the great deep which continued pouring forth for 150 days), and from the collapse of the waters above (presumably a vast water vapor blanket or canopy above the atmosphere), giving the 40 days

³Whitcomb and Morris, p. xxii. See also pp. 439-41.
⁴See my comments on 2:5-6 for discussion of the canopy theory.
⁵See Pieters, p. 109, for advocates of these theories.
and nights of rain. Psalm 104 indicates that after the Flood, the mountains were upthrust to their present positions, with associated deepening of the ocean basins, which now hold the waters of the Flood.

"These waters would not have been enough to cover today's highest mountains. Genesis indicates no rain or rainbows before the Flood, which is consistent with the absence of high mountains that are important to the triggering of rainfall. Also, the absence of large temperature differences between poles and equator under such a greenhouse blanket of water vapor would mean an absence of the vast winds which are also necessary (now, but not before the Flood) for the rainfall cycle. Genesis describes how the earth before the Flood was watered by mists and/or springs and geysers."¹

A diagonal strip of marine limestone, which is the remains of the ancient Tethys Sea, that mountain climbers refer to as the Yellow Band, is located beneath Mt. Everest's just over 29,000-foot summit, between about 25,000 and 27,000 feet. This is evidence that water did indeed cover "all the high mountains everywhere" (v. 19). However, Mt. Everest may not have been as high before the Flood as it is now. Another less likely possibility, I think, is that the few mountains that are higher than Mt. Ararat, the present altitude of which is just under 17,000 feet, were unknown in Noah's day and in Moses' day (cf. v. 19).² The Flood may have, and probably did, create major changes in the topography of the entire earth.

"... the effects caused by the waters of the great deep (1:2), as they surged about on the earth in process of formation, together with the effects brought about by this great Flood, seem to us an entirely adequate explanation for geological formations of every kind, as they are now to be observed."³

"We have shown earlier that the flood narrative points ahead to Moses and the escape of the Hebrews through the Red Sea. This is evidenced again by the term 'dry land' (haraba) in our passage (v. 22) rather than the customary 'dry ground'

¹Ham, et al., p. 15. Cf. also pp. 117-29 for further discussion.
²Leupold, 1:302.
³Ibid., 1:296.
(yabasa). This infrequent term occurs eight times, only once more in the Pentateuch at Exod 14:21, where it describes the transformation of the sea into 'dry land' by a 'strong east wind.' This exodus parallel is confirmed by 8:1b, which speaks of God's sending a 'wind' upon the waters. Later Israel identified itself with Noah and the tiny group of survivors who escaped the wicked by the awesome deeds of God."

The Lord Jesus affirmed the historicity of the "days of Noah" when He likened them to the end days (Matt. 24:37; Luke 17:26, 27). Peter also used the story of Noah as an illustration of what will happen in the end days (1 Pet. 3:20; 2 Pet. 2:5; 3:5, 6).

The aftermath of the Flood ch. 8

My wife and I took a tour of the Fossil Rim Wildlife Center near Glen Rose, Texas. We discovered early in our tour that our guide was a Christian, and she discovered that we were Christians. At one point in the tour, she explained that the geological formations nearby were the result of millions of years of evolution. She then, surprisingly, turned off the motor of the jeep in which we were riding, and confessed that she didn't really believe what she had just told us. She asked us what we believed. I told her that I believe that the fossil record, and geological stratification, harmonize with the Bible if one believes two things: (1) that God created things with the appearance of age, and (2) that God sent a universal flood that covered the whole earth.

8:1-5 When Moses wrote that "God remembered" someone (v. 1), in this case Noah, he meant that God extended mercy to him or her by delivering that person from death or destruction (here; cf. 19:29) or from barrenness (30:22). God's rescue of Noah foreshadows His deliverance of Israel in the Exodus (cf. 8:13-14 and Exod. 2:24; 14:21).

"'Ararat,' known as ancient Urartu in Assyrian records, was an extensive territory and bordered the northern Mesopotamian region. It reached its political zenith in the ninth to sixth centuries B.C.

---

1 Mathews, pp. 381-82.
2 Hamilton, p. 299.
Urartu surrounded Lake Van with boundaries taking in southeast Turkey, southern Russia, and northwest Iran. Among the mountains of modern Armenia is the impressive peak known today as Mount Ararat, some seventeen thousand feet in elevation, which the Turks call Byk Ari Da. 'Mount Ararat' as a geographical designation comes from later tradition. During the eleventh to twelfth centuries A.D., it became the traditional site known as the place of Noah's landing. Verse 4, however, does not specify a peak and refers generally to its location as the 'mountains of Ararat.' The search for the ark's artifacts has been both a medieval and a modern occupation; but to the skeptic such evidence is not convincing, and to the believer, while not irrelevant, it is not necessary to faith.\(^1\)

Modern "Mt. Ararat" lies on the border between Turkey and Armenia, near the center of the ancient world. From this general region, Noah's descendants spread out over the earth.\(^2\)

8:6-14 "The raven in seeking food settles upon every carcass it sees, whereas the dove will only settle on what is dry and clean."\(^3\)

The "dove" (v. 8), which is a light-colored, clean animal (Lev. 1:14; 12:6; et al.), in contrast to dark-colored, unclean animals (Lev. 11:15; Deut. 14:14), returns to its home when it finds no place to land.

"The olive tree will put out leaves even under water."\(^4\)

---

\(^1\) Mathews, pp. 385-86.
\(^3\) Keil and Delitzsch, 1:149.
\(^4\) Ibid.
8:15-19 There are many interesting thematic parallels between God calling Noah *out of* the ark, and God later calling Abraham *out of* Ur (cf. 8:15 and 12:1; 8:16 and 12:1; 8:18 and 12:4; 8:20 and 12:7; 9:1 and 12:2; 9:9 and 12:7).

"Both Noah and Abraham represent new beginnings in the course of events recorded in Genesis. Both are marked by God's promise of blessing and his gift of the covenant."¹

Verse 15 introduces the third dispensation, the dispensation of Human Government. When Noah and his family stepped out of the ark to begin life on earth anew, God laid down new rules for humanity, including a new test. Previously, no one had the right to take another human life (cf. 4:10-11, 14-15, 23-24). Now, though man's direct moral responsibility to God continued, God delegated to man certain areas of His authority, such as *capital punishment* (the death penalty for a crime). Man was now to express his obedience to God, not only by obeying God directly, but also by obeying the *human authorities* God would set over him, namely, human governors (cf. Matt. 22:21; Rom. 13:1-2).

The highest function of human government is the protection of human life. God now specified that human beings were not to presently avenge murder—individually—but to do so *as a corporate group*, and practice "capital punishment," in order to safeguard the sanctity of human life. Human life is a gift from God that people should not dispose of except as God permits. Restraint on man in the preceding dispensation was internal (6:3), God's Spirit working through moral responsibility. But now a new *external* restraint was added: the influence and power of civil government.

Unfortunately, mankind failed to rule his fellow man righteously. Civil leaders have abused their function as God's vice-regents, by ruling for themselves rather than for God. Examples are the failures at Babel (11:9), in Israel's theocracy (2 Chron. 36:15-21), and in "the times of the Gentiles" (Dan.

¹Sailhamer, "Genesis," p. 91.
The glorious reign of Jesus Christ over the earth will supersede man’s rule, eventually. The dispensation of Human Government ended, as a specific test of human obedience, when God called Abraham to be His instrument of blessing to the whole world (12:2). Nevertheless mankind’s responsibility for government did not end then, but will continue until Christ sets up His kingdom on the earth.

Verses 18 and 19 may seem like needless repetition to the modern reader, but they underline Noah’s obedience to God’s words, which Moses stressed in the entire Flood narrative.

Noah’s "altar" is the first altar mentioned in the Bible. His "burnt offerings" were for worship. Some of the burnt offerings in the Mosaic cultus (system of worship) were for the same purpose. Specifically, a burnt offering made atonement and expressed the offerer’s complete personal devotion to God (cf. Lev. 1; Rom. 12:1-2). As the head of the new humanity, Noah, with his sacrifice, represented all humankind.

"To sacrifice seems as 'natural' to man as to pray; the one indicates what he feels about himself, the other what he feels about God. The one means a felt need of propitiation; the other a felt sense of dependence."¹

God’s promise in verse 22 guarantees a certain degree of reliability in earth’s climate system.

"There are good theological and scientific reasons to think Earth’s climate is stable and global warming alarmism is unwarranted. Climate alarmism is distracting people—both Christians and non-Christians—from much weightier issues."²

¹Edersheim, The Temple, p. 107.
²Jake Hebert, The Climate Change Conflict, p. 44.
God will again judge the wicked catastrophically, and begin a new era of existence with faithful believers: at the Second Coming of Christ and the ensuing Millennium.

The non-biblical stories of the Flood are undoubtedly perversions of the true account that God preserved in Scripture.¹ God may have revealed the true account directly to Moses, or He may have preserved a true oral or written account that Moses used as his source of this information. Moses may have written the Genesis account, under divine inspiration, to correct the Mesopotamian versions (the maximalist view), or both the biblical and Mesopotamian accounts may go back to a common tradition (the minimalist view).²

"Biblical religion explained that the seasonal cycle was the consequence of Yahweh's pronouncement and, moreover, evidence of a divine dominion that transcends the elements of the earth. There is no place for Mother-earth in biblical ideology. Earth owes its powers (not her powers!) to the divine command."³

2. The Noahic Covenant 9:1-17

Following the Flood, God established human life anew on the earth, showing His high regard for it. He promised to bless humanity with faithfulness, and He prohibited murder. He also promised—with a sign (the rainbow)—that He would not destroy His creation again "by the waters of a flood" (v. 11).

"The Noahic covenant's common allusions to 1:1—2:3 show that Noah is the second Adam who heads the new family of humanity, indicating that the blessing continues through the progeny of the Sethite line. Also 8:20—9:17 possesses lexical and thematic connections with the ratification of the Sinai covenant by Moses and the elders (Exod 24:4-18)."⁴

¹See Finegan, pp. 27-36, for discussion of these.
²For a chart that compares the biblical account of the Flood with four other ancient Near Eastern accounts of it, see Appendix 4 at the end of these notes.
³Mathews, p. 397.
At this new beginning of the human family, God again commanded Noah and his sons to "fill the earth" with their descendants (v. 1; cf. 1:28; 9:7). As with Adam, He also gave them dominion over the animals, and permission to eat any animal or "moving thing" (v. 3) for food, with only one prohibition: the animal's blood (cf. 1:26, 28-29; 2:16-17). The phrases "The fear of you" and "the terror of you" express the same idea (v. 2). Evidently at this point animals began to have a greater fear of human beings than they had previously (cf. 1:28). The exceeding sinfulness of mankind that resulted in the Flood did not wipe out God's original commands regarding human propagation and dominion.

God gave Noah permission to eat animals (v. 3). Until now, evidently people had eaten only plants (cf. 1:29). Now humanity received the power of life and death over the animal kingdom ("I have given everything to you").

"God did not expressly prohibit the eating of meat in the initial stipulation at creation, but by inference 9:3's provision for flesh is used as a dividing mark between the antediluvian and postdiluvian periods. Whether or not early man could eat meat by permission from the beginning, now it is stated formally in the Noahic covenant."  

God did, however, prohibit the eating of animal "blood" in order to instill respect for the sacredness of life, since blood is a symbol of life and it is the life-giving fluid (cf. Lev. 3:17; 7:2-27; 19:26; Deut. 12:1-24; 1 Sam. 14:32-34; Acts 15:20, 29).

"The implication [of New Testament references to eating blood] seems very clear that we are still to respect the sanctify of the blood, since God has appointed it to be a symbol of the atoning blood of Jesus Christ. Therefore it is not to be consumed

---


2Mathews, p. 401.
by any believer who wishes to be obedient to Scripture."

Until the Mosaic Law, God made no distinction between clean and unclean animals with regard to human consumption. Under the Mosaic Law, the Israelites could not eat certain foods. Under the Law of Christ (Gal. 6:2), we may again eat any foods (Rom. 14:14; 1 Tim. 4:3). These changes illustrate the fact that God has changed some of the rules, for human conduct, at various strategic times in history. These changes are significant features that help us identify the various dispensations (economies) by which God has ruled historically.

God not only reasserted the cultural mandate to reproduce, and subdue the earth, and modified the food law, but He also reasserted the sanctity of human life (cf. ch. 4). The reason for capital punishment for murder (v. 6) is that God made man in His own image. This is one reason, therefore, that murder is so serious. A person extinguishes a revelation of God—which God takes very personally (cf. Abel's blood "crying out to Me [God] from the ground," 4:10)—when he or she murders someone. Years later, the writing prophets announced that God would judge certain foreign nations because they shed human blood without divine authorization (e.g., Amos 1:3, 11, 13; 2:1). God has never countermanded this command, so it is still in force. Before the Flood, the lack of capital punishment led to bloody vendettas (cf. ch. 4).

---

1 Archer, *Encyclopedia of ...*, p. 86.
The Mosaic Law prescribed the death penalty for several other crimes, in addition to murder (Exod. 21:12; Num. 35:16-31): working on the sabbath (Exod. 35:2), cursing father or mother (Lev. 20:9), adultery (Lev. 20:10), incest (Lev. 20:11-12), sodomy (Lev. 20:13, 15-16), false prophesying (Deut. 13:1-10), Idolatry (Deut. 17:2-7), incorrigible juvenile delinquency (Deut. 21:18-21), rape (Deut. 22:25), keeping an ox that had killed a human being (Exod. 21:29), kidnapping (Exod. 21:16), and intrusion of an alien into a sacred place or office (Num. 1:51; 3:10, 38; 17:7). These punishments ended with the end of the Mosaic Law, but the punishment for murder continued, since it antedated the Mosaic Law.¹

"This command laid the foundation for all civil government."²

"The human government and the governors that existed previously—as in the city which Cain established (4:17), or in the case of the mighty men (6:4)—existed solely on human authority. Now, however, divine authority was conferred on human government to exercise oversight over those who lived under its jurisdiction."³

"I sometimes feel that often the hue and cry against capital punishment today does not so much rest upon humanitarian interest or even an interest in justice, but rather in a failure to understand that man is unique. The simple fact is that Genesis 9:6 is a sociological statement: The reason that the punishment for murder can be so severe is that man, being created in the image of God, has a particular value—not just a theoretical value at some time before the Fall, but such a value yet today."⁴

¹See Ryrie, Biblical Answers ..., pp. 23-34.
³Pentecost, p. 46.
⁴Schaeffer, Genesis in ..., pp. 50-51.
"... the establishment of the divine sovereign right over human life is expressed apodictically and unconditionally. It is absolutely inviolable and, moreover, not for man's sake because of some law of humanity, or 'reverence for life,' but because man is God's possession and was created in God's image."¹

Often, today, people who believe in capital punishment argue for it on the basis of passages that commanded the Israelites to take life for life, eye for eye, tooth for tooth, etc. (Exod. 21:23-25; Lev. 24:19-20; Deut. 19:21; cf. Num. 35:33). However, that was Mosaic legislation, and Christ ended the Law when He died on the cross (cf. Rom. 10:4; et al.). A better basis for capital punishment is this Noahic legislation.

"... capital punishment is divinely ordained. For the proper safeguarding of the human race this basic ordinance is laid down. When lawgivers attempt to tamper with this regulation, they are trying to be wiser than the Divine Lawgiver and overthrow the pillars of safety that He Himself provided for the welfare of mankind."²

Sometimes those who argue against capital punishment, today, appeal to Jesus' statement in the Sermon on the Mount: "You have heard that it was said, 'Eye for eye, and tooth for tooth.' But I say to you, do not show opposition against an evil person" (Matt. 5:38-39). Jesus was not cancelling God's command to execute murderers when He said this, but was teaching self-restraint and non-retaliation in interpersonal conflicts, as is clear from the context.

Others sometimes appeal to Jesus' words to the woman taken in adultery: "I do not condemn you, either. Go. From now on do not sin any longer" (John 8:11). They believe that Jesus was refusing to recommend the death penalty for a person who had committed a capital offense under Israel's law,

¹von Rad, p. 132.
²Leupold, 1:334.
because He disapproved of capital punishment. Besides the fact that the inspiration of this passage is highly disputed, Jesus, as the Judge of all mankind, had every right to waive or postpone this woman's judgment.

Jesus, on the other hand also said, in the Sermon on the Mount, "For in the way you judge [deal with people], you will be judged [dealt with], and by your standard of measure, it will be measured to you" (Matt. 7:2). And, "all those who take up the sword will perish by the sword" (Matt. 26:52).

The Apostle Paul also taught Christians to submit to the government: that "bear[s] the sword" and is "an avenger who brings wrath on the one who practices evil" (Rom. 13:4). These statements affirm judgment "in kind" for offenders.

The fact that there have been and still are injustices in a legal system does not justify doing away with capital punishment. Rather, the system needs to be corrected so that innocent people are not put to death and guilty people are.

9:8-17

The Noahic Covenant was a suzerainty treaty that God made with humankind through Noah. In it, He promised to "never again" destroy all flesh with "the waters of a flood" (v. 11).

"A peculiar difficulty arises in v. 10 for those who hold that the Flood was partial and not universal. They must support the strange supposition that God made a covenant with those creatures only which went forth from the ark. Others that never entered the ark must do without the benefits of such a covenant."\(^2\)

The sign God appointed to remind people of this promise, and to guarantee its veracity, was the rainbow (v. 12-15; cf. 6:12). There may have been rainbows before this pronouncement, but now God attached significance to the rainbow.

---

1See note on 6:18.
2Leupold, 1:338.
"It is not impossible that with the Flood came altered atmospheric and cloud conditions, for geologic evidence points to an earlier age when a climate uniformly tropical prevailed also in the artic region."\(^1\)

In later years, God gave other signs in connection with other covenants: physical circumcision with the Abrahamic Covenant, Sabbath observance with the Mosaic Covenant, and the Lord's Supper with the New Covenant.

"Shining upon a dark ground ... it [the rainbow] represents the victory of the light of love over the fiery darkness of wrath. Originating from the effect of the sun upon a dark cloud, it typifies the willingness of the heavenly to penetrate the earthly. Stretched between heaven and earth, it is as a bond of peace between both, and, spanning the horizon, it points to the all-embracing universality of the Divine mercy."\(^2\)

"The rainbow arcs like a battle bow hung against the clouds. (The Hebrew word for rainbow, \textit{qeset}, is also the word for a battle bow.) ... The bow is now 'put away,' hung in place by the clouds, suggesting that the 'battle,' the storm, is over. Thus the rainbow speaks of peace."\(^3\)

"A bow bespeaks terror, but this bow has neither string nor arrow, and a bow alone will do little execution. It is a bow, but it is directed upwards, not towards the earth; for the seals of the covenant were intended to comfort, not to terrify."\(^4\)

"God could certainly turn the bow of judgment upon us, because we've broken His law and

---

\(^{1}\)Ibid., 1:340.
\(^{2}\)Franz Delitzsch, \textit{A New Commentary on Genesis}, 1:289-90.
\(^{3}\)Ross, "Genesis," p. 40. Paragraph division omitted,
\(^{4}\)Matthew Henry, p. 23.
deserve judgment. *But He has turned the bow toward heaven and taken the punishment for us Himself!*  

This covenant would remain for "all future generations" (v. 12). People have no responsibility to guarantee the perpetuity of this covenant; God will do all that He promised (v. 9). Observe the recurrence of "I," "Myself," and "My" in these verses. God was making His promise—to all living creatures for all time going forward—very personal. Note that He said that the rainbow would remind Him of His promise; it was primarily a reminder to God and secondarily to human beings. Finally, this covenant is unconditional (v. 9), universal (v. 11), and everlasting (v. 12).

"None of the regulations that follow is temporary or ever to be abrogated as long as the present world era continues."

"What distinguishes the Noahic [Covenant] from the patriarchal one and for that matter all others recounted in the Old Testament is its truly universal perspective. It is God’s commitment to the whole of humanity and all terrestrial creation—including the surviving animal population."

"The covenant with Noah [6:18; 9:9-16] is entirely unconditional rather than a conditional covenant, as in the Edenic situation. The certainty of the fulfillment of the covenant with Noah rested entirely with God and not with Noah. As this point is somewhat obscured in current discussion on the covenants of Scripture, it is important to distinguish covenants that are conditional from those that are unconditional.

---

1 Wiersbe, p. 55.
3 Leupold, 1:327.
4 Mathews, p. 62.
Conditional covenants depend on the recipients meeting the conditions imposed by God. Unconditional covenants declare that God's purpose will be fulfilled regardless of an individual's response. The fact that the covenant is one-sided—from God to humankind—does not mean that there is no response on the part of humankind. But the point is that the response is anticipated and does not leave the fulfillment of the covenant in doubt.\(^1\)

The elements of the Noahic Covenant are the following: (1) God held man responsible for protecting the sanctity of human life by orderly governmental rule, even specifying the use of capital punishment (9:5-6; cf. Rom. 13:1-7). (2) God promised not to judge humanity again with a universal flood of water (8:21; 9:11-16), and He confirmed the established order of nature (8:22; 9:2). (3) God permitted people to eat animal flesh, evidently for the first time (9:3-4). (4) God announced that Canaan's descendants would be servants to their brethren (9:25-26), Shem's descendants would enjoy a special relationship to the Lord (9:26-27), and Japheth's descendants would become enlarged races (9:27).

"... the author is intentionally drawing out the similarities between God's covenant with Noah and the covenant at Sinai. Why? The answer that best fits with the author's purposes is that he wants to show that God's covenant at Sinai is not a new act of God. The covenant is rather a return to God's original promises. Once again at Sinai, as he had done in the past, God is at work restoring his fellowship with man and bringing man back to himself. The covenant with Noah plays an important role in the author's development of God's restoration of blessing. It lies midway between God's original blessing of all mankind (1:28) and God's promise to bless 'all peoples on the earth' through Abraham (12:1-3)."\(^2\)

---

\(^1\)Walvoord, "The New ...," pp. 188-89.

\(^2\)Sailhamer, "Genesis," p. 93.
This pericope presents the characteristics of the three branches of the human family that grew out of Noah. Moses stressed the themes of blessing and cursing. God "cursed" Canaan with slavery ("A servant of servants he shall be to his brothers," v. 25), because Ham (Canaan's father) showed disrespect toward Noah. The LORD blessed Shem and Japheth, because they showed regard for their father's vulnerable condition ("Shem and Japheth ... covered the nakedness of their father," v. 23).

"The world seems all set for a new start. The slate has been wiped clean, and we hope that the mistakes of the antediluvians will not be repeated. But no sooner is the blessing pronounced and the eternal covenant confirmed than man lapses again."

Evidently Noah became so "drunk" that he took off all his clothes; he "uncovered himself" in his tent (v. 21). There is no explicit indication that Ham disrobed his father or committed some homosexual act. However, because the expression "saw the nakedness" is sometimes used of sexual intercourse, it is possible that some form of sexual immorality was involved. One writer argued that Ham's sin was that he failed to cover his father's nakedness. Perhaps he failed to respect his father's godliness. Shem and Japheth's act of covering their father's nakedness was similar to God's act of covering Adam and Eve's nakedness (3:20); it was a godly thing to do.

Noah's shame was not that he drank some "wine" (v. 20), but that he drank to excess and thereby lost self-control, which resulted in vulnerability (cf. Eph. 5:18). Certainly this incident should warn the reader of the potential harm of drunkenness, both for the drinker and for his or her family. The stumbling-

---

2 See Mathews, pp. 417, 419.
5 Leupold, 1:346.
block for Adam and Eve had also been a piece of fruit, only in their case, we do not know the kind of fruit that they ate.

"Whatever the actual nature of his [Noah’s] conduct might have been [in becoming drunk and uncovering himself in his tent], the author presents his deed as one of disgrace and shame (‘nakedness,’ as in Ge 3), and he seems intent on depicting the scene in such a way as to establish parallels between Noah’s disgrace (he took of the fruit of his orchard and became naked) and that of Adam and Eve (who took of the fruit of the Garden and saw that they were naked)."¹

Ham’s response to seeing Noah’s nakedness (v. 22) represents an early step in the abandonment of the moral code after the Flood. Ham dishonored Noah, not by seeing him naked, but by his apparent amusement or delight in his father’s condition (cf. Gen. 19:26; Exod. 33:20; Judg. 13:22; 1 Sam. 6:19). He probably should have covered Noah up himself, rather than drawing his brothers’ attention to his father’s nakedness and thereby magnifying it.

"It is difficult for someone living in the modern world to understand the modesty and discretion of privacy called for in ancient morality. Nakedness in the OT was from the beginning a thing of shame for fallen man [3:7] ... the state of nakedness was both undignified and vulnerable. To see someone uncovered was to bring dishonor and to gain advantage for potential exploitation."²

"The sons of Noah are here shown to belong to two groups of humankind, those who like Adam and Eve hide the shame of their nakedness and those who like Ham, or rather the Canaanites, have no sense of their shame before God. The one

¹Sailhamer, The Pentateuch ..., p. 120. See also Mathews, p. 418.
group, the line of Shem, will be blessed (9:26); but the other, the Canaanites (not the Hamites), can only be cursed (9:25)."¹

"Shem, the father of Abraham, is the paradigm of later Israel; and Ham of their archenemies, Egypt and Canaan (10:6). Lying behind this is the ancient concept of corporate personality. Because of this unity of father-son, the character of the father is anticipated in the deeds of the sons. Hebrew theology recognized that due to parental influence future generations usually committed the same acts as their fathers whether for ill or good. In this case the curse is directed at Ham's son as Ham's just deserts for the disrespect he had toward his own father, Noah."²

Ham's action may have also involved an attempt to take the leadership of the family from Noah.³ Shem and Japheth's act of covering their father's nakedness, however, imitated God—who covered Adam and Eve's nakedness in the garden (3:21).

Brian Peterson discussed 17 instances of sexual aggression in Genesis, apart from polygamy, that resulted from the Fall. Six of these were men against women, three men against men, three women against women, and five women against men. Ham's sin against Noah is the first on his list.⁴

9:25-27 This oracle—the first time Moses recorded a human uttering a curse—is a prophecy announcing divine judgment on Canaan's descendants for their sin—that had its seed in Ham's act. Noah, as a prophet, announced the future of this particular grandson's descendants (cf. Gen. 49; Deut. 33; et al.).

¹Sailhamer, The Pentateuch ..., p. 130.
²Mathews, p. 421.
³See Jordan, pp. 47-52.
"For his breach of the family, his [Ham's] own family would falter."\(^1\)

The Canaanites became known for their shameless depravity in sexual matters.\(^2\) When Joshua invaded their land, he proved to be God's instrument of punishment for the Canaanites. Moses' mention of Noah's curse on Canaan would have encouraged his original Israelite readers, by reminding them that the people who occupied the land that they were about to enter were cursed. Likewise, his mention of Noah's blessing of Shem, the ancestor of Abram and the Israelites, would have encouraged them (v. 26).

There is no basis for the popular notion that this oracle doomed the Hamites, who settled mainly in Africa, to a position of inferiority or slavery among the other peoples of the world. "Canaan," and only his branch of the family, are the subject of this prophecy, not Ham and all his descendants. The curse on Canaan was a prophecy of what God would do to Canaan's branch of the human family, because the sinful attitude and act of Ham would eventually come to full flower in his son Canaan. Noah, as a prophet, looked down the corridors of time, with God's revelation, and saw what would happen.

"There are no grounds in our passage for an ethnic reading of the 'curse' as some have done, supposing that some peoples are inferior to others. Here Genesis looks only to the social and religious life of Israel's ancient rival Canaan, whose immorality defiled their land and threatened Israel's religious fidelity (cf. Lev 18:28; Josh 23). It was not an issue of ethnicity but of the wicked practices that characterized Canaanite culture."\(^3\)

---

\(^1\)Kidner, p. 104.
\(^2\)See Charles Pfeiffer, *Ras Shamra and the Bible*.
The Canaanites are now extinct.

"With the defeat of Tyre by Nebuchadnezzar in 572 B.C. the Canaanites/Phoenicians ceased to be of importance in biblical history."\(^1\)

"In dealing with the Canaanites and their religious ideas we must never forget that Canaanites and Phoenicians were one people, so far as language and cultural tradition went."\(^2\)

The prophecy about Japheth living in the tents of Shem (v. 27) may have been fulfilled when Alexander the Great defeated the Persians and took control over Canaan.\(^3\)

The general lesson of the passage is that God blesses those who behave righteously, but curses those who abandon moral restraint. In view of what studies on the effects of viewing pornography have taught us, it should be no surprise that the root of the depraved Canaanite culture was looking at someone's nakedness. We need to be very careful about viewing nudity. It can lead to an addiction that results in complete corruption, and finally ends in divine judgment.

"Instructively, the first three heroes of faith listed in Hebrews are from Genesis 4—6: Abel, Enoch, and Noah. All believed God, but their destinies were significantly different. Abel believed God and died. Enoch believed God and did not die. Noah believed God, and everyone else died in the Flood; eventually he died a natural death at the good old age of 950 years. We cannot dictate where faith will lead. The human tendency is to see only Enoch as the example of faith, but Abel is also given as our example. What all three have in common is

---


\(^2\) W. F. Albright, Archaeology and the Religion of Israel, p. 68.

\(^3\) See Archer, Encyclopedia of ..., p. 87.
that they walked by faith and pleased God. That faith is an example to us."¹

The husband of a former student of mine told me that his ancestors many generations ago were mainly believers. Several generations back, 11 of 12 children became Christians. The head of his branch of the family was the twelfth child, the only unbeliever in that generation of the family. As the years passed, those 11 believing children produced many other Christian descendants who became preachers, teachers, pastors, doctors, missionaries, and other godly people who became a blessing to multitudes of people. His unbelieving ancestor produced several alcoholics, criminals, and blights on society. My student's husband was the first person in five generations to become a Christian from that branch of his family. The family tree of Jonathan Edwards, like the "godly branch" of the family just described, also produced much good fruit.

There are many similarities between the Creation story and the Flood story.²

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>The First Beginning: Adam and Eve</th>
<th>The Second Beginning: Noah and His Family</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>God's Action</strong></td>
<td>God created Adam and Eve from the dust (2:7).</td>
<td>God saved Noah and his family from destruction (7:23).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>God's Provision</strong></td>
<td>God planted the Garden and gave Adam and Eve plants to eat (1:29-31; 2:8).</td>
<td>God saved animal species along with Noah and gave Noah and his family animals for food (6:17-22).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>God's Blessing</strong></td>
<td>Be fruitful and multiply; have dominion over all living things (1:28).</td>
<td>Be fruitful and multiply; all living things will be filled with fear and dread of you (9:1, 2).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>God's Covenant</strong></td>
<td>[You have great freedom, but if you disobey Me you will die (2:17).]</td>
<td>Never again will God destroy the earth with a flood; He will always provide the annual seasons (8:21, 22; 9:11).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

¹Waltke, *Genesis*, p. 155.
²The following chart is adapted from *The Nelson ...,* p. 18.
E. WHAT BECAME OF NOAH'S SONS 10:1—11:9

This section gives in some detail the distribution of Noah's descendants over the earth after the Flood (cf. 9:18-19). Part of God's plan to bring blessing to humankind involved dividing the human race by languages, territories, and nations.

This fourth toledot section (10:1—11:9) brings the inspired record of primeval events to a climax and provides a transition to the patriarchal narratives. All the nations of the world, in their various lands, with their different languages, descended from Shem, Ham, and Japheth. Of special interest to the original Israelite readers were the Canaanites and the other ancient Near Eastern powers.

"From this section we learn that the 'blessing' is for all peoples because all nations have their source in the one man, Noah, whom God favored. Moreover, the disunity among Noah's offspring that resulted from the tower event [11:1-9] did not prevent the blessing God had envisioned for humanity."¹

"The Tower of Babel incident (11:1-9), though following the table in the present literary arrangement, actually precedes chronologically the dispersal of the nations. This interspersal of narrative (11:1-9) separates the two genealogies of Shem (10:21-31; 11:10-26), paving the way for the particular linkage between the Terah (Abraham) clan and the Shemite lineage (11:27). The story of the tower also looks ahead by

¹Mathews, p. 427.
anticipating the role that Abram (12:1-3) will play in restoring the blessing to the dispersed nations."¹

1. **The table of nations ch. 10**

This table reinforces the fact that Yahweh created all peoples (cf. Deut. 32:8; Amos 9:7; Acts 17:26). Like the genealogy in chapter 5, this one traces 10 main entities, and the last one named in each case had three sons.

This chapter contains one of the oldest, if not the oldest, ethnological table in the literature of the ancient world. It reveals a remarkable understanding of the ethnic and linguistic situation following the Flood. Almost all the names in this chapter have been found in archaeological discoveries in the last century and a half. Many of them appear in subsequent books of the Old Testament.

"... the names in chapter 10 are presented in a dissimilar manner: the context may be that of an individual (e.g., Nimrod), a city (e.g., Asshur), a people (e.g., Jebusites) or a nation (e.g., Elam).

"A failure to appreciate this mixed arrangement of Genesis 10 has led, we believe, to numerous unwarranted conclusions. For example, it should not be assumed that all the descendants of any one of Noah's sons lived in the same locality, spoke the same language, or even belonged to a particular race."²

"The table of nations is a 'horizontal' genealogy rather than a 'vertical' one (those in chaps. 5 and 11 are vertical). Its purpose is not primarily to trace ancestry; instead it shows political, geographical, and ethnic affiliations among tribes for various reasons, most notable being holy war. Tribes shown to be 'kin' would be in league together. Thus this table aligns the predominant tribes in and around the land promised to Israel."

¹Ibid., p. 428.
²Barry J. Beitzel, *The Moody Atlas of Bible Lands*, p. 76. See pages 76-79 for discussion of each name in chapter 10. See also Wenham, *Genesis 1—15*, pp. 216-32; or The NET Bible notes on these verses.
These names include founders of tribes, clans, cities, and territories."\(^1\)

In contrast to the genealogy in chapter 5, this one lists no ages. It contains *place* and *group* names, which are spoken of as the antecedents of other places or groups, as well as the names of *individuals*. God built nations from families. Thus it is quite clearly a selective list, not comprehensive. The writer's choice of material shows that he had a particular interest in presenting Israel's neighbors. Israel would deal with, displace, or subjugate many of these peoples, as well as the Canaanites (ch. 9). They all had a common origin. Evidently 70 nations descended from Shem, Ham, and Japheth: 26 from Shem, 30 from Ham, and 14 from Japheth (cf. Deut. 32:8). Seventy became a traditional round number for a large group of descendants.\(^2\) Jacob's family also comprised 70 people (46:27), which may indicate that Moses viewed Israel as a microcosm of humanity, as he presented it here. God set the *microcosm* (Israel) apart to bless the *macrocosm* (all of humanity).

Japheth's descendants (vv. 2-5) settled north, east, and west of Ararat.\(^3\) Their distance from Israel probably explains the brief treatment that they received in this list, compared with that of the Hamites and Shemites. The "coastlands" (v. 5) are the inland areas and the northern Mediterranean coastlands on the now European shore, from Turkey to Spain. The dispersion of the nations "according to ... language" (v. 5) took place after Babel (ch. 11), all along these coasts, as well as elsewhere.

"The Akkadian, Assyrian, and Babylonian dialects constitute the older East Semitic branch of this family, while Hebrew, Aramaic, Phoenician, Syriac, Arabic, and Ethiopic are included in the West Semitic."\(^4\)

Ham's family (vv. 6-20) moved east, south, and southwest into Mesopotamia, Egypt, and Africa. Canaan's descendants (vv. 15-21) did not

---

\(^1\)Ross, "Genesis," p. 42.
\(^2\)Wenham, *Genesis 1—15*, p. 213.
\(^3\)For helpful diagrams showing the generational relationships of the descendants of Japheth, Ham, and Shem respectively, see Mathews, pp. 440, 444, and 459.
\(^4\)Finegan, p. 46.
migrate as far south, but settled in Palestine.¹ ("Palestine" [land of the "Philistines," who settled in "Philistia"] is a later name for the land of Canaan.)² The length of these Hamite Canaanite lists indicates the importance of these people and places in Israel's later history. Note the absence of the common sevens in the structuring in Canaan's genealogy, suggesting chaos.³

It is possible that Sargon of Agade, whom many secular historians regard as the first ruler of Babylon, may be the "Nimrod" (meaning "We Shall Rebel") of verses 8-10.⁴ Many people in ancient times had more than one name. His description as "a mighty one" (v. 8, Heb. *gibbor*) means a "tyrant" or "despot." He evidently was "a mighty hunter" (v. 9) of men, not beasts.⁵ Reference to him probably foreshadows 11:1-9, which describes what took place in Babylon. The Greeks connected the constellation Orion with Nimrod.⁶ A counterpart to Nimrod is the hero of the Babylonian flood tale: Gilgamesh.⁷

"The influx of the Amorites in Canaan is disputed. It does not necessarily follow that the original Amorites, attributed to Hamite descent in Genesis 10, were a Semitic people since the term 'Amorite' in ancient Near Eastern documents does not serve as a definitive source for designating ethnicity. Moreover, linguistic evidence does not always assure true ethnic derivation."⁸

---

²See Finegan, p. 135.
⁵Leupold, 1:367.
⁶See Hislop, pp. 13, 57.
Shem's posterity (vv. 21-31) settled mainly to the northeast and southeast of the Canaanites. This branch of the human family is also important in the Genesis record of Israel's history.

"According to Gen. x. 22, Shem had five sons, Elam, Asshur, Arphaxad, Lud, and Aram, whose descendants peopled and gave name to the following countries:—The descendants of Elam occupied the country called Elymais, between the Lower Tigris and the mountains of Iran; of Asshur, Assyria, lying to the north—the hilly country between the Tigris and the mountain range of Iran; of Arphaxad, the country of Arrapachitis on the Upper Tigris, on the eastern banks of that river, where the highlands of Armenia begin to descend. Lud, the father of the Lydians, is the representative of the Semites who went westward to Asia Minor; and Aram of the Semites who spread along the middle course of the Euphrates to the Tigris in the east, and to Syria in the west."1

"When the two lines of Shem are compared (10:21-31; 11:10-26), there is a striking divergence at the point of Eber's descendants, Peleg and Joktan [v. 25]. In chap. 10 Peleg is dropped altogether after his mention, while the nonelect line of Joktan is detailed. It is left to the second lineage in chap. 11 to trace out Peleg's role as ancestral father of Abraham "2

"Eber" (v. 21) is probably the origin of the name "Hebrew," a racial term by which the Israelites' neighbors referred to them. 3 "Israel" is a national term. Later, these names were used as synonyms.4

"This Table of Nations, then, traces affiliation of tribes to show relationships, based on some original physical connections. It is clear that the writer is emphasizing the development of these nations that were of primary importance to Israel (yalad

---

1C. F. Keil, Biblical Commentary on the Book of Daniel, p. 75.
2Mathews, p. 459.
4Yates, p. 15.
sections) within the overall structure of the Table (b'ne arrangement).”

"The three geographical arcs of the branches intersect at the center—that is, Canaan, Israel's future homeland.""2

This section reveals that it was God's plan to bless the human race by dividing the family of man by languages, locations, and leaders. God formerly blessed the earth by dividing the light from the darkness, the earth from the heavens, and the land from the seas (ch. 1). Some creationists believe that the division of the earth in Peleg's day (v. 25) refers to continental drift, but many creationists do not hold this view.3

"By correlating the number of nations [in ch. 10, i.e., 70] with the number of the seed of Abraham [in 46:27, i.e., 70], he [the writer] holds Abraham's 'seed' before the reader as a new humanity and Abraham himself as a kind of second Adam, the 'father of many nations' (Ge 17:5)."4

"... his intention is not to give an exhaustive list but rather a representative list, one which, for him, is obtained in the number seven."5

"The table's figure of 'seventy' for the world's nations is alluded to by Jesus in the sending forth of the seventy disciples, as recounted by Luke (10:1-16). Here the evangelist emphasizes the mission of the church in its worldwide evangelistic endeavors."6

---

4Sailhamer, The Pentateuch ..., p. 131.
5Ibid., p. 132.
6Mathews, p. 437. See also Umberto Cassuto, A Commentary on the Book of Genesis. Part II. From Noah to Abraham, pp. 175-80.
2. **The dispersion at Babel 11:1-9**

This pericope is a flashback that explains the division of the earth in Peleg's time ("in his days the earth was divided," 10:25). The main emphasis in this section is not the building of the tower of Babel, but the dispersion of the people. We can see this in the literary structure of the passage.¹

A All the earth had one language (v. 1)
   B there (v. 2)
   C one to another (v. 3)
   D Come, let's make bricks (v. 3)
   E Let's make for ourselves (v. 4)
   F a city and a tower
   G And the LORD came down to see (v. 5; cf. 8:1)
   F' the city and the tower (v. 5)
   E' that the humans built (v. 5)
   D' Come, let's confuse (v. 7)
   C' everyone the language of his neighbor (v. 7)
   B' from there (v. 8)
   A' (confused) the language of the whole earth (v. 9)

When the people of the world, united by a common language, attempted to preserve their unity, and to make a name for themselves by building a tower that would reach into heaven—hoping to achieve God-like power and authority—Yahweh frustrated their plan and scattered everyone over the face of the whole earth—by frustrating their ability to communicate in the language that bound them together.

---

"The tower of Babel story is the last great judgment that befell mankind in primeval times. Its place and function in Gen 1—11 may be compared to the fall in Gen 3 and the sons of God episode in Gen 6:1-4, both of which triggered divine judgments of great and enduring consequence."\(^1\)

This story explains to God's people how God scattered the nations and why. Sending judgment upon them for trying to establish a world order in opposition to divine rule (human government run amuck), God struck the thing that bound people together, namely, their common language. Chronologically, the Babel incident preceded the dispersal that Moses described with genealogies in chapter 10.

"By placing the Tower of Babel incident just prior to the patriarchal stories, the biblical writer is suggesting, in the first place, that post-Flood humanity is as iniquitous as pre-Flood humanity. Rather than sending something as devastating as a flood to annihilate mankind, however, God now places his hope in a covenant with Abraham as a powerful solution to humanity's sinfulness. Thus problem (ch. 11) and solution (ch. 12) are brought into immediate juxtaposition, and the forcefulness of this structural move would have been lost had ch. 10 intervened between the two."\(^2\)

"As it is presently situated in the text, the account of the founding of Babylon falls at the end of the list of fourteen names from the line of Joktan (10:26-29). At the end of the list of the ten names of Peleg's line, however, is the account of the call of Abraham (11:27—12:10). So two great lines of the descendants of Shem divide in the two sons of Eber (10:25). One ends in Babylon, the other in the Promised Land."\(^3\)

"By placing the narrative between two genealogies of 'Shem,' the author establishes a relationship between the central point of the narrative—'Let us make a name ['Shem'] for ourselves'..."
— and the central point of the patriarchal narratives—
'and God said, "I will make your name ["Shem"] great"
(12:2a). Thus the genealogies of 'Shem' provide a narrative
link between the story of the fall of Babylon (11:1-9) and the
account of the call of Abraham (12:1-3)."¹

One writer argued for the identification of the tower of Babel incident with
the demise and dispersion of the last great Sumerian dynasty centered at Ur.²

"Although no record of the attempted building of the tower at
Babel and the confusion of tongues has been found in
cuneiform literature [as of 1894], a tradition of such an event
was current outside of Israel, and was ascribed by the
transmitters of it to Babylonia."³

11:1-2 Some of the Hamites migrated "east" (v. 2, specifically
southeast) to the plain of Shinar (cf. 10:10). This was in the
Mesopotamian basin (modern Iraq). (Some translations have
them going from the east (e.g., ESV, NKJV, ESV, HCSV), but
the Hebrew text reads literally "and he was as to move them
to east and they found ...").

"The Hebrews used the name Shinar, originally a
region in northern Mesopotamia, to designate the
whole region of Mesopotamia."⁴

"In light of such intentional uses of the notion of
'eastward' within the Genesis narratives, we can
see that here too the author intentionally draws
the story of the founding of Babylon into the
larger scheme at work throughout the book. It is
a scheme that contrasts God's way of blessing
(e.g., Eden and the Promised Land) with man's
own attempt to find the 'good.' In the Genesis

³Davis, Genesis and ..., pp. 142-43.
⁴Yates, p. 15.
narratives, when man goes 'east,' he leaves the land of blessing (Eden and the Promised Land) and goes to a land where the greatest of his hopes will turn to ruin (Babylon and Sodom). ¹

"Following the Ararat departure, the people migrated southeast to the lower Euphrates valley. Genesis 1—11 then has come full circle from 'Eden' to 'Babel,' both remembered for the expulsion of their residents."²

11:3-4 The motivation for building "a city" (cf. 4:17, Cain's "city") with its "tower" was to make the builders "a name" (v. 4; i.e., to establish world domination, authority, and power in God's place; cf. Ps. 14:1). However, history has not preserved the name of a single one of Babel's builders.³ Later, God would make a "name" for Abram (12:2-3). The object of this endeavor was evidently to establish a center by which the builders might maintain their unity, achieve God-like authority, and gain world domination, with a one-world government.

"A defensive wall is the hallmark of a city (see 4:17). Cities in the ancient Near East were not designed to be lived in but were intended for religious and public purposes."⁴

God desired unity for humankind, but one that He created, not one founded on a social state.⁵ The builders wanted to "empower" themselves. Both motive and object were ungodly. God had instructed man to fill the earth (1:28), to spread over the whole planet.

The builders of the "tower" seem to have intended that it serve as a memorial or landmark, among other things. It was probably a ziggurat used for religious purposes.

---

¹Sailhamer, "Genesis," p. 104.
²Mathews, p. 467.
³Matthew Henry, p. 25.
⁴Waltke, Genesis, p. 179.
⁵Mathews, p. 473.
"Mesopotamian religion claimed that their cities were of divine parentage. A symbol of this obsession with divinity among the Mesopotamians was the ziggurat (Akk. *ziqqurratu*) that was erected as early as the third millennium B.C. The ziggurat was a step-ladder edifice, made up of mud bricks, whose bottom was square or rectangular. The precise meaning of the structure is unknown, though it is widely agreed that it formed a stairway between the gods and earth (cf. Gen 28:12). At the foot of the ziggurat as well as the pinnacle was a temple area serving as a habitation for the god. Ziggurats may have been considered an earthly imitation of the heavenly residence of the gods."

"A small pavement of rough limestone blocks at Uruk [also known as Erech and Warka, on the Euphrates River about midway between Babylon and the Persian Gulf] is the oldest stone construction in Mesopotamia, and here, too, is found the first ziggurat. The Assyrian-Babylonian word *ziqquratu* comes from the verb *zaqaru* meaning 'to be high, or raised up,' and hence signifies the top of a mountain, or a staged tower. Such a tower provided a sort of artificial mountain in the flat Mesopotamian plain as a high place for a god whose shrine stood on its summit. From its first appearance here at Uruk, it was ever afterward the most characteristic feature of temple architecture in Mesopotamia, and the locations of more than two dozen such structures are known today."

"The ziggurat which stood at Babylon in the days of Hammurabi and was known as Etemenanki, 'the House of the Terrace-platform of Heaven and Earth,' became more famous [than the ziggurat at

---

2Finegan, p. 23.
Ur] and was remembered in biblical tradition as the Tower of Babel, but the zuiggurat [sic ziggurat] at Ur is today the best preserved of all monuments of this type and therefore the best fitted to give a vivid impression of their character (Fig. 19).”¹

11:5-6 The builders undoubtedly expected to ascend to heaven to meet God. Instead, God descended to earth to meet them ("The LORD came down to see the city and the tower"), another anthropomorphism, here referring to God's omniscience. If God had allowed this project to continue, the results would have been even worse—and more serious—than they were at this time. The sin of the builders was their refusal to obey God-given directives.

"Depraved humanity are united in their spiritual endeavor to find, through technology, existential meaning apart from God and the means to transgress its boundaries. Unless God intervenes and divides them by confounding their speech, nothing can stop human beings in their overweening pride and their desire for autonomy."²

The construction of cities by itself was not sinful. God chose Jerusalem for His people, and He will create the New Jerusalem for believers to inhabit. It is the pride and security that people place in their cities—and their arrogant independence from Himself, the Most High God—that God disapproves.

The movement of humanity in our day is again, or still, to unite and so achieve security and independence apart from God. This will culminate, the Book of Revelation reveals, in a one-world government under the leadership of Antichrist. The present breaking down of racial, linguistic, and geo-political distinctions is evidence of this movement. From the human viewpoint, this unity seems good, but from the divine perspective, it is further

¹Finegan, p. 50.
²Waltke, Genesis, p. 182.
evidence of rebellion against God. He will judge it one day, when Jesus Christ returns to the earth to terminate Antichrist and to rule for 1,000 years (Rev. 19:11—20:6).

11:7 God's soliloquy ("Come, let Us go down ") in this verse mimics the language of the tower builders in verse 4 ("Come let's build"; cf. 1:26). The confusion of language probably involved more than just the introduction of new words, since the original single language produced the thousands that we have today.

"If language is the audible expression of emotions, conceptions, and thoughts of the mind, the cause of the confusion or division of the one human language into different national dialects might be sought in an effect produced upon the human mind, by which the original unity of emotion, conception, thought, and will was broken up. This inward unity had no doubt been already disturbed by sin, but the disturbance had not yet amounted to a perfect breach."¹

Some scholars believe that this judgment resulted in ethnic and racial distinctions in humankind eventually. They believe that the Table of Nations in chapter 10 may also imply this.²

"They [the rebellious builders] deserved death, but are only banished or transported; for the patience of God is very great towards a provoking world."³

11:8 The resultant confusion led to a scattering of the people "over the face of all the earth" (cf. v. 9). God did not allow human rebellion to reach the level that it did before the Flood. He forced people to do what they refused to do voluntarily, namely, scatter over the face of the earth. This is the third great judgment on sinful humanity in this first major section of

---

¹Keil and Delitzsch, 1:174-75.
²See Merrill, "The Peoples ....," p. 22.
³Matthew Henry, p. 25.
Genesis (chs. 1—11), the first two being Adam and Eve’s expulsion from Eden, and the second being the Flood.

Some interpreters take the confusion of languages to have been a local phenomenon only. One writer believed that lightning struck the tower of Babel, and the confusion of speech that followed resulted from a scrambling of the electrical circuits in the brains of those struck.¹ This is an interesting idea but impossible to prove or disprove. Most interpreters, however, regard this event as the source of the major language groups in the world today.

"It should be observed that the change of speech is not asserted to have been sudden, though it may have been; much less is it asserted that all differences observable in languages the world over, or even those characteristic differences which distinguish the great families of language, owe their origin to the confusion at Babel. The event at Babel must not be minimized, neither must it be exaggerated."²

11:9 "Babel" sounds like the Hebrew word for "confuse" (balal), and it means "the gate of gods" in Akkadian.

"... Gen 11:1-9, the tower of Babel story, is a satire on the claims of Babylon to be the center of civilization and its temple tower the gate of heaven (E[numa]E[lish] 6:50-80): Babel does not mean gate of God, but 'confusion' and 'folly.' Far from its temple's top reaching up to heaven, it is so low that God has to descend from heaven just to see it! (11:4-9)."³

This was the original "Babylon" (the Greek form of "Babel"), that forever afterward was the city most characterized in the Bible by rebellion against God’s authority, and the desire to

¹James E. Strickling, "The Tower of Babel and the Confusion of Tongues," Kronos (Fall 1982), pp. 53-62.
²Davis, Genesis and ..., p. 149.
³Wenham, Genesis 1—15, pp. xlviii-xlix.
earn salvation by works, idolatry, and self-assertion. It stands as a symbol of organized rebellion against God elsewhere in Scripture, and God will eventually destroy it (Rev. 17 and 18). The spirit of Babel is strong throughout the world today.¹

"Man certainly did not expect his project to take such a turn. He did not anticipate that the name he wanted to make for himself would refer to a place of noncommunication."²

The story of Babel is important for several reasons:

1. It explains the beginning of, and reason for, the various languages of mankind.

2. It probably explains the origin of the "races" within humankind.

"The separate language groups no longer could intermarry freely with the rest of mankind. As in-breeding and lack of access to the larger pool of genes occurred, ethnic characteristics developed. Furthermore, each local environment tended to favor selection of certain traits, and eliminate the others. Ethnic characteristics, such as skin color, arose from loss of genetic variability, not from origin of new genes through mutation as suggested by evolution.

"The concept of race is an evolutionary idea (Acts 17:26). All humans possess the same color, just different amounts of it. We all descended from Noah and Adam."³

"The Bible doesn't tell us what skin color our first parents had, but, from a design point of view, the 'middle [color]' makes a great beginning. Starting with medium-skinned parents (AaBb), it would take only one

---
²J. Ellul, The Meaning of the City, p. 18.
³A quotation for a plaque explaining an exhibit at the Institute for Creation Research Museum, Santee, Calif., which I observed on May 21, 1997.
generation to produce all the variation we see in human skin color today. In fact, this is the normal situation in India today. Some Indians are as dark as the darkest Africans, and some—perhaps a brother or sister in the same family—as light as the lightest Europeans. I once knew a family from India that included members with every major skin color you could see anywhere in the world.

"But now notice what happens if human groups were isolated after creation. If those with very dark skins (\textit{AABB}) migrate into the same areas and/or marry only those with very dark skins, then all their children will have very dark skins. (\textit{AABB} is the only possible combination of \textit{AB} egg and sperm cells, which are the only types that can be produced by \textit{AABB} parents.) Similarly, parents with very light skins (\textit{aabb}) can have only very light-skinned children, since they don't have any \textit{A} or \textit{B} genes to pass on. Even certain medium-skinned parents (\textit{AAbb} or \textit{aaBB}) can get 'locked-in' to having only medium-skinned children, like the Orientals, Polynesians, and some of my ancestors, the Native Americans.

"Where people with different skin colors get together again (as they do in the West Indies, for example), you find the full range of variation again—nothing less, but nothing more either, than what we started with. Clearly, all this is \textit{variation within kind}.

"What happened as the descendants of medium-skinned parents produced a variety of descendants? Evolution? Not at all. Except for albinism (the mutational loss of skin color), the human gene pool is no bigger and no different now than the gene pool present at creation. As people multiplied, the genetic variability \textit{built right into} the first created human beings came to visible expression. The darkest Nigerian and the lightest Norwegian, the tallest Watusi and the shortest Pygmy, the highest soprano and the lowest bass could have been present right from the beginning in two quite
average-looking people. Great variation in size, color, form, function, etc., would also be present in the two created ancestors of all the other kinds (plants and animals) as well.

"Evolutionists assume that all life started from one or a few chemically evolved life forms with an extremely small gene pool. For evolutionists, enlargement of the gene pool by selection of random mutations is a slow, tedious process that burdens each type with a 'genetic load' of harmful mutations and evolutionary leftovers. Creationists assume each created kind began with a large gene pool, designed to multiply and fill the earth with all its tremendous ecologic and geographic variety. (See Genesis, chapter 1.)"¹

"Many thinkers labor under the illusion that evolution is an empirical science when in fact it is a philosophy."²

"We can never have too big a conception of God, and the more scientific knowledge (in whatever field) advances, the greater becomes our idea of His vast and complicated wisdom."³

3. The Babel story demonstrates the inclination of fallen man to rebel against God, and to try to provide for his needs in his own way, rather than by trusting and obeying God.

4. It also illustrates that rebellion against God results in: (a) broken fellowship between God and man, and (b) failure to realize God's intention for man in His creation, namely, that he rule the earth effectively.

¹G. Parker, pp. 111, 113-14. See also Ham, et al., pp. 15-16, 131-55. And see ibid., pp. 19, 197-207, for discussion of how animals could have reached remote parts of the earth.


³J. B. Philips, Your God Is Too Small, p. 115.
5. Additionally, it provides the historical background for what follows in Genesis, since Abraham, the great patriarch and father of the Hebrews, came from Mesopotamia.

"Irony is seen in the beginning and the ending of this passage. The group at Babel began as the whole earth (11:1), but now they were spread over the whole earth (11:9). By this time the lesson is clarified: God's purpose will be accomplished in spite of the arrogance and defiance of man's own purposes. He brings down the proud, but exalts the faithful.

"The significance of this little story is great. It explains to God's people how the nations were scattered abroad. Yet the import goes much deeper. The fact that it was Babylon, the beginning of kingdoms under Nimrod from Cush, adds a rather ominous warning: Great nations cannot defy God and long survive. The new nation of Israel need only survey the many nations around her to perceive that God disperses and curses the rebellious, bringing utter confusion and antagonism among them. If Israel would obey and submit to God's will, then she would be the source of blessing to the world.

"Unfortunately, Israel also raised her head in pride and refused to obey the Lord God. Thus she too was scattered across the face of the earth."¹

F. WHAT BECAME OF SHEM 11:10-26

"The Babel account (11:1-9) is not the end of early Genesis. If it were, the story would conclude on the sad note of human failure. But as with earlier events in Genesis 1—11, God's grace once again supersedes human sin, insuring the continued possibilities of the promissory blessings (1:28; 9:1). The scaffolding of human pride would be dismantled by the erection of the Shemite line that culminates in obedient

Abraham, who likewise is found in the region of Shinar. Abraham would prove to be the nations' deliverance."¹

"Without the blessing of God the situation of humanity is without hope: that seems to be the chief thrust of the opening chapters of Genesis."²

In contrast to the genealogy in chapter 5, this one emphasizes life and expansion rather than death, even though longevity was declining.³ This genealogy starts with Noah's son Shem, whom God blessed, and it concludes with Abram, whom God purposed to bless. This is the line of Israel's ancestors. It is a "vertical" list, of the type used in the ancient Near East to document legitimate claims to thrones or inheritances.⁴ This genealogy, like the one in chapter 5, appears to be complete. But since other biblical genealogies have gaps in their lists, we may be suspicious that this one may as well.⁵ Note that the pattern Moses followed in this list is: X lived so many years and begat Y, and X lived so many more years and begat other children. This is the same pattern we find in chapter 5, except that there, the final notation is: X lived a total of so many years and died. The purpose of this genealogy in chapter 11 is to connect Abram to Noah, and to give background information essential for understanding the story of Abram that follows.⁶

"... the author's aim is to show that God's promise concerning the seed of the woman cannot be thwarted by the confusion and scattering of the nations at Babylon."⁷

"If the message of Genesis is essentially one of redemption, Gen 3—11 explains why man needs salvation and what he needs to be saved from. Chaps. 1—2, in describing the original state of the world, also describe the goal of redemption, to

---

¹Mathews, p. 487.
²Wenham, Genesis 1—15, p. li.
³For short histories of the pre-patriarchal period of ancient Near Eastern history, see John Bright, A History of Israel, pp. 17-37; Siegfried Schwantes, A Short History of the Ancient Near East.
⁴Ross, Creation and ..., p. 249.
⁵See Whitcomb and Morris, pp. 474-89, for discussion of Genesis 11 and the date of the Flood. They did not believe that this genealogy is complete.
⁶Mathews, p. 488, included a helpful chart of the 20 generations from Adam to Abram.
which ultimately the world and humanity will return when the patriarchal promises are completely fulfilled."¹

"An extensive statistical analysis of the life-spans of the patriarchs, as given in Genesis Chapter 5 and 11, shows that statistically the life-span can be considered constant before the Flood, while after the Flood the data can be fitted by an asymptotic exponential decay curve. Also, it is concluded that as for the life-spans reported in Genesis Chapter 11, the data in the Masoretic text are the authentic ones; those in the Septuagint have been tampered with. Moreover, it is statistically unlikely that there are gaps in the genealogies in Genesis Chapter 11."²

The genealogies in Genesis 11:10-26 and 1 Chronicles 1:17-27 are identical, but the one in Luke 3:34-36 inserts the name "Cainan" between Arpachshad and Shelah. The inclusion of "Cainan" may indicate that Luke used the Septuagint to compose his genealogy, since this name appears in this Greek translation, but not in the Hebrew Bible genealogies. Cainan appears elsewhere in Luke's list as Adam's great-grandson (Luke 3:37-38), so this may be a scribal error.³

Adam, Noah, and Abram all fathered three named sons, linking them as "saviors" of humanity. In Abram's case, these sons (descendants) were Isaac, Jacob, and Joseph.

The genealogy of Shem (11:10-26), in this pericope, prefaces the story of Abram (11:27—25:11). This structure serves as a prototype for the narrative that follows in Genesis. Similarly, the genealogy of Ishmael (25:12-18) introduces the story of Jacob and Esau (25:19—35:29), and the genealogy of Esau (36:1-43) introduces the story of Joseph (37:2—50:26).

"With 11:26 the scene has finally been set for the patriarchal history to unfold. The opening chapters of Genesis have provided us the fundamental insights for interpreting these

¹Wenham, Genesis 1—15, p. lii.
chapters properly. Gen 1 revealed the character of God and the nature of the world man finds himself in. Gen 2 and 3 portrayed the relationship between man and woman, and the effects man’s disobedience has had on man-woman and divine-humans relations. Chap. 5 sketched the long years that passed before the crisis of the great flood (chaps. 6—9), which almost destroyed all humanity for its sinfulness. The table of the nations (chap. 10) started the process of Israel's geographical and political self-definition with respect to the other nations in the world, but Gen 11:1-9 reminded us that the nations were in confusion and that mankind's proudest achievements were but folly in God's sight and under his judgment.

"However, according to 11:10-26, just five generations after Peleg, whose lifetime according to 10:25 saw the confusion of languages at Babel, Abram arrives. As 12:3 will declare, it is through him that all the families of the earth will be blessed. Man is not without hope. The brevity of this genealogy is a reminder that God's grace constantly exceeds his wrath. He may punish to the third or fourth generation but he shows mercy to thousands (Deut 5:9; 7:9).”¹

"Four key concepts presented in Genesis 1 through 11 are crucial for comprehending the rest of the Bible. First, the God who entered the lives of Abram and Sarai is the same God who created the entire universe. He is the only true and living God—Yahweh, the Creator and the Savior of the world. Second, all people have rebelled against God, their benevolent Creator, and His good will for them. Humanity has inherited a state of sinfulness from Adam and Eve’s rebellion in the Garden of Eden. Third, God judges and will judge the actions of all people. God, by sending the Flood, made it clear to Noah and to everyone that human wickedness is entirely unacceptable. God cannot let evil reign free in His creation. Fourth, sin continues to plague all of humanity—even after the Flood. Although the Flood did not wash away sin, God, as the second half of Genesis

¹Wenham, Genesis 1—15, pp. 253-54.
(chs. 12—50) reveals, has a plan to save humanity from its own evil deeds."¹

The chronological framework for the patriarchal stories (Abraham through Joseph) rests on two important texts:

1. 1 Kings 6:1 states that the Exodus took place 480 years before the fourth year of Solomon's reign (i.e., 967 B.C.). This makes the date of the Exodus close to, if not exactly, 1446 B.C.

2. Exodus 12:40 records that "the sons of Israel had lived in Egypt" 430 years before the Exodus, or from about 1876 B.C. This is the probable date when Jacob's family moved to Egypt (ch. 46).

From these two texts we can calculate other dates in the patriarchal period.²

The historicity of the patriarchs continues to be a matter of scholarly debate. The problem is the lack of explicit reference to the patriarchs in nonbiblical literature and in archaeology ("the scientific study of the material remains of the past").³ Scholars who reject the biblical testimony as unauthentic have been labeled "minimalists," and those who believe that the Hebrew Bible credibly supplements nonbiblical material are known as "maximalists." I am one of the latter, believing that the biblical records reliably testify to historical individuals and events recorded in this section of Genesis.⁴ One liberal scholar made the following admission:

"It is not because scholars of to-day begin with more conservative presuppositions than their predecessors that they have a much greater respect for the patriarchal stories

---

¹ The Nelson ..., pp. 1-2.
³ Finegan, p. 3.
⁴ For a good discussion of the historicity of the patriarchs and the authenticity of the patriarchal accounts, see Kenneth A. Mathews, Genesis 11:27—50:26, pp. 24-55; or Wolf, pp. 113-17.
than was formerly common, but because the evidence warrants it.\textsuperscript{1}

"It is beyond question that traditional and conservative views of biblical history, especially of the patriarchal period, will continue to be favored by whatever results accrue from ongoing Ebla research."\textsuperscript{2}

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Year</th>
<th>Event</th>
<th>Genesis Reference</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2296 B.C.</td>
<td>Birth of Terah</td>
<td>Gen. 11:24</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2166</td>
<td>Birth of Abram\textsuperscript{4}</td>
<td>Gen. 11:27</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2091</td>
<td>Abram’s departure from Haran</td>
<td>Gen. 12:4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2081</td>
<td>Abram’s marriage to Hagar</td>
<td>Gen. 16:3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2080</td>
<td>Birth of Ishmael</td>
<td>Gen. 16:16</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2067</td>
<td>Reaffirmation of covenant</td>
<td>Gen. 17:1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2067-66</td>
<td>Destruction of Sodom and Gomorrah</td>
<td>Gen. 19:24</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2066</td>
<td>Birth of Isaac</td>
<td>Gen. 21:2-3; cf. 21:5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2029</td>
<td>Death of Sarah</td>
<td>Gen. 23:2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2026</td>
<td>Marriage of Isaac</td>
<td>Gen. 25:20</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2006</td>
<td>Birth of Jacob and Esau</td>
<td>Gen. 25:26</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1991</td>
<td>Death of Abram</td>
<td>Gen. 25:7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1966</td>
<td>Marriage of Esau</td>
<td>Gen. 26:34</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\textsuperscript{1}H. H. Rowley, "Recent Discovery and the Patriarchal Age," in \textit{The Servant of the Lord and Other Essays on the Old Testament}, p. 318.


\textsuperscript{4}See Leon J. Wood, \textit{A Survey of Israel's History}, pp. 30-38.
1943  Death of Ishmael  Gen. 25:17
1930  Jacob’s journey to Haran  Gen. 28:2
1923  Jacob’s marriages  Gen. 29:23, 28; 30:4, 9
1918  Birth of Judah  Gen. 29:35
1916  End of Jacob’s 14 year labor for his wives  Gen. 29:30
1916  Birth of Joseph  Gen. 30:23
1910  End of Jacob’s stay with Laban  Gen. 31:41
1910  Jacob’s arrival at Shechem  Gen. 33:18
1902  Rape of Dinah  Gen. 34:1-2
1900  Marriage of Judah  Gen. 38:1-2
1899  Selling of Joseph  Gen. 37:2, 28
1888  Joseph imprisoned  Gen. 39:20; cf. 41:1
1886  Joseph released  Gen. 41:1, 46
1886  Death of Isaac  Gen. 35:28
1879  Beginning of famine  Gen. 41:54
1878  Brothers’ first visit to Egypt  Gen. 42:1-3
1877  Judah’s incest with Tamar  Gen. 38:18
1877  Brothers’ second visit to Egypt  Gen. 43:1, 15; 45:6, 11
1876  Jacob’s descent to Egypt  Gen. 46:6; cf. 47:9
1859  Death of Jacob  Gen. 47:28
1806  Death of Joseph  Gen. 50:22

II. PATRIARCHAL NARRATIVES 11:27—50:26

One of the significant changes in the emphasis that occurs at this point in Genesis, is from cursing, in the primeval record, to blessing, in the patriarchal narratives. The Abrahamic Covenant is most important in this
respect. How Abram's family gained and provided these blessings unfolds. Israel could, and we can, identify with their experiences.

"Chapters 1—11 are set in Babylonia; chs. 12—36 are set in Palestine; chs. 37—50 are set in Egypt. (The same kind of tripartite geographical focus emerges from Exodus: [1] 1:1—12:36, in Egypt; [2] 12:37—18:27, to Sinai; [3] 19:1—40:38, at Sinai.) In other words, each part of the Mediterranean world is highlighted in some part of Genesis. The crucial center section of Genesis (chs. 12—36) is bracketed geographically by two sections of the Near Eastern world with whose history that of Israel would be constantly interlocked.

"In chs. 1—11 we read of individuals who had land, but are either losing it or being expelled from it. In chs. 12—50 the emphasis is on individuals who do not have land, but are on the way toward it. One group is losing; another group is expecting.

"Genesis is moving us progressively from generation (chs. 1—2), to degeneration (chs. 3—11), to regeneration (chs. 12—50)."1

Chapters 1—11 present a structural pattern that continues in the rest of the Pentateuch.

"The importance of Genesis 1—11 for the rest of the Pentateuch can be seen in the fact that its narrative structure provides a pattern by which the author often shapes subsequent pentateuchal narratives. Thus the order and arrangement of the Creation accounts in Genesis 1—2 exhibit the same pattern as the description of the building of the tabernacle (Ex 25—31); the tabernacle is portrayed as a return to the Garden of Eden. The instructions given to Noah for building the ark foreshadow those given to Moses for building the tabernacle. Furthermore, one can demonstrate that whole sections of laws in the Pentateuch have been grouped and arranged in patterns that parallel the narrative structure of Genesis 1—11."2

1Hamilton, pp. 10, 11.
"The ancient oriental background to Gen 1—11 shows it to be concerned with rather different issues from those that tend to preoccupy modern readers. It is affirming the unity of God in the face of polytheism, his justice rather than his caprice, his power as opposed to his impotence, his concern for mankind rather than his exploitation. And whereas Mesopotamia clung to the wisdom of primeval man, Genesis records his sinful disobedience. Because as Christians we tend to assume these points in our theology, we often fail to recognize the striking originality of the message of Gen 1—11 and concentrate on subsidiary points that may well be of less moment."

Some notable changes take place in the second part of Genesis, though both parts begin with a creation initiated by the spoken word of God (1:1; 12:1). Instead of the genealogies being prominent and the stories secondary, as in chapters 1—11, the reverse becomes true now. God retreats further into the background of the events recorded, than was the case earlier, and there is corresponding emphasis on the personalities of the patriarchs. The promises to the patriarchs form the central theme of this section, especially those concerning descendants, land, and divine blessing. There also seems to be increasing depth in the moral awareness of the patriarchs as generation follows generation from Abram to Joseph.

A. What became of Terah 11:27—25:11

This is the sixth and central (and consequently the most important) of the 11 toledot sections in Genesis.

A major theme of the Pentateuch is the partial fulfillment of the promises to the patriarchs. The promises in Genesis 12:1-3 and 7 are the fountainhead from which the rest of the Pentateuch flows. Walter Kaiser labeled the three things promised Abram as "an heir, a heritage, and an inheritance." David Clines called them "posterity, relationship with God,

---

1 Wenham, Genesis 1—15, p. 1.
2 Ibid., p. 258. See also Mathews, Genesis 11:27—50:26, p. 25
3 See Gordon J. Wenham, Genesis 16—50, p. 169.
and land."1 J. Dwight Pentecost and Robert L. Saucy referred to them as "seed, blessing, and land."2

God progressively revealed more information about each of these promises. He gave more information about the land promise in 13:15, 17; 15:7-8, 18; 17:8; 24:7; 26:3-4 (plural "lands"); 28:4, 13; 35:12; 48:4; and 50:24.


"A line of successive representative sons of the patriarchs who were regarded as one with the whole group they represented matched the seminal idea already advocated in Genesis 3:15. Furthermore, in the concept of 'seed' were the two aspects of the seed as a future benefit and the seed as the present beneficiaries of God's temporal and spiritual gifts. Consequently, 'seed' was always a collective singular noun; never did it appear as a plural noun (e.g., as in 'sons'). Thereby the 'seed' was marked as a unit, yet with a flexibility of reference: now to the one person, now to the many descendants of that family. This interchange of reference with its implied corporate solidarity was more than a cultural phenomena [sic phenomena] or an accident of careless editing; it was part and parcel of its doctrinal intention."3

The promise of universal blessing recurs in 18:18; 22:18 (to Abraham); 26:4 (to Isaac); and 28:14 (to Jacob). God reiterated His purpose with additional detail to Abraham in 13:14-17; 17:1-21; and 22:15-18; to Isaac in 26:3-5, 24; and to Jacob in 28:13-15; and 35:9-12 (cf. 46:1-4).

"While this promissory triad of blessing, seed, and land is the thematic cord binding the Book of Genesis, we find that the counterthemes of fratricide, violence, uncreation, and

---

1David Clines, The Theme of the Pentateuch, pp. 29, 45-60.
2J. Dwight Pentecost, Things to Come, p. 72; Robert L. Saucy, The Case for Progressive Dispensationalism, p. 42.
3Kaiser, Toward an ..., pp. 88-89.
expulsion are the literary-theological foil for the promissory blessing."¹

Genesis 12—50 focuses on the promise of posterity (an heir, seed), though the other promises receive much attention. Exodus and Leviticus deal more with the promise of worldwide influence (relationship with God, heritage, blessing), and Numbers and Deuteronomy emphasize the promise of real estate (land, inheritance, and rest).

To provide these blessings, God had to overcome many obstacles. Each obstacle provided an opportunity for Abram to grow stronger in faith, and each one tested his faith (cf. James 1:2-4). Each episode in the Abraham narrative reveals something important about God's power and faithfulness. It should also teach the reader something about responding to God's promises in the midst of various difficulties. This is the plot of the Abraham narrative.

In Genesis 12—25, the problems of possessing the land and obtaining an heir dominate the story of Abram's life. How will Abram obtain the Promised Land? Who will be Abram's promised heir? How will Abram become the promised blessing of humanity? These are the great questions that the thoughtful reader continually asks as he or she reads the story of Abram. At least one of these questions is central in every incident in Abram's life that God has chosen to record in Genesis. These questions form the unifying theme of the Abram narrative.²

One writer called the form in which Moses revealed Abram's story an "obstacle story":

"Few literary techniques have enjoyed so universal and perennial a vogue as the obstacle story. It is found in ancient and modern literature from the Gilgamesh epic and the Odyssey to the Perils of Pauline and the latest novel. Its character is episodal in that it is not self-contained but finds

---

¹Mathews, Genesis 1—11:26, p. 59.
its *raison d'être* in its relation to the larger story or narrative of which it is a part. Its purpose is to arouse suspense and sustain interest by recounting episodes which threaten or retard the fulfillment of what the reader either suspects or hopes or knows to be the ending of the story."

Twelve crises arise as the story of Abram's life unfolds. Each of these must be overcome—and is overcome by God—who eventually does provide Abram's descendants. Each of these problems constituted a challenge to Abram's faith. Is God faithful and powerful enough to provide what He promised? In the end we can see that He is.

Each problem Abram encountered is typical of problems that every believer has to deal with in seeking to live by faith. Consequently each episode in Abram's life teaches us something about God's power and faithfulness—and should enable us to live by faith more consistently. Moses originally recorded these lessons for Israel's benefit, so that the Israelites would emulate Abram's faith. Abram was not without his flaws, and his failings prove as instructive as his successes, as is true of all biblical characters.

The following were the 12 obstacles that Abraham encountered in his faith journey:

1. Sarai was barren and incapable of producing an heir (11:30).
2. Abram had to leave the Promised Land, which God had told him he would inherit (12:10).
3. Abram's life was in danger in Egypt (12:11-20).
4. Abram's nephew (heir?) Lot separated from Abram over a land dispute (ch. 13).
5. Abram entered a war and could have died (14:1-16).
6. Abram's life was in danger from retaliation in the Promised Land (15:1).
7. God ruled Eliezer out as Abram's heir (15:2-3).

---

1Peter E. Ellis, *The Yahwist, the Bible’s First Theologian*, p. 136.
8. Hagar, pregnant with Abram's son (heir?), departed (16:6).
9. Abimelech threatened Sarai’s reputation and child (heir?) in Gerar (ch. 20).
10. Abram had two heirs (21:8-11).
11. God commanded Abram to slay his heir (ch. 22).
12. Abram could not find a proper wife for his heir (24:5).

"... the narrator has skillfully woven this material together in such a way as to involve the reader/listener in a drama of increasing tension between, on the one hand, the promise of Yahweh that Abram would have an heir and, indeed, would become the father of many nations, and, on the other, the threat to the fulfillment of this promise by a series of crises."¹

1. **Terah and Abram's obedience 11:27—12:9**

All that Moses wrote in this pericope (11:27—12:9) deals with Abram and his future in the Promised Land. Abram obeyed the LORD's command to relocate to a land that God would give to him and his descendants with the promise that he would become a blessing to the rest of the world. Abram's example of obedience is a model for all believers to forsake all else to obtain the promised blessings of God and to serve Him by becoming a blessing to others.

"Within the book of Genesis no section is more significant than 11:27—12:9."²

**Abram's ancestors 11:27-32**

"The function of this genealogy is not so much to connect Abraham with the preceding events, as the previous genealogies have done, but to provide the reader with the necessary background for understanding the events in the life of Abraham. The list includes eight names. All the individuals

---

²Wenham, *Genesis 1—15*, p. 281.
named are relevant for understanding the events of the following narrative except 'Iscah' (v. 29). The inclusion of this otherwise insignificant name in the list suggests that the author is seeking to achieve a specific number of names. Thus far in the Book of Genesis, the author has followed a pattern of listing ten names between important individuals in the narrative. In this short list only eight names are given, hence if we are expecting ten names, the number of individuals in this list appears to be short by two names. By listing only eight names, the author leaves the reader uncertain who the ninth and, more importantly, the tenth name will be. It is only as the narrative unfolds that the ninth and tenth names are shown to be the two sons of Abraham, 'Ishmael' (16:15) and 'Isaac' (21:3).

Abram evidently grew up in the city of "Ur [of the Chaldeans]." A few scholars believe that the "Ur" in view was located just east of Haran, near the top of the Fertile Crescent (cf. 24:4, 7, 10). However, most hold that it was the Ur in southern Mesopotamia. Since the Chaldeans later lived in southern Mesopotamia, this seems to be the correct site.

"By recounting Abraham's call from 'Ur of the Chaldeans,' the author aims to cast the patriarch as one who came out of Babylon."

Ur was an "ancient city of the early Sumerian kingdom, located about 125 miles from the present mouth of the Euphrates, 100 miles southeast of Babylon, 830 miles from Damascus, and 550 miles from Haran. It was the capital of Sumer." Ur is well known as an important center in the land of Sumer; it reached its zenith under the kings of the third dynasty of Ur, who around 2060-1950 B.C. revived for the last time the ancient cultural traditions of the Sumerians. [Abram was born about 2166 B.C.] The names of several of Abram's relatives are also the names of known cities: Terah Nahor Serug Haran

---

4 Yates, p. 16.
and Laban the *Aramean*, Jacob's father-in-law, was from the city *Haran* in *Paddan-aram*. All these are places around the river Balih in northern Mesopotamia. Haran and Nahor are often mentioned in the Mari documents of the eighteenth century B.C., and cities named Tell-terah and Serug are known from later Assyrian sources.¹

"In the ruins of Ur at about this time [2070-2060 B.C.] there are some twenty houses per acre. Assuming six to ten persons per house, there were 120 to 200 people per acre, the average figure of 160 being exactly the same as the population density of modern Damascus [in 1959]. Ur covered 150 acres, and it may therefore be estimated that the population was approximately 24,000 inhabitants."²

"If Abraham did come from Mesopotamia sometime in the early second millennium B.C., it is necessary to revise the picture

---

²Finegan, p. 52.
sometimes painted of him as a primitive nomad accustomed only to open spaces of the desert, and to recognize that at least to some extent he must have been the heir of a complex and age-old civilization."\(^1\)

A later writer may have added the reference to "the Chaldeans" in verse 28, since the Chaldeans did not enter Babylonia until about 1,000 B.C.\(^2\) Another possibility is that there were some people knowns as Chaldeans who lived in this region when Moses wrote Genesis.

"The movement between Ur and Haran becomes easy to understand when we recall that Ur was the greatest commercial capital that the world had yet seen ..."\(^3\)

"Numerous texts from archaeological research show that travel of this kind was not uncommon for the time."\(^4\)

"There was no serious language barrier anywhere in the Fertile Crescent [in the time of the patriarchs], since West Semitic was understood everywhere and the related Accadian of Babylonia was the lingua franca, the tongue of diplomacy and business. Moreover, political and cultural ties between Egypt and Palestine continued to be close, and Egyptian was understood in all important Palestinian centres, while West Semitic was spoken in many parts of northern Egypt."\(^5\)

God first called Abram to leave his home when the patriarch still lived in Ur (12:1-3; cf. 15:7; Neh. 9:7; Acts 7:2). Abram left a cultured community in Ur, not to better his life, but to obey God. Canaan at this time was what could be called "uncivilized."

"Election is one of the central realities of the Old Testament; even though it is less frequently mentioned than the covenant it is however the initial act by which Yahweh comes into

---

\(^1\)Ibid., p. 73.
\(^2\)Wenham, Genesis 1—15, p. 272; Mathews, 11:27—50:26, p. 100.
\(^4\)Wood, A Survey ..., p. 29.
\(^5\)Albright, The Archaeology ..., pp. 204-5.
relation with his people and the permanent reality which assures the constancy of that bond. Every intervention by God in history is an election: either when he chooses a place in which to make more especial manifestation of his presence, or when he chooses a people to carry out his intention, or when he chooses a man to be his representative or his messenger, the Old Testament God is the one who has universal sovereignty at his disposal, and shows it by the free use that he makes of it."¹

Abram's family members were polytheists (Josh. 24:2).

"Several of Abram's relations have names that suggest adherence to lunar worship (cf. Sarah, Milcah, Laban), a cult that was prominent in Ur and Harran [sic Haran]."²

Abram married his half-sister, Sarai, which was not contrary to God's will at this early time in history (cf. Lev. 18:9; 20:17; Deut. 27:22). Indeed, the marriage of brothers to sisters was a necessity for a time, since the human race descended from one pair of individuals (cf. 4:17). Endogamy is the practice of marrying within a family group. Abraham's wife was barren (v. 30).

"We find that in Abraham's society a husband could rather easily divorce his wife—but not if the marriage had produced children. This last insight, in light of Sarah's barrenness, adds another dimension to our appreciation of Abraham's faithfulness."³

God's call was pure grace; there is no evidence in this text, or elsewhere in Scripture, that God chose Abram because he merited favor. God was beginning to form a family of faithful followers for Himself. He called Abram to leave this urban center in trust and obedience. Abram's exodus from his homeland, and Israel's Exodus from Egypt, were two key events in the formation of national Israel.

---

¹Jacob, p. 201.
²Wenham, Genesis 1—15, p. 252. Cf. Josh. 24:2. See also Livingston, pp. 103-34, for a survey of religious practices in the ancient Near East.
"Likely the son [Abram] persuaded the father [Terah] to accompany him, and the father, then, according to patriarchal propriety, became the official leader of the party."\(^1\)

"It appears that Terah, for his own reasons, decided to move from Ur to Canaan. He began the journey with several members of his family. However, they went to Haran, where Terah died. This was the first step of the journey of Abram and Sarai to the land of promise."\(^2\)

Abram's family stayed in Haran for some time (vv. 31-32), possibly because Terah was very old and in poor health. Another explanation follows:

"The difference between Terah and Abraham was one thing only: a response of faith to God's call."\(^3\)

"It is thus that a father can muffle his son's call, impede his progress in the work of God, or, by his caution and unbelief, hold back the outworking of a divine plan in his son's life. Terah seems, as we peer back through history, to have been a man not without vision, not lacking a desire to abandon an inadequate life, or a corrupt environment, but for lack of bravery or conviction, to have fallen short of the best, and held his family back with him."\(^4\)

When the patriarch Terah died, being 205 years old (v. 32), Abram continued his trek toward Canaan in obedience to God's call.

"Like Nuzi, Haran was also part of the Hurrian Mitanni Empire whilst the Hurrians were at the height of their power, so that the tablets discovered at Nuzi would also reflect the way of life in Haran. In this manner, scholars have ascertained from a careful study of the Nuzi tablets that they are very helpful in explaining many of the Biblical episodes relating to the Patriarchs, which had hitherto been somewhat puzzling.

---

\(^1\)Wood, *A Survey ...*, p. 43.
\(^2\) *The Nelson ...*, p. 25.
"Although the Bible indicates that Abram eventually left Haran (Genesis 12:4), the Patriarchs nevertheless kept in close contact with that city. Abram sent his servant back to Aram-naharaim, the region in which Haran was situated, in order to find a wife for his son Isaac (Genesis 24:2-10). Isaac later told his younger son Jacob to flee to his uncle Laban in Haran, in order to escape the wrath of his brother Esau, whom he had tricked out of his birthright blessing (Genesis 27:43). Jacob indeed fled to Haran, subsequently marrying there his cousins Leah and Rachel (Genesis 29:1-30).

"The influence of Hurrian society on the Patriarchs was undoubtedly very strong, not only because of the origins of Abram in Mesopotamia, but also because all the Patriarchs maintained contact with the area. This is borne out by the fact that many of the incidents in the Biblical narratives relating to the Patriarchs in reality reflect Hurrian social and legal customs, and prove beyond reasonable doubt that the Patriarchal way of life had its roots in Hurrian society."¹

Archaeologists have dated the Nuzi tablets four or five hundred years after the patriarchs, but they reflect customs that had been prevalent for centuries.² We should be careful not to overemphasize the influence of Hurrian civilization, however.³

"In this period (the first part of the Middle Bronze Age [ca. 2000-1750 B.C.]) Palestine was receiving an infusion of population as semi-nomadic groups infiltrated the land .... That these newcomers were 'Amorites,' of the same Northwest-Semitic stock as those whom we have met in Mesopotamia, can scarcely be doubted. Their names, so far as these are known, point unanimously in that direction. Their mode of life is splendidly illustrated by the Tale of Sinuhe, but especially by the stories of Genesis—for it is difficult to escape the conclusion that the migration of Israel's ancestors was a part

³Ephraim Speiser did this in his commentary on Genesis.
of this very movement. These people brought to Palestine no fundamental ethnic change, for they were of the same general Northwest-Semitic stock as were the Canaanites."¹

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MAJOR HISTORICAL PERIODS OF THE PROMISED LAND²</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Stone (Neolithic) Age to ca. 4000 BC (?)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Copper (Chalcolithic) Age ca. 4000-3150 BC (?)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Early Bronze Age I 3150-2850 BC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Early Bronze Age II 2850-2650 BC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Early Bronze Age III 2650-2350 BC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Early Bronze Age IV 2350-2200 BC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Middle Bronze Age I 2200-2000 BC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Middle Bronze Age IIA 2000-1750 BC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Middle Bronze Age IIB 1750-1630 BC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Middle Bronze Age IIC 1630-1550 BC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Late Bronze Age I 1550-1400 BC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Late Bronze Age IIA 1400-1300 BC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Late Bronze Age IIB 1300-1200 BC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Iron Age I 1200-1000 BC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Iron Age II 1000-586 BC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Babylonian/Persian Period 586-332 BC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hellenistic Period I (Ptolemaic and Seleucid) 332-152 BC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hellenistic Period II (Hasmonean) 152-37 BC</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

¹Bright, pp. 48-49. Paragraph division omitted. See also Finegan, pp. 139-50.
²See also the "Chronological Table" in Archaeology, 2 pages before p. 1; and Jerome Murphy-O'Connor, The Holy Land, pp. 1-7 for descriptions of the major periods.
The divine promises 12:1-9

"These verses are of fundamental importance for the theology of Genesis, for they serve to bind together the primeval history and the later patriarchal history and look beyond it to the subsequent history of the nation."¹

"Whereas chapters 1—11 generally portray man’s rebellion, chapters 12—50 detail God's bringing man into a place of blessing."²

"... this is the central passage of the Book of Genesis."³

God’s revelation to Abram in these verses explains why his family left Ur (11:31).

"... by placing the call of Abraham after the dispersion of the nations at Babylon (11:1-9), the author intends to picture Abraham's call as God's gift of salvation in the midst of judgment."⁴

¹Wenham, *Genesis 1—15*, p. 274.
²Ross, "Genesis," p. 25.
³Ibid., p. 47.
⁴Sailhamer, *The Pentateuch* ..., p. 139.
"The primeval history thus explains the significance of the patriarchal story: though apparently of little consequence in the world of their day, the patriarchs are in fact men through whom the world will be redeemed. The God who revealed himself to them was no mere tribal deity but the creator of the whole universe."\(^1\)

William Newell condensed God's revelations of Himself to Abram as follows:

"The progressive revelation of God to Abraham (Revised Version best): (a) As the LORD (Jehovah, His name as in covenant with His people), 12:1, 8; 13:4, 18. (b) God Most High (El Elyon, Creator—God Over and Owning All), 14:18-22. (c) Shield and Exceeding Great Reward, 15:1. (d) The Almighty God (El Shaddai), 17:1. (e) The Righteous Judge, 18:25. (f) The Everlasting God, 21:33. (g) The God of Providence (Jehovah Jireh), 22:14."\(^2\)

The fourth dispensation, the dispensation of Promise, extended from Abram's call to the giving of the Mosaic Law at Mt. Sinai (Exod. 19—24). Man's stewardship rested on God's promises to Abram, which appear first in 12:1-3, but receive confirmation and enlargement in: 13:14-17; 15:1-7; 17:1-8, 15-19; 22:16-18; 26:2-5, 24; 28:13-15; 31:13; and 35:9-12. Individual blessing depended on individual obedience (12:1; 22:18; 26:5). God unconditionally promised blessing through Abram's descendants to the nation of Israel (12:2; 15:18-21; 17:7-8), to the church through Christ (Gal. 3:16, 28-29), and to the Gentile nations (12:3). Individuals (e.g., Pharaoh, 12:17; Abimelech, 20:3, 17) and nations (e.g., Egypt, chs. 47—50; Exod. 1—15) that proved favorable toward Abram's seed would experience divine blessing, but those that proved hostile would experience divine cursing (12:3; cf. Matt. 25:31-46).

Christians are called upon to trust God as Abram did, and so enter into the spiritual blessings of the Abrahamic Covenant—which covenant inaugurated the dispensation of Promise (Rom. 4:11, 16, 23-25; Gal. 3:6-9). God's promises to Abram and his descendants did not end with the giving of the Mosaic Law (Gal. 3:17; cf. Exod. 32:13; 33:1-3; Lev. 23:10; 25:2; 26:6; Deut. 6:1-23; 8:1-18; Josh. 1:2, 11; 24:13; Acts 7:17; Rom.

---

\(^1\)Wenham, Genesis 1—15, pp. li-lii.
\(^2\)Newell, p. 74.
9:4). However, as a test of Israel's stewardship of divine truth, the dispensation of promise was superseded, not annulled, by the dispensation of Law (Exod. 19:3-8). As the Apostle Paul put it, the Mosaic Law "was added [to the promises given to Abram] on account of the violations [of God's holiness], having been ordered through angels at the hand of a mediator [Moses], until the Seed would come to whom the promise had been made [i.e. Christ]" (Gal. 3:19).

**God's word 12:1-3**

12:1 This section begins with a waw disjunctive in the Hebrew text, translated "Now" in several English translations. It introduces an independent circumstantial clause (cf. 1:2). Probably the revelation in view happened in Ur. The NIV, TNIV, AV, and NKJV capture this with the translation "The Lord had said to Abram." So the beginning of chapter 12 flashes back to something that happened in Ur, even though chapter 11 ends with Abram in Haran. Stephen's statement in Acts 7:2 supports this interpretation. Stephen quoted the Septuagint translation of this verse in Acts 7:2-3: "The God of glory appeared to our father Abraham when he was in Mesopotamia, before he lived in Haran, and He said to him, 'Go from your country and your relatives, and come to the land which I will show you.'"

"The name Yahweh, translated as LORD, is not explained until Ex. 3:14, 15. But the readers of Genesis needed to know that the one who spoke to Abram is the same Yahweh who later would form the nation of Israel and who had created all things (2:4) [and had called the Israelites out of Egypt to a new land]."¹

"Throughout the entire story one must always remember that to leave home and to break ancestral bonds was to expect of ancient men almost the impossible."²

---

¹ *The Nelson ...*, p. 25.
The focus of God’s command was that Abram should uproot himself, and follow His leading. God called him to leave three things, which were progressively more difficult: his "country," his family ("relatives"), and his "father's house." His country was his home region, his family was his clan, and his father’s house was his branch of his clan. In Abram’s world such a move was unheard of.

"Only the poverty-stricken or the defeated would wander; only the landless and the fugitive would move about and leave their ancestral homes."\(^1\)

"It has been well remarked that the very essence of the history of Israel is in the words, 'Get thee out!' [AV]\(^2\)

"One detail we do need to note here is the conditional element in the covenant program with Abram. It was not until after the death of his father (Gen. 11:32) that Abram began to realize anything of the promise God had given to him, for only after his father’s death did God take him into the land (12:4) and there reaffirm the original promise to him (12:7).

"It is important, therefore, to observe the relationship of obedience to this covenant program. Whether or not God would institute a covenant program with Abram depended on Abram's act of obedience in leaving the land. Once this act was accomplished, however, and Abram did obey God, God instituted an irrevocable, unconditional program."\(^3\)

"... in what sense is the Abrahamic covenant unconditional? The point here, which has often been misunderstood, is that while the fulfillment

---

\(^1\) The Nelson ..., p. 25.
\(^2\) William Barclay, The Letters to the Corinthians, p. 246.
\(^3\) Pentecost, Thy Kingdom ..., p. 60. See also Robert B. Chisholm Jr., "Evidence from Genesis," in A Case for Premillennialism: A New Consensus, p. 54.
of any particular generation of Israel depended on obedience to God, the ultimate possession of the land is promised unconditionally to Israel even though she does not deserve it. Scripture prophesies that a godly remnant of Israel will be the ultimate possessors of the land at the second coming (Ezek. 20:33-38).”

Since God does not normally speak audibly to people today, how can we know that God is leading us to make a move? Charles Swindoll offered these possibilities:

"God may be moving you to change if you have been experiencing any of these things: An increasing uneasiness with your current situation. ... A heightening curiosity regarding a new challenge. ... A decreasing attachment to creature comforts and tangible securities. ... A growing desire to obey God at all costs, even when you can't explain it. ... An inability to turn the thought off. ..."

12:2-3 Abram had only a promise from God, which was also a prophecy. We see Abram's faith in his willingness to obey God—based solely on the confidence that God would perform what He had promised (Heb. 11:8). This divine promise, along with the promise in verse 7, was the seed or heart of the Abrahamic Covenant, which God made shortly thereafter with Abram (ch. 15). The promise at this point included few details; it was only a general promise of descendants (v. 2) and influence (vv. 2-3). The Hebrew text says, "be a blessing" (v. 2), not "you shall be a blessing" (v. 2). This was a command, as well as a prediction ("I will bless you," v. 2). Not only would God bless Abram, but he would become a blessing to "all the families of the earth" (v. 3). God would make his life more rich and powerful, and he would enrich the lives of others.

---

2 Charles R. Swindoll, The Swindoll Study Bible, p. 23. I have omitted his explanations between his points and his italics.
"The missionary mandate of the church does not begin with John 3:16 or Matthew 28:18-20. It begins with God's covenant with Abraham. We are blessed that we might be a blessing."¹

There are seven elements in this promise—seven—suggesting fullness and completeness (cf. 2:2-3): (1) God promised to create "a great nation" through Abram. (2) God promised to "bless" Abram. (3) Abram's "name" would live on after his lifetime ("I will make your name great"). (4) Abram was (commanded) to "be a blessing" to others. (5) God would "bless those who bless[ed]" Abram. (6) And God would "curse those who curs[ed]" Abram. (7) "All the families of the earth [would] be blessed" through Abram and his descendants.

"The promises that this glorious God gave to Abram fall into three categories (Gen. 12:2-3). First there were personal promises given to Abram. God said, 'I will bless you; I will make your name great.' Then there were national promises given to this childless man. 'I will make you into a great nation.' And finally there were universal promises that were to come through Abram. 'You will be a blessing and all peoples on earth will be blessed through you.'"²

"Five times in vv 2-3 Abraham is said to be 'blessed' or a 'blessing' to others. This harks back to the first great blessing of mankind at creation (1:28) and its renewal after the flood (9:1). Moreover, Abraham is to become 'a great nation,' comparable presumably to the seventy nations listed in Gen 10. His name will also be 'great,' whereas the men of Babel who tried to make themselves 'a name' were frustrated (11:4-9)."³

¹Wiersbe, p. 69.
³Wenham, Genesis 1—15, p. 282.

The Hebrew words translated "curse" in verse 3 are significant. The word \textit{qll} in "the one who curses you" really means "disdains," but the word \textit{’rr} in "I will curse" means "curse." Even just \textit{disdain} for Abraham would provoke God's judgment.

"Why is there suffering in the world? One answer is that some people and nations have chosen not to bless Abraham and his descendants."\footnote{Bramer, p. 92.}

God's ultimate purpose was to bless "all the families of the earth" through Abram and his seed.\footnote{William J. Dumbrell, \textit{Covenant and Creation}, p. 65, explained how the Hebrew construction of verses 1-3 makes this evident. See Mathews, \textit{Genesis 11:27—50:26}, pp. 72-80, for proof that the theme of the patriarchal narratives is blessing. He listed as major motifs (recurring key words or ideas) in these stories: sibling rivalry, deception, and alienation/separation.} Abram's call and obedient response form a foundation for all that follows concerning him, his immediate descendants, and his later descendants. When God called Abram, He took a new approach to blessing the human race. These verses constitute a programmatic statement, a statement that lays out God's program concerning the future.

"Any promise God gives must be appropriated by faith."\footnote{Pentecost, \textit{Thy Kingdom ...}, pp. 51-52.}

"The remarkable thing about Abraham was his deep, unwavering faith."\footnote{Davis, \textit{Paradise to ...}, p. 168.}

The amillennial interpretation of this promise is that it "does not pertain today to unbelieving, ethnic 'Israel' (see Rom. 9:6-8; Gal. 3:15) but to Jesus Christ and his church (see 12:7; 13:16 and notes; Gal. 3:16, 26-29; 6:16)."\footnote{Waltke, \textit{Genesis}, p. 206.}
interpretation applies the promise to the *spiritual* seed of Abraham (Christians), but not to the physical seed (Jews). However, there is no reason for accepting this more obscure explanation. Abraham understood the promise as applying to his physical descendants, and later revelation encourages us to understand it this way too. This prophecy has been partially fulfilled, and it will be entirely fulfilled, literally.


<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Abraham</th>
<th>Isaac</th>
<th>Jacob</th>
<th>Joseph</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Gen. 12:7</td>
<td>Gen. 26:24</td>
<td>Gen. 31:3</td>
<td>Gen. 37:9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen. 13:14-17</td>
<td></td>
<td>Gen. 31:11-13</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen. 15</td>
<td></td>
<td>Gen. 32:24-29</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen. 17:1-21</td>
<td></td>
<td>Gen. 35:1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen. 18</td>
<td></td>
<td>Gen. 35:9-12</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen. 21:12-13</td>
<td></td>
<td>Gen. 46:2-4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen. 22:1-2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen. 22:15-18</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Revelations to the Patriarchs**

**Abram's response 12:4-9**

12:4 Since Lot voluntarily chose to accompany Abram, he probably believed the promises as well (cf. Ruth). Abram's call had been to separate from his *pagan* relatives, so he was not disobedient by allowing Lot to accompany him.¹ Not only Lot, but Sarai and

¹See ibid., p. 207.
"the people which they had acquired in Haran" went with Abram (v. 5).


"Since Mesopotamian law-codes allowed for the adoption of an heir in the case of childlessness, this becomes an attractive hypothesis with respect to Lot."\(^1\)

Abram lived 75 years with his father, then 25 years without his father or his son, and then 75 more years with his son, Isaac.

12:5-6 Abram's first settlement was in Shechem, about 40 miles north of Jerusalem.

"... towns on the main caravan route southwestward from the Euphrates which figure significantly in the Abram stories, are Shechem, Bethel, Hebron, and Gerar."\(^2\)

Shechem became sacred to the Israelites, because it was here that God revealed Himself to Abram—for the first time—in the Promised Land. This was God's second major revelation to Abram. At Shechem, Jacob later bought land, set up his home, and buried his idols in rededication to Yahweh—after returning from his sojourn in Paddan-aram (33:18-20; 35:4). Here, too, the Israelites assembled twice when they had taken possession of Canaan under Joshua's leadership, to commemorate God's faithfulness in giving them the land He had promised their forefathers (Josh. 8; 24). Shechem was near the geographic center of Canaan (cf. Josh. 20:7). It lay in the heart of the land God now promised Abram.\(^3\) "Moreh" (v. 6) means "teacher," so "the oak of Moreh" may have been a pagan site for oracles.

---

\(^1\) Helyer, p. 82.
\(^2\) Albright, "Abram the ...," p. 47.
\(^3\) See Finegan, pp. 183-84.
"Here Abraham began symbolically taking possession of the land that would one day be the territory of the Great Teacher and His instruction."¹

The reference to the Canaanites' presence in the land prepares the reader for incidents of conflict, with these native inhabitants, that followed in Israel's history (cf. 10:15-19). It also denotes a barrier to the fulfillment of God's promise, to give Abram and his heirs the land (v. 7). Abram could not take possession of the Promised Land immediately, because the Canaanites occupied it.

12:7 In response to God's promise to give Abram the land where he stood ("this land"), the patriarch "built an altar" and worshipped Yahweh. This was Abram's characteristic response
to God's grace. Abram's altars were more permanent structures than his tents. He continued living as a pilgrim and stranger in a land that he did not yet possess (Heb. 11:9-10).

"They [the Jews] have never really occupied the land God gave to them. At the zenith of their power, they occupied 30,000 square miles, but that is not all that God gave them. Actually, He gave them 300,000 square miles. They have a long way to go, but they will have to get it on God's terms and in God's appointed time."\(^1\)

Critics of the historicity of the patriarchal narratives have tried to prove that the religion of the patriarchs differed greatly from Mosaic orthodoxy—and even Christian norms. While there was some difference, there is no solid evidence that the patriarchs worshipped a different God than subsequent Israelites worshipped.\(^2\) Of course, the Israelites also worshipped idols.

12:8 Abram proceeded south, and encamped ("pitched his tent") between Bethel and Ai (lit. "Ruin," probably "et Tell")\(^3\), about 10 miles north of Salem (Jerusalem). Again he "built an altar" to worship Yahweh, and "called upon the name of the LORD" in worship.

12:9 Abram next continued south "toward the Negev" (lit. "dry," a transliteration of the Hebrew word for "south"), perhaps because of a shortage of food for his grazing animals (v. 10).

Many years later the nation of Israel, in Moses' day, shared the same call that God had extended to Abram. She was to leave her place of residence, Egypt, and go to a Promised Land—to worship and serve God there with the promise of blessing. This required faith. Believers today have a similar

\(^1\)McGee, 1:57.
calling. They who walk by faith will forsake much to become part of God's program to bless the world.

"Departure from securities is the only way out of barrenness."  

2. Abram in Egypt 12:10-20

The second crisis Abram faced arose because of a famine in Canaan. Abram chose to live temporarily in the Nile Valley until the famine ended. In this incident, Abram misrepresented Sarai because he feared for his life ("they will kill me," v. 12). By doing so, he jeopardized his blessing, for he lost his wife temporarily to Pharaoh ("the woman was taken into Pharaoh's house," v. 15). However, Yahweh intervened to deliver Abram and Sarai from Egypt.

"God knows what kind of faith we have, but we don't know; and the only way to advance in the 'school of faith' is to take examinations. Like Abraham, as you progress in the 'school of faith,' you will face three special tests: circumstances (Gen. 12:10), people (12:11-13:4), and things (13:5-18)."

"The account of Abraham's 'sojourn' in Egypt bears the stamp of having been intentionally shaped to parallel the later account of God's deliverance of Israel from Egypt (Gen 41—Exod 12). Both passages have a similar message as well. Thus, here, at the beginning of the narratives dealing with Abraham and his seed, we find an anticipation of the events that will occur at the end. Behind the pattern stands a faithful, loving God. What he has done with Abraham, he will do for his people today and tomorrow."  

Though Bible students debate the point, I believe Abram rushed ahead of God—by going to Egypt without a divine revelation that he should do so. God blessed Abram in Egypt, ironically mainly because of Sarai, in spite of Abram's lack of faith, and then returned him to the Promised Land.

---

1Brueggemann, Genesis, p. 118.
3Wiersbe, p. 71. Paragraph division omitted.
4Sailhamer, "Genesis," pp. 116-17.
5See Waltke, Genesis, p. 213; McGee, 1:59; Wiersbe, pp. 72-73; Blaiklock, pp. 20-21. For the view that Abram did not do wrong in going to Egypt, see Kidner, pp. 115-16.
Nevertheless, what Abram acquired in Egypt (great wealth and Hagar) proved to be problems later. Another severe famine (v. 10) even later encouraged Jacob and his family to sojourn in Egypt (47:4), but God gave Jacob permission to go (46:2-4). It was evidently fear rather than faith that made Abram leave the Promised Land.

"Throughout Gen. 12—50 Egypt is a symbol of safety and provision for the patriarchs and their families. If anything, Egypt is the oppressed in Genesis. Note that it is Sarai who 'dealt harshly' with her Egyptian maidservant, forcing her 'to flee' (16:6). Later she urges her husband to 'cast out' this Egyptian."¹

Some commentators have concluded that in dealing with Sarai as he did, Abram was relying on a custom of the land from which he had come (Babylonia) to protect him. They suggest that this custom was evidently unknown in Egypt. Because he failed to perceive this, Abram got into trouble.

"The thrice repeated story [involving Abraham in 12:10-20 and 20:1-18, and Isaac in 26:6-12] has been the subject of much discussion by commentators through the ages, but only with the discoveries at Nuzi has it become clear that Abraham and Isaac were not involved in any trickery, but were endeavoring to protect their respective wives from molestation by invoking the Hurrian custom or law of wife-sistership. According to the Nuzi tablets a woman having the status of wife-sister rather than that of just an ordinary wife, enjoyed superior privileges and was better protected. The status was a purely legal one, a wife-sister being quite distinct from the physical relationship usually understood by the word 'sister.' In order to create the status of wife-sistership two documents were prepared—one for marriage and the other for sistership. Thus, we find a Nuzi tablet, according to which a person by the name of Akkuleni, son of Akiya, contracted with one Hurazzi, son of Eggaya, to give to Hurazzi in marriage his sister Beltakkadummi. Another tablet records that the same Akkuleni sold his sister Beltakkadummi as sister to the same

Hurazzi. If such a marriage was violated, the punishment was much more severe than in the case of a straightforward ordinary marriage. It would appear that the actions of Abraham and Isaac reflect this custom.\footnote{West, p. 67. See also Speiser, pp. 91-92.}

In the Hurrian culture from which Abram came (in Haran), people evidently viewed the husband/wife-sister relationship as even more sacred than the husband/wife relationship. According to this view, when Abram went to Egypt, he assumed that the Egyptians also regarded the husband/wife-sister relationship as more sacred than the husband/wife relationship. Therefore he presented Sarai as his "wife-sister," and expected that the Egyptians would not interfere with his relationship with Sarai.\footnote{See Matthew Newkirk, "Pimps or Protectors? A Reexamination of the Wife-Sister Deceptions," \textit{Journal of the Evangelical Theological Society} 64:1 (March 2021):45-57.} However, proponents of this view assume the "husband/wife-sister" relationship was foreign to Pharaoh, who "took" Sarai because he believed that she was just Abram's \textit{physical sister}. When Pharaoh discovered that Sarai was \textit{also} Abram's "wife," he returned Sarai to Abram, because Pharaoh regarded the "husband/wife" relationship as sacred. He was angry with Abram, because in Pharaoh's eyes, Abram had misrepresented his relationship with Sarai.

Those who hold this view see this incident as an example of failure to adjust to a foreign culture and failure to trust God. They usually understand Abram's motivation as having been confidence in a \textit{cultural custom} from his past, rather than faith in God.\footnote{For refutation of this view, see C. J. Mullo Weir, "The Alleged Hurrian Wife-Sister Motif in Genesis," \textit{Transactions of the Glasgow University Oriental Society} 2:22 (1967-68):14-25; David Freedman, "A New Approach to the Nuzi Sistership Contract," \textit{Journal of the Ancient Near Eastern Society of Columbia University} 2:2 (1970):80; Samuel Greengus, "Sisterhood Adoption at Nuzi and the 'Wife-Sister' in Genesis," \textit{Hebrew Union College Annual} 46 (1975):5-31; "The Patriarchs' Wives as Sisters—Is the Anchor Bible Wrong?" \textit{Biblical Archaeology Review} 1:3 (September 1975):22-24, 26; Selman, pp. 119-23; Kitchen, \textit{The Bible ...}, p. 70. For information on three social classes of Babylonian women 200 years after Abraham, see J. M. Diakonoff, "Women in Old Babylonia Not Under Patriarchal Authority," \textit{Journal of the Economic and Social History of the Orient} 29:3 (October 1984):225-38.} Most interpreters have concluded that Abram, on the other hand, was being rather dishonest about his relationship with Sarai, and was telling a half-truth to save his own life (cf. 20:12). Evidently it was possible for brothers to fend off suitors of their sisters with promises of marriage—without really
giving them away (cf. 24:55; 34:13-17). Archaeologists have discovered "a papyrus document which tells that Pharaoh had a beautiful woman brought to his court and caused her husband to be murdered."

"When you find yourself scheming in order to escape problems with people, beware; worse trouble is coming!"\(^1\)

How would God fulfill His promises if Abram died now? His fears were understandable; Pharaoh did take Sarai into his harem. Nevertheless, God intervened supernaturally to reunite Abram with Sarai, and to return them to the Promised Land (by deportation).\(^3\)

Abram's fear for his physical safety in a strange land (v. 2) led him to take an initiative that was not God's will. He should have told the truth and continued to trust God. Yet even in his disobedience and lack of faith, God blessed Abram (v. 16) and preserved him (v. 20), because of His promises (12:1-3).

"One cannot miss the deliberate parallelism between this sojourn of Abram in Egypt and the later event in the life of the nation in bondage in Egypt. The motifs are remarkably similar: the famine in the land (12:10; 47:13), the descent to Egypt to sojourn (12:10; 47:27), the attempt to kill the males but save the females (12:12; Ex. 1:22), the plagues on Egypt (Gen. 12:17; Ex. 7:14—11:10), the spoiling of Egypt (Gen. 12:16; Ex. 12:35-36), the deliverance (Gen. 12:19; Ex. 15), and the ascent to the Negev (Gen. 13:1; Num. 13:17, 22). The great deliverance out of bondage that Israel experienced was thus already accomplished in her ancestor, and probably was a source of comfort and encouragement to them."\(^4\)

We sometimes feel tempted to fear for our welfare, especially in a foreign environment. This fear sometimes leads us to seize the initiative and

---

\(^1\)Free, p. 55.
\(^2\)Wiersbe, p. 72.
\(^3\)For a helpful though not entirely accurate study, from my viewpoint, which compares the three incidents in which the patriarchs claimed their wives were their sisters in Genesis 12, 20, and 26, see Robert Polzin, "'The Ancestress of Israel in Danger' in Danger," *Semeia* 3 (1975):81-98. See also Mathews' good explanation of the wife-sister episodes in Genesis, in *Genesis 11:27—50:26*, pp. 124-26.
disobey God. But we can count on God to fulfill His promises to us, in spite of threatening circumstances. We should therefore remain faithful and honest.

"In times of testing, the important question is not, 'How can I get out of this?' but, 'What can I get out of this?'" (See James 1:1-12). God is at work to build your faith."

"The integrity and honesty of a child of God are among his most potent weapons in spreading the gospel."²

The Pharaoh (lit. "Great House") that Abram dealt with in Egypt was probably Inyotef II (2117-2069 B.C.), a ruler of the eleventh dynasty, Middle Kingdom period. His capital was in Memphis, very near modern Cairo.

**Identifications of Significant Pharaohs in the Genesis Period**³

**Prehistory** (to ca. 3100 BC)

**Early Dynasties** (dynasties 1-2; ca. 3100-2686 BC)

- **Menes** (first Pharaoh) united upper and lower Egypt.

**Old Kingdom** (dynasties 3-6; ca. 2686-2181 BC) Capital: Memphis (Noph). Period of absolute power. Age of pyramid building (archaeologists have identified almost 80).

- **Djoser** (Zoser; 2nd Pharaoh of 3rd dynasty) built the first stepped pyramid (south of Cairo).

- **Cheops** (Khufu; 2nd Pharaoh of 4th dynasty) built the Great (largest) Pyramid at Gizeh (near Cairo).

- **Chephren** (Khafre; 4th Pharaoh of 4th dynasty) built the still capped pyramid near the Sphinx (near Cairo).

---

¹Wiersbe, p. 72.
²Davis, *Paradise to ...*, p. 178.
³Based on the *Cambridge Ancient History*. All identifications are probable. See also Finegan, ch. 2: "The Panorama of Egypt."
FIRST INTERMEDIATE PERIOD (dynasties 7-10; ca. 2181-2040 BC) Capital: Thebes (No)


**Inyotef II** (2117-2069 BC; 3rd Pharaoh of 11th dynasty) entertained Abram (Gen. 12:15).

**Ammenemes II** (1929-1895 BC; 3rd Pharaoh of 12th dynasty) ruled when Joseph arrived in Egypt (Gen. 37:36).

**Sesostris II** (1897-1878 BC; 4th Pharaoh of 12th dynasty) had his dreams interpreted by Joseph and exalted Joseph (Gen. 40:2; 41:1, 14-45).

**Sesostris III** (1878-1843 BC; 5th Pharaoh of 12th dynasty) ruled when Jacob entered Egypt and received a blessing from Jacob (Gen. 46:31; 47:10).

**Ammenemes III** (1842-1797 BC; 6th Pharaoh of 12th dynasty) ruled when Joseph died (Gen. 50:26).

### SYNOPTIC CHRONOLOGY OF THE ANCIENT NEAR EAST

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Dates</th>
<th>Periods</th>
<th>Ancient Near East</th>
<th>Canaan</th>
<th>Scripture</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2200-1500 B.C.</td>
<td>Middle Bronze Age</td>
<td>Egypt: Middle Kingdom.</td>
<td>Amorites and Hebrew patriarchs in Canaan and Egypt</td>
<td>Genesis 12—50</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1See Livingston, pp. 14-17, for discussion of the archaeological ages in the ancient Near East.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Period</th>
<th>Event</th>
<th>Authors</th>
<th>Books</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1500-1200 B.C.</td>
<td>(Middle Canaanite) Amorites (Hyksos) control Egypt and Canaan.</td>
<td>Egyptians, Canaanites (El Amarna Age). Conquest by Joshua. Early Judges, Philistines, Midianites, Ammonites, Moabites, etc.</td>
<td>Exodus—Judges</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1200-930 B.C.</td>
<td><em>Late Bronze Age</em> (Late Canaanite) Egypt expels the Amorites and controls Canaan.</td>
<td>Later Judges, Samuel, Saul, David, Solomon.</td>
<td>Judges—1 Kings</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>930-586 B.C.</td>
<td><em>Iron Age I</em> (Israelite I) Egyptian influence weakening. Syrian and Assyrian influence not yet developed.</td>
<td>Divided Kingdom</td>
<td>1 Kings—2 Kings</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In Old Testament studies, some writers describe the "before Christ" (B.C.) period as "B.C.E." This stands for "before the common era." These writers also refer to the A.D. (Lat. *ano domini*, "year of our Lord") period as "C.E.," the "common era."

The first reference to camels in Scripture occurs in verse 16. For many years, scholars believed that the ancients did not domesticate camels until much later than the patriarchal period. They believed that references to camels in Genesis indicated historical inaccuracies. However, the archaeological evidence for the early domestication of camels has proven these critics wrong.¹ The Hebrew word does not distinguish whether these were one- or two-humped camels.

---

"They represented great wealth; to have a camel in this period was like having an expensive limousine."¹

God will protect His plan, even when His people complicate it with deception. Consequently, believers should not try to deliver themselves from threatening situations by deceptive schemes, but should continue to trust and obey God.

"Here Abram's failure in the face of hostility, like Israel's sinfulness in the wilderness, is surely recorded as a warning for later generations (cf. 1 Cor 10:11) and as an illustration of the invincibility of the divine promises (cf. Rom 11:29)."²

This is the first fulfillment of God's promise to bless those who blessed Abram, and to curse those who cursed him (12:3).

3. Abram's separation from Lot ch. 13

Chapters 13 through 19 have been called "the Lot narratives."³

This chapter records how Abram, though challenged by a major conflict with Lot due to strife between their herdsmen, magnanimously gave his nephew a choice of whichever land he wanted. Lot took an area that was very fertile, though inhabited by wicked people. In return, God blessed Abram with a reaffirmation of His promise. This was the fourth crisis Abram faced.

13:1-4 Abram returned from Egypt through the Negev, and settled down near his former location between Bethel and Ai. Abram had become "very rich" (v. 2).

"He was very heavy, so the Hebrew word signifies; for riches are a burden. There is a burden of care in getting them, fear in keeping them, temptation in using them, guilt in abusing them, sorrow in

¹ The Nelson ..., p. 28.
² Wenham, Genesis 1—15, p. 292.
losing them, and a burden to account, at last, to be given up concerning them."

"Of special interest is that in Genesis 12:10—13:4 Lot occupies the same position as that of the 'mixed multitude' (Ex 12:38) in the narrative of Genesis 41—Exodus 12. In other words the author apparently wants to draw the reader's attention to the identification of Lot with the 'mixed multitude.' It is as if Lot is seen in these narratives as the prefiguration of the 'mixed multitude' that comes out of Egypt with the Israelites."

Note also Lot's similarity to Esau in that both men chose what pleased them (v. 10; cf. 25:29-34).

13:5-7

When it became clear that there was not enough pasture to sustain all the flocks of both Abram and Lot ("the land could not support both of them ... for their possessions were so great," v. 6), Abram suggested that Lot separate from him, because their herdsmen were striving with each another (v. 7).

"Riches are often an occasion of strife and contention."*

Abram gave his nephew the choice of where he wanted to settle. This was a magnanimous gesture on Abram's part. If he was older than Lot, which seems probable, it shows even greater graciousness. Furthermore, God had called Abram into the Promised land and promised it to him, not Lot.

"... the Tale of Sinuhe of the twentieth century [B.C.] depicts persons like Abraham moving freely about in the Canaanite region with large flocks and herds in a semi-nomadic type of existence."*

---

1Matthew Henry, p. 27.
2Sailhamer, The Pentateuch ..., p. 38.
3Matthew Henry, p. 28.
4Wood, A Survey ..., p. 29.
Lot would have been the most likely candidate for the role of Abram's heir, since Sarai was barren. He was a part of Abram's household and a blood relative: his nephew. Abram probably regarded Lot, at that time, as the heir through whom God would fulfill His promises.

13:8-10 In offering Lot either the "left" or the "right" (v. 9), Abram was evidently suggesting that he and Lot partition the Promised Land into two halves; he would take one half and his nephew the other (cf. 22:3-10). Important to our appreciation of Abram's offer is knowledge of the fact that the Hebrews, as well as other ancient peoples, were eastern-oriented (as contrasted with being northern-oriented, as we are). Abram and Lot were probably looking east when Abram made his suggestion (v. 9). Thus "Lot raised his eyes and saw all the vicinity of the Jordan" (v. 10), which was to the east of where they stood. Perhaps they were standing on Mt. Asor, the highest point in that part of Canaan, and only a short walk from both Bethel and Ai. So when Abram offered Lot what was on his left, he was referring to northern Canaan, including the area around Shechem (cf. 12:6; 33:18—34:31; 37:12-17), going as far south as Bethel and Ai. The other choice was what was on their right: southern Canaan, including Hebron and the Negev (cf. 13:6, 9; 13:1, 18; 20:1; et al.). Both men had previously lived in both regions.

Moses' description of the Jordan Valley as being similar to Egypt ("like the garden of the LORD, like the land of Egypt," v. 10) should have warned the Israelite readers of Genesis against desiring to return to Egypt (cf. Exod. 16:3; Num. 11:5; 14:2-3).

13:11-13 Lot, however, chose neither of the options Abram offered: north ("left") or south ("right"). Instead, he decided to move "east" into the Jordan Valley (v. 11). Earlier we read that Adam, Eve, and Cain traveled east after they sinned (3:24; 4:16), and that the people of Babel went east and rebelled against God (11:2). Thus Lot's move east makes us a bit uneasy (cf. 12:3). Was this a bad choice? As things turned out, it was.
At that time, the Jordan River was the eastern border of Canaan, and the border continued going south from the southeastern end of the "Salt Sea" (what we call the Dead Sea) and southwest toward Kadesh (lit. "cultic shrine") Barnea (10:19). It then proceeded to the "Great Sea" (which we call the Mediterranean Sea) along the Wadi el Arish ("Brook of Egypt"); cf. Num. 34:1-12; Josh. 15:1-12).

The text contrasts "the land of Canaan" where Abram settled, with "the cities of the vicinity of the Jordan," where Lot settled (v. 12). The place Lot chose to settle was on the eastern frontier, along the edges of the border of the Promised Land (v. 11). The location of Sodom is still uncertain. There are three primary possibilities: northeast of the Dead Sea,\(^1\) southeast of the Dead Sea, or under the southeastern portion of the Dead Sea. The second option seems most probable.

"... this choice by Lot made rather final the rupture between him and Abram."\(^2\)

Lot's choice erected another hurdle for Abram's faith in the promises of God, and precipitated another crisis in the "obstacle story" of how God would fulfill His promises to Abram: Lot chose the Jordan Valley.

"Due to the combination of water (emerging from underground springs fed by the limestone hills farther west [of Jericho]), soil (deposited on the plain from the same hills) and climate (warm and sunny during most of the year), the region is known for all types of agricultural products, especially dates and balsam (used in ancient ointments). ... It is not surprising that Lot, who with Abraham had lived for a short time in the lush Nile Valley of Egypt [chose as he did] ... His choice appears to have been made from the mountains


\(^2\)Harold Stigers, *Commentary on Genesis*, p. 146.
northeast of Bethel, with a view of the Jericho oasis or the Plains of Moab."¹

Lot's choice seems to have been influenced, to some extent, by a desire to ally himself with the native inhabitants (cf. 13:7, 12; 19:1-26), as well as by the natural fruitfulness of the Jordan Valley.

"In any given situation, what you are determines what you see, and what you see determines what you do."²

"The eyes see what the heart loves."³

"The close parallels between the two [cities, i.e., Babylon and Sodom] which are created in the narrative of chapter 13 suggest that the author intends both cities to tell the same story. As in the case of parallels and repetitions throughout the book, the double account of God's destruction of the 'city in the east' is intended to drive home the point that God's judgment of the wicked is certain and imminent (cf. 41:32)."⁴

13:14-17 Abram was now without an heir. However, Yahweh appeared to him at this crucial time (v. 14), and reconfirmed the promise of land that, He said, He would give to Abram's offspring (v. 15).

Abram "raised his eyes" (v. 10) too (v. 14), but he saw the whole land—as far as he could see in every direction ("northward and southward and eastward and westward," v. 14). God repeated His promise to give him and his descendants all the land he saw. This promise was more specific than God's previous promises regarding the seed and the land (12:2, 7).

¹James Monson, *The Land Between*, pp. 163-64.
³Wiersbe, p. 74. Italics omitted.
This was God's third revelation to Abram. It contained three specifics:

1. Abram's heir would be *his own seed* (offspring; vv. 15-16).

2. God would give the land to Abram and his descendants *forever* (v. 15). Interpreters who believe that the Jews permanently forfeited the land by rejecting their Messiah sometimes translate "forever" (Heb. *'adh 'olam*) "a long time."¹

3. Abram's descendants would be *innumerable* (v. 16).

The figure of "dust" suggests *physical* seed, and is hyperbole (v. 16; cf. 2:7), meaning "innumerable." The "stars" figure given later (15:5) suggests *heavenly* or *spiritual* seed, in addition to physical seed, and is also hyperbole.

God's encouragement to walk through the land (v. 17) implied that Abram should claim the promise by treading the land under his feet. In the ancient Near East, victorious armies claimed defeated territory by marching through it and literally treading it under their feet.

"The divine promise of land and other blessings (Gen. 12:1-3; 15:18-21; 17:1-8) is in the form of a covenant known technically in ancient Near Eastern studies as a 'covenant of grant.' It was made at the initiative of the granter and often with no preconditions or qualifications."²

13:18 Abram later relocated near Hebron, where he built another altar and worshipped again (v. 18). Hebron is the highest town in the Promised Land, with an elevation of about 3,000 feet. Its site is strategic, lying midway between Jerusalem and Beersheba—about 20 miles southwest of Jerusalem.

---

¹E.g., Leupold, 1:441.
Many of the commentators have seen two types of believers in Abram and Lot. One commits himself completely to trusting and obeying God, though not without occasional lapses in his faith. The other wants both what God and what the world can give him. These correspond to a spiritual and a carnal believer, or a single-minded and a double-minded believer (James 1:8; 4:8). Sailhamer saw Lot as a prefiguration of the rabble that came out of Egypt with the Israelites.¹ When Abram gave Lot the choice of where he wanted to live, Abram was giving up any claim to temporal advantages, and was trusting God to bless him as God had promised He would. This step of faith led to greater blessing by God (vv. 14-17). Abram’s response to this fresh revelation, again, was worship ("he built an altar to the LORD").

People who truly believe God’s promises of provision can be generous with their possessions, as Abram was.

4. Abram’s military victory ch. 14

Sometime later, a powerful coalition of kings from Mesopotamia invaded Canaan and, in the process, took Lot captive. Abram retaliated with a surprise attack at night, and recovered Lot and the possessions those kings had taken. Upon his return to his home, Abram received a blessing from "Melchizedek," king of Salem, and he received an offer of reward by the king of Sodom, "Bera" (v. 2). Abram declined to accept the reward, because he did not want people to conclude that Bera, rather than Yahweh, had blessed him. Abram’s acknowledgment that victory and possessions come from God alone, enabled him to avoid the danger of accepting gifts from the wicked, and to wait for God to provide what He had promised. In this chapter, we see a much different Abram from the coward who endangered his wife in Egypt (ch. 12).

 Abram’s war with four kings 14:1-16

A major significance of this literary unit is that it describes two more challenges to God’s faithfulness and Abram’s faith. So far Abram had to contend with several barriers to God fulfilling His promises to him. His wife was barren, he had to leave the land, his life was in danger, and his anticipated heir showed no interest in the Promised Land. Now he became

involved in a war and consequently became the target of retaliation by four powerful kings.

14:1-12 The four kings mentioned in verse 1 resided in the eastern part of the Fertile Crescent. They sought to dominate the land of Canaan by subjugating five kings (v. 2) who lived there. They probably wanted to keep the trade routes between Mesopotamia and Egypt open and under their control. It is interesting that people living around Babylon initiated this first "war" mentioned in the Bible (v. 2).

"Inscriptions found in recent years have shown that the names of the Mesopotamian kings may in some cases be identified with names of persons already known from the [archaeological] discoveries, and that, in any case, they fit into the pattern of Babylonian names."¹

Scholars have debated the identity of the "Rephaim" (v. 5; cf. 15:20; literally "ghosts" or "spirits of the dead"). Some believe they were gods, others that they were the deified dead, and still others the promoters of fertility.² Most likely they were one of the early tribal groups that inhabited Canaan when Abram entered the land. They appear to have been very powerful, and apparently some of their neighbors regarded them as super-human, before and/or after their heyday.³

The scene of the battle of the nine kings was the Valley of Siddim (vv. 3, 8). This valley probably lay in the southern part of the modern Dead Sea, south of the Lissan Peninsula. The Old Testament calls this body of water the "Salt Sea," because its average 32 percent saline content is about ten times more than the oceans' 3 percent average. Josephus referred to it as Lake Asphaltitis.⁴

---

¹Free, p. 57.
Abram could have lost his possessions and his life by getting involved in war with the Mesopotamian kings. He definitely set himself up as a target for retaliation. Almost everyone in the ancient Near East practiced retaliation, and it is still a major factor in the continuing political turmoil that characterizes the Middle East to this day. (The "ancient Near East" is a term that applies to the whole eastern Mediterranean world in ancient times. The "Middle East" is a term that refers to the area at the confluence of Africa, Europe, and Asia in modern times.) People did not forgive and forget; they harbored resentment for acts committed against their ancestors or themselves—for generations—and took revenge when they thought they could succeed.

Why was Abram willing to take such risks? He probably thought he could win. His love for Lot may have been the primary factor. His attitude was not: "He's made his own bed; let him lie in it." Perhaps Abram hoped that Lot had learned his lesson, living like a stranger in Sodom, and that he would return to him. Unfortunately, Lot had not learned his lesson, but returned to Sodom soon after his release as a prisoner of war. Undoubtedly, Abram also went to war because he had confidence in God's promises to him (12:2-3, 7).

"We have here a prelude of the future assault of the worldly power upon the kingdom of God established in Canaan; and the importance of this event to sacred history consists in the fact, that the kings of the valley of Jordan and the surrounding country submitted to the worldly power, whilst Abram, on the contrary, with his home-born servants, smote the conquerors and rescued their booty,—a prophetic sign that in the conflict with the power of the world the seed of Abram would not only not be subdued, but would be able to rescue from destruction those who appealed to it for aid."¹

¹Keil and Delitzsch, 1:202.
Some scholars have suggested that Abram's designation as "the Hebrew" (v. 13) marked him as a resident alien, rather than a semi-nomad. As such he would have taken steps to take possession of the land God had promised him.¹ He could have been both a resident alien and a semi-nomad.² Albright argued that he was a "donkeyman, donkey driver, caravaneer."³

"In the eighteenth century B.C. the ass was the chief beast of burden."⁴

However, most conservative interpreters have concluded that Abram was a semi-nomadic shepherd.⁵ The term "Hebrew," occurring here for the first time in the Bible, is primarily an ethnic designation in the Old Testament.⁶ Usually people other than Hebrews used this term to describe Abram's ethnic group. "Hebrew" comes from the name "Eber" (cf. 10:21), and is related to a verb meaning "cross over" or "pass through." Abram "crossed over" or "passed through" from another place in order to obey the LORD's command.⁷

"The appearance of the later name 'Dan' [v. 14] is a post-Mosaic updating of the place name for later readers."⁸

Another explanation is that the "Dan" referred to here was "Dan-jaan" (2 Sam. 24:6, and possibly Deut. 34:1) in Gilead.⁹

The situation that Abram faced, taking his 318 men and going into battle against an alliance of four armies, was similar to the one Gideon faced in leading 300 men against 135,000

---

³Albright, "Abram the ....," p. 34.
⁵E.g., Kitchen, The Bible ..., p. 57. Cf. 46:32, 34; 47:3.
⁹Wood, A Survey ..., p. 53; Leupold, 1:459.
Midianites (Judg. 7:6; 8:10). The lesson of both passages is the same: God is able to give a trusting and obedient minority victory over ungodly forces that are overwhelmingly superior in numbers.

**Abram's meeting with two kings 14:17-24**

This section records an important decision Abram had to make after he returned victoriously from his battle with the Mesopotamian kings.

14:17 The "valley of Shaveh" was near the city that later became Jerusalem (the "Salem" of verse 18). It may have been the Kidron (or "Black") Valley, immediately east of the city, or some other valley not far away.1

14:18 "Melchizedek" was probably a title rather than a proper name. It means "King of Righteousness" or "My King is Righteous." Compare "Adonizedek" ("Lord of Righteousness") in Joshua 10:1 and 3. However, theophoric names (names bearing the name of a god) were common in the ancient Near East. So his name may have meant "My King is Sedeq" or "Milku is Righteous"—Sedeq and Milku presumably being the names of gods.2 The names of both the kings of Sodom and Gomorrah (v. 2) are compounds of a Hebrew word translated "evil" (cf. 13:13).

"The Rabbis have a curious conceit about the origin of the name Jerusalem, which is commonly taken to mean, 'the foundation,' 'the abode,' or 'the inheritance of peace.' They make it a compound of Jireh and Shalem, and say that Abraham called it 'Jehovah-Jireh,' while Shem had named it Shalem, but that God combined the two into Jireh-Shalem, Jerushalaim, or Jerusalem. (Ber[akot]. R[abbah].)"3

Bread and wine were the royal food and drink of the day. Many writers have commented on their typical significance, though

---

1See ibid., 1:462.
2Wenham, *Genesis 1—15*, p. 316.
there is no basis for connecting them directly with the
elements used in the Lord's Supper. Many ancient Near
Easterners used bread and wine in making covenants.¹
Melchizedek, the first priest mentioned in the Bible, evidently
gave a royal banquet in Abram's honor. In view of their
characters and geographical proximity, Abram and Melchizedek
may have been friends before this meeting. Melchizedek may
have been Abram's king to whom the patriarch was paying an
expected obligation.²

14:19 Melchizedek "blessed" Abram, and so set himself up for God's
blessing (cf. 12:3). The "God" whom Melchizedek worshipped
as a priest was the true God, known to him as "El Elyon,"
meaning "God Most High, Possessor of heaven and earth" (i.e.,
the Creator). This title reveals the sovereign power of God
over the nations. Both Melchizedek and Abram regarded Abram's
recent victory in battle as due to the blessing of El Elyon (cf.
v. 22). This shows that both of them worshipped the true,
living God.

14:20 People commonly practiced tithing as an act of worship in the
ancient Near East at this time (cf. 28:22).³ It was also a
common tax. This is still true in some modern countries. For
example, in England part of every person's taxes goes to
maintain the Church of England. Some residents regard this
part of their tax as their contribution to the church or their
tithe. However, since Melchizedek gave Abram a priestly
blessing, it is likely that Abram reciprocated by giving
Melchizedek a gift with priestly connotations.⁴ In some cases,
people gave tithes to those whom they regarded as superiors,
as a sign of their respect.⁵ "Everything" probably refers to all
that Abram took in the battle rather than all that was in his
possession (cf. vv. 23-24; Heb. 7:4).

¹Donald J. Wiseman, "Abraham in History and Tradition. Part II: Abraham the Prince,"
³See Keil and Delitzsch, 1:207.
⁴Wenham, Genesis 1—15, p. 316.
⁵A. Noordtzij, Leviticus, p. 279.
14:21-24  Abram identified El Elyon with Yahweh (v. 22). His willingness to take no spoil from the battle for himself demonstrates Abram's desire that God would receive all the glory for his prosperous victory. He also appears not to have wanted to be indebted to the king of Sodom. This man may have, by his command to Abram, been setting him up for demands later on (cf. 23:15).

"The gifts of the ungodly are often attached to deadly strings."¹

Generally, the patriarchs believed that God would give them what He had promised without their having to take it from others.² Abram was content with what God had given him (cf. Phil. 4:11).³

"... just as in the previous episode where Abram allowed Lot the pick of the land, so here he allows the surly king of Sodom more than his due."⁴

"Christians are really so rich in their own inheritance that it ill becomes them to crave the possessions of others."⁵

This event is significant because it demonstrates Abram's trust in God to provide what He had promised, which God soon rewarded with another revelation and promise (15:1).

"Even without the explicit warning that 'he who disdains you I shall curse,' the narrative suggests that it is dangerous to despise those through whom God works.

"It is the demonstration of divine support for Abram that is the clearest thrust of this story. ..."

¹Davis, Paradise to ..., p. 182.
²See note on 48:22.
³See Mathews, Genesis 11:27—50:26, pp. 120-22, for an excursus on the patriarchs' wealth.
⁴Wenham, Genesis 1—15, p. 318.
⁵Bush, 1:237.
"Within Genesis, however, Melchizedek is primarily an example of a non-Jew who recognizes God's hand at work in Israel ... They are those who have discovered that in Abram all the families of the earth find blessing."¹

The writer of the Epistle to the Hebrews expounded the typical significance of Melchizedek, and the events of this incident, in Hebrews 7 (cf. Ps. 110:4). A "type" is a divinely intended illustration given beforehand of something else that follows: the antitype.²

The confidence that God will preserve and provide for His own, just as He promised, should encourage believers to decline worldly benefits and wait for God's blessings.

"We see in chapter 14 who has the real power, Lot the man who compromised with the world, or Abraham the man who lived in separation from it. You know they tell us, 'If you want to have power and influence with the world, you must live according to it, and, in a sense, be of it. If you want to win card players, you must learn to play cards,' etc."³

5. The Abrahamic Covenant ch. 15

Abram virtually asked God to strengthen his faith (14:23-24). In response, Yahweh promised to give the patriarch innumerable descendants. This led Abram to request some further assurance that God would indeed do what He promised: "What will You give me, since I am childless?" (v.2). God graciously obliged him by formalizing the promises, and making a covenant. In the giving of the covenant, God symbolically let Abram know that enslavement would precede the fulfillment of the promise.

From chapters 12 through 14, issues involving God's promise to Abram concerning land have predominated. However, from chapter 15 on, tensions arising from the promise of descendants become central in the narrative.

¹Wenham, Genesis 1—15, pp. 321-22.
³Newell, p. 79.
Abram was legitimately concerned about God's provision of the Promised Land, as well as his need for an heir. He had declined the gifts of the king of Sodom, and had placed himself in danger of retaliation from four powerful Mesopotamian kings. God had proven Himself to be Abram's "shield" (v. 1; defender) in the battle just passed. Now He promised to be the same in the future, and to give Abram a "great reward." This was God's fourth revelation to Abram.

"Gen 15 not only stands at the center of the external structure of the Abraham narratives, but also is regarded in the history of exegesis right down to the present as the very heart of the Abraham story."¹

"Scene 5 [ch. 15] consists of two divine encounters (15:1-6 and 7-21) involving dialogue between the Lord and Abraham and powerful images symbolizing God's presence and promises. The first occurs at night (15:5) as a vision (15:1) and pertains to the promised seed. The second occurs at sundown (15:12), partially in a deep sleep (15:12), and pertains to the promised land."²

Moses' declaration that "Abram believed the LORD " (v. 6) links the two sections.

15:1 "'The word of the L ORD came.' This is a phrase typically introducing revelation to a prophet, e.g., 1 Sam 15:10; Hos 1:1; but in Genesis it is found only here and in v 4 of this chapter. Abraham is actually called a prophet in 20:7. It prepares the way for the prophecy of the Egyptian bondage in vv 13-16."³

Only in 15:1, and 22:1, and 22:11 did God address Abram directly. Visions were one of the three primary methods of divine revelation in the Old Testament, along with dreams and direct communications (cf. Num. 12:6-8).

²Waltke, *Genesis*, p. 238.
³Wenham, *Genesis 1—15*, p. 32
"By his bold intervention and rescue of Lot, Abram exposes himself to the endemic plague of that region—wars of retaliation.\(^1\) This fear of retaliation is the primary reason for the divine oracle of 15.1 which could be translated: 'Stop being afraid, Abram. I am a shield for you, your very great reward.' Yahweh's providential care for Abram is to be seen as preventing the Mesopotamian coalition from returning and settling the score."\(^2\)

The promise of "reward" (Heb. *shakar*), coming just after Abram's battle with the kings, resembles a royal grant to an officer for faithful military service.\(^3\) God would compensate Abram for conducting this military campaign, even though he had passed up a reward from the king of Sodom. The compensation in view consisted of *land* and *descendants* (cf. Ps. 127:3).

This interpretation, that Abram feared retaliation, looks back to the preceding context (ch. 14). Another view looks forward to what follows in this chapter: the promise of numerous descendants for Abram. Advocates of this second view see Abram's fear as fear of remaining childless (cf. v. 2), not fear of retaliation.\(^4\) Perhaps he feared both things. "After these things" seems to me to separate the events of chapters 14 and 15, and that may support the second view.

In response to Abram's fear, God promised that He Himself would be Abram's perfectly adequate safeguard and the only reward that he would need.

15:2-3 Abram used a new title for God, calling Him "Master (Adonai) Yahweh" (translated "Lord God," meaning "Sovereign Master"). Abram had willingly placed himself under the

---

\(^1\)See Sarna, *[Understanding Genesis*, pp.] 116, 121, 122.

\(^2\)Helyer, p. 83.

\(^3\)M. G. Kline, *Kingdom Prologue*, p. 216.

\(^4\)E.g., Leupold, 1:472; Sailhamer, "Genesis," revised ed., p. 169.
sovereign authority and leadership of the Strong One, the Most High God.

"A childless couple adopts a son, sometimes a slave, to serve them in their lifetime and bury and mourn them when they die. In return for this service they designate the adopted son as the heir presumptive. Should a natural son be born to the couple after such action, this son becomes the chief heir, demoting the adopted son to the penultimate position."¹

The wordplay between the Hebrew words *mesheq* ("heir") and *dammesek* ("Damascus") suggests the incongruity that Abram's presumed heir (Eliezer) would apparently be an alien (cf. Jer. 49:1).

Abram assumed that since he was old and childless, and since Lot had not returned to him, the heir God had promised him would be his chief servant, Eliezer (v. 2; cf. Prov. 17:2).

"... under Hurrian law a man's heir would be either his natural-born son—a direct heir—or, in the absence of any natural-born son, an indirect heir, who was an outsider adopted for the purpose. In the latter case, the adopted heir was required to attend to the physical needs of his 'parents' during their lifetime."²

God assured Abram that the descendants He had promised would come through a natural-born son, not an adopted heir ("one who will come from your own body"; cf. 12:7; 13:15-16).

To the promise of "descendants as innumerable as the dust" (physical descendants from the land? cf. 13:16), God added

---
another promise: that Abram's seed would be as countless as "the stars." This is perhaps a promise of Abram's spiritual "children" (all believers after Abram), those who would have faith in God as he did. Abram may not have caught this distinction, since he would have more naturally taken the promise as a reference to physical children.

15:6-7 Moses did not reveal exactly what Abram "believed" (confidently trusted, relied upon), for which God "credited it to him as righteousness." In Hebrew, the preformative conjunction waw, with the imperfect tense verb following, indicates consecutive action, and best translates as "Then." When waw occurs with the perfect tense verb following, as we have here, with a hiphil perfect, it indicates disjunctive action, and could read, "Now Abram had believed" (cf. 1:2). Many English translations avoid the problem and read simply "And" or "Abram believed."

Clearly, God justified Abram (declared him righteous) because of Abram's faith. Abram's normal response to God's words to him was to believe them. Abram had trusted the Person of God previously (cf. Heb. 11:8), but he evidently had not realized that God would give him an heir from his own body (v. 4). Now he accepted this promise of God also (cf. Rom. 4:3; Gal. 3:6; James 2:23). The Hebrew word translated "believed" literally means "leaned fully."¹

One writer suggested that Abram believed the "counting" promises of 13:16 and 15:4-5, regarding numerous descendants, and the result was that the LORd "counted" his faith as righteousness.² The Apostle Paul expounded verse 15 in Romans 4 and there wrote that the promise Abram believed was "that he would be heir of the world" (Rom. 4:13). That is, Abram believed that through his yet to be born son, Abram would bless the whole world.

"In the middle of this chapter occurs what is perhaps the most important verse in the entire

¹Merrill, in The Old ..., p. 20.
Bible: Genesis 15:6. In it, the doctrine of justification by faith is set forth for the first time. This is the first verse in the Bible explicitly to speak of (1) 'faith,' (2) 'righteousness,' and (3) 'justification.'

It is also the first reference to the word "believe."

"Religious conversion appears first in recorded history in the Hebrew Bible."2

Trust in God's promise is what results in "justification"—in any era. The promises of God (content of faith) vary, but the object of faith does not. It is always God.3 Technically, Abram trusted in a Person and believed His promise. To "justify" someone means to declare that person righteous, not to make him or her righteous in his or her conduct (cf. Deut. 25:1). "Justification" expresses a legal verdict.

"We are not saved by making promises to God; we are saved by believing God's promises to us. How you respond to God's promises determines what God will do in your life."4

Covenant theologians believe that the object of saving faith in both Testaments is the same: Jesus Christ.5 However, there does not seem to be enough specific revelation about Jesus Christ early in the Old Testament to justify such a conclusion (cf. Rom. 4:13).

Today, some preachers warn us about "easy believism," a term that they use for the teaching that faith alone is all that is necessary for salvation. But Genesis 15:6 presents faith as the

---

1Boice, 2:98.
2Albright, Archaeology and ..., p. 24.
3See Charles C. Ryrie, Dispensationalism Today, pp. 110-31; or idem, Dispensationalism, pp. 105-22.
4Wiersbe, p. 69.
only thing that resulted in Abram's justification. It sounds very much as though Abram simply gave mental assent to what God told him. Whereas it is possible for a person simply to acknowledge certain facts as true (to give mental assent to them), saving faith goes beyond that and rests one's hope for the future on them—without adding anything else (cf. Heb. 11:1).

"He'emin, Hifil of 'aman, 'to confirm' and 'support,' means 'trust,' 'believe,' implying *fiducia* [the Latin word for "trust"] rather than *assensus* [or *ascensus*, the Latin word for "assent"]."¹

Moses probably recorded Abram's faith, here, because it was foundational for making the Abrahamic Covenant. God made this covenant with a man who believed Him.

James 2:21 suggests that Abram was justified when he offered Isaac (ch. 22). James meant that Abram's work of willingly offering Isaac justified him (declared or showed him to be righteous). That is, his work manifested his righteous condition. In Genesis 15, *God* declared Abram righteous (in his standing before God), but in Genesis 22, *Abram's works* declared (testified, showed to others) that he was righteous.

"In the sacrifice of Isaac was shown the full meaning of the word (Gen. 15:6) spoken 30 years before in commendation of Abraham's belief in the promise of a child. It was the willing surrender of the child of promise, 'accounting that God was able to raise him up from the dead,' which fully proved his faith."²

"Righteousness is not an ideal, absolute norm which is above men, but rather a term of relationship. Thus, a man is called righteous who conducts himself properly with reference to an existing communal relationship, who, therefore,
does justice to the claims which this communal relationship makes on him. This communal relationship can be human. But the passages where righteousness refers, as it does here, to the relationship of communion between man and God are more important."¹

15:8  Abram requested a sign, a supernatural verification that God would indeed fulfill the distant promise ("... how may I know that I will possess it?"). His request shows that he was taking God seriously.

"Requests for signs were not unusual in Old Testament times. They were not so much to discover God's will as to confirm it."²

15:9-10  God responded by making a covenant with Abram.

"Only after he had been counted righteous by his faith could Abraham enter into God's covenant."³

"Four rites are mentioned [in the Old Testament] as parts of the covenant making event. They are the setting of a stone or a group of stones, the taking of an oath, the sacrifice of animals, and/or a communal meal."⁴

The sacrifice of animals in covenant making normally involved two parties. They divided an animal into two equal parts, joining hands, and walked between the two parts (cf. Jer. 34:18-19). On this occasion, however, God alone passed between the parts, indicating that Abram had no obligations to fulfill in order to receive the covenant promises (v. 17).

¹von Rad, p. 185.
²Davis, Paradise to ..., p. 186.
³Sailhamer, The Pentateuch ..., p. 152.
⁴Livingston, p. 157.
The animals used were standard types of sacrificial animals, and may have represented the nation of Israel, "a kingdom of priests" (Exod. 19:6).

"The use of five different kinds of sacrificial animals on this occasion underlines the solemnity of the occasion."¹

"We suggest that the animal cutting in Gen. 15:9-10, 17 is designated a 'covenant ratification sacrifice' ... The killing and sectioning of the animals by Abram is the sacrificial preparatio [preparation] for the subsequent divine ratificatio [ratification] of the covenant by Yahweh who in passing between the pieces irrevocably pledges the fulfillment of his covenant promise to the patriarch. The initiative of Yahweh remains in the foreground both in the instruction for the 'covenant ratification sacrifice' (Gen. 15:9-10) and in the act of bërît [covenant] ratification itself (v. 17).

"Gen. 15:7-21 contains covenant-making in which Yahweh binds himself in promise to Abram in the passing through the animals in the act of covenant ratification. Abram had prepared the animals for this ratification act through the 'covenant ratification sacrifice' which involved both killing and sectioning of the victims. Certain basic features of this covenant ratification rite are most closely paralleled only in aspects of the function of animal rites of the extant early second millennium treaty texts."²

To "ratify" means to give formal consent to either a treaty, a contract, or an agreement, making it officially valid.

15:11 "The birds of prey are unclean (Lev. 11:13-19; Deut. 14:12-18) and represent foreign nations (Ezek. 17:3, 7; Zech. 5:9), most probably Egypt. Thus Abram driving off the birds of prey from the dismembered pieces portrays him defending his descendants from the attacks of foreign nations. Genesis itself tells of a number of attacks by foreigners against the children of Abraham (e.g. chs. 26, 34) and it already looks forward to the sojourn in Egypt (chs. 37—50 [cf. Exod. 1:11-12]). But in what sense can Abraham's actions be said to protect his offspring? Genesis 22:16-18; 26:5 suggest it was Abraham's faithful obedience to the covenant that guaranteed the blessing of his descendants. Exodus 2:24 and Deuteronomy 9:5 also ground the exodus in the divine promises made to the patriarchs. The bird scene therefore portrays the security of Israel as the consequence of Abraham's piety."\(^1\)

15:12 Abram fell into the same type of "deep sleep" that God brought on Adam when He took Adam's rib to make Eve (cf. 2:21). Abram's "terror" reflects his reaction to the "torch" that passed between the parts, and to the revelation of the character and holy presence of God that the flame represented (cf. v. 17).

15:13-14 Moses gave more detail regarding the history of the seed here than he had revealed previously (cf. vv. 14, 16). The "four hundred years" of enslavement were evidently from 1845 B.C. to 1446 B.C., the date of the Exodus.

\(^1\)Wenham, "The Symbolism ....," p. 135.
This promise, read by the first readers of Genesis after the Exodus, would have encouraged them greatly (cf. Exod. 12:40-42). They experienced the fulfillment of this promise. That generation did indeed come out from Egypt with "many possessions," also promised here, having "plundered" the Egyptians (cf. Exod. 12:31-36).

15:15 The ancients conceived of death as a time when they would rejoin their departed ancestors ("you shall go to your fathers"; cf. 2 Sam. 12:23). This was more than just joining their ancestors in their graves. It was confidence that they would live together with them.\(^1\) There was evidently little understanding of what lay beyond the grave at that time in history.\(^2\)

15:16 The Hebrew word translated "generation" generally refers to an average person's lifetime, which at that time in history was about 100 years.\(^3\) This seems a better explanation than that four literal generations are in view. The writer mentioned four literal generations in Exodus 6:16-20 and Numbers 26:58-59, but there are quite evidently gaps in those genealogies.\(^4\)

---

\(^1\)Leupold, 1:485-86.
\(^3\)See W. F. Albright, The Biblical Period from Abraham to Ezra, p. 9; and Theological Workbook of the Old Testament, s.v., "dor," by Robert D. Culver, 1:186-87.
\(^4\)See Kitchen, Ancient Orient ..., p. 54.
Amorite" serves as a synecdoche for the ten Canaanite nations listed in verses 19 and 20. (A "synecdoche" is a figure of speech in which one part of a whole represents the whole, as here, or the whole represents a part.)

"The Amorites, we may suppose, became the most numerous, powerful, and corrupt of all the race, for they are frequently made to represent the whole [cf. 1 Kings 21:26]."¹

15:17 The "smoking oven" and "flaming torch" were evidently one entity. This was an intensely bright, hot flame symbolizing God in His holiness. The bright, hot, burning flame is a good symbol of God in that it is pure, purges in judgment, and provides light and warmth.

"This act is a promise that God will be with Abraham's descendants (e.g. 26:3, 24; 28:15; 31:3; 46:4, etc.). Indeed the description of the theophany as a furnace of smoke and 'a torch of fire' invites comparison with the pillar of cloud and fire that was a feature of the wilderness wanderings, and especially with the smoke, fire and torches (Exod. 19:18; 20:18) that marked the law-giving at Sinai. These were visible tokens of God's presence with his people, that he was walking among them and that they were his people (Lev. 26:12).

"In this episode then Abram's experience in a sense foreshadows that of his descendants. He sees them under attack from foreign powers but protected and enjoying the immediate presence of God. Elsewhere in the Abraham cycle, his life prefigures episodes in the history of Israel. Famine drove him to settle in Egypt (12:10; cf. chs. 42—46). He escaped after God had plagued Pharaoh (12:17; cf. Exod. 7—12), enriched by his stay in Egypt (13:2; cf. Exod. 12:35-38) and journeyed

¹Thomson, 1:240-41.
by stages (13:3; cf. Exod. 17:1; etc.) back to Canaan. In Genesis 22 Abraham goes on a three-day journey to a mountain, offers a sacrifice in place of his only son, God appears to him and reaffirms his promises. Sinai is of course a three-day journey from Egypt (Exod. 8:27), where Israel’s first-born sons had been passed over (Exod. 12). There too sacrifice was offered, God appeared and reaffirmed his promises (Exod. 19—24).

"Finally, it may be observed, the interpretation of Gen. 15:9-11, 17, that I am proposing on the basis of other ritual texts in the Pentateuch is congruent with verses 13-16, which explain that Abraham’s descendants would be oppressed for 400 years in Egypt before they come out with great possessions. Whether these verses are a later addition to the narrative as is generally held, or integral to it as van Seters asserts, they do confirm that at a very early stage in the history of the tradition this rite was interpreted as a dramatic representation of the divine promises to Abraham. It is not a dramatized curse that would come into play should the covenant be broken, but a solemn and visual reaffirmation of the covenant that is essentially a promise ..."¹

Another writer argued that this verse does not picture a covenant-making ritual for a unilateral, wholly unconditional covenant (cf. 17:1-2, 9-14; 18:18-19; 22:16, 18; 26:5). He believed the covenant is unconditional, but it did not become unconditional until chapter 22.²

15:18 This was the formal "cutting" of the Abrahamic Covenant. God now formalized His earlier promises (12:1-3, 7) into a suzerainty treaty, similar to a royal land grant, since Abram now understood and believed what God had promised. God as King bound Himself to do something for His servant Abram. The fulfillment of the covenant did not depend on Abram's obedience. It rested entirely on God's faithfulness.¹

"Note that the conditional promise of Gen. 12:1-3 becomes an unconditional covenant in Gen. 15:18. God declared His unconditional covenant with Abraham after declaring him righteous because of his belief (15:6)."²

"... it is fitting that in many respects the account should foreshadow the making of the covenant at Sinai. The opening statement in 15:7: 'I am the LORD, who brought you up out of Ur of the Chaldeans,' is virtually identical to the opening statement of the Sinai covenant in Exodus 20:2: 'I am the LORD your God, who brought you up out of the land of Egypt.' The expression 'Ur of the Chaldeans' refers back to Genesis 11:28, 31 and grounds the present covenant in a past act of divine salvation from 'Babylon,' just as Exodus 20:2 grounds the Sinai covenant in an act of divine salvation from Egypt. The coming of God's presence in the awesome fire and darkness of Mount Sinai (Ex 19:18; 20:18; Dt 4:11) appears to be intentionally reflected in Abraham's pyrotechnic vision (Ge 15:12, 17). In the Lord's words to Abraham (15:13-16) the connection between Abraham's covenant and the Sinai covenant is explicitly made by means of the reference to the four hundred years of bondage of Abraham's seed and their subsequent 'exodus' ("and after this they will go out," v. 14). Such considerations lead to the conclusion that the

¹Westermann, "Promises to ...," p. 690.
²The Nelson ..., p. 1885.
author intends to draw the reader's attention to the events at Sinai in his depiction of the covenant with Abraham.

"If we ask why the author has sought to bring the picture of Sinai here, the answer lies in the purpose of the book. It is part of the overall strategy of the book to show that what God did at Sinai was part of a larger plan which had already been put into action with the patriarchs. Thus, the exodus and the Sinai covenant serve as reminders not only of God's power and grace but also of God's faithfulness. What he sets out to accomplish with his people, he will carry through to the end."¹

Moses revealed the general geographical borders of the Promised Land, here for the first time. Some scholars interpret the "river of Egypt" as the Nile River.

"The argument is usually based on the fact that the Hebrew word nahar is consistently restricted to large rivers. However, the Hebrew is more frequently nahal (= Arabic wady) instead of the nahar of Genesis 15:18 which may have been influenced by the second nahar in the text.² In the Akkadian texts of Sargon II (716 B.C.) it appears as nahal musar."³

God later specified the Wadi El 'Arish, "the geographical boundary between Canaan and Egypt,"⁴ as the exact border

---

¹Sailhamer, The Pentateuch ..., p. 152.
⁴Charles Pfeiffer and Howard Vos, Wycliffe Historical Geography of Bible Lands, p. 88.
(Num. 34:5; Josh. 15:4, 47). That seems to be the "river" in view here, too. The Euphrates River has never yet been Israel's border.¹ These borders appear to coincide roughly with those of the Garden of Eden (cf. 2:10-14). Thus the Garden of Eden may have occupied the same general area as the Promised Land.

Some amillennialists take these boundaries as an ideal expressing great blessing, and they believe God never intended that Abram's seed should extend this far geographically.² However, such a conclusion is subjective, and finds no support in the text.³ Others take this promise as referring to heaven. Still other amillennialists take it literally but believe that it was conditional and will never be fulfilled.⁴

Moses named ten of the native tribes then inhabiting the Promised Land. The longest of the 27 lists of pre-Israelite nations that inhabited the Promised Land names 12 entities (10:15-18a; 1 Chron. 1:13-18). Sometimes as few as two receive mention. Most of these lists identify six.⁵

The Kenites (lit. "smiths," v. 19) were copper-workers, who lived among the Midianites, southeast of the Gulf of Aqabah.⁶ The Kenizzites (v. 19) lived in the extreme south of the Promised Land.⁷ The Kadmonites (v. 19) evidently lived near the headwaters of the Jordan River, near Mount Hermon.⁸ These Hittites (v. 20) lived near Hebron (23:10). They are probably not the same Hittites that lived in Anatolia (Asia Minor, modern western Turkey; cf. 10:15).⁹ The Perizzites (v. 20) apparently lived in villages (Heb. peraza) scattered among

---

²E.g., Waltke, *Genesis*, p. 245.
³See Mal Couch, "When God Restores the Kingdom to Israel," in *The Gathering Storm*, pp. 258-76.
⁸Thomson, 1:242.
the other Canaanites.\(^1\) The Rephaim (v. 20) were people of a
legendary stature who lived among the other Canaanites and
were also known by other names, such as Emim (Deut. 2:11)
and Zamzummim (Deut. 2:20-21).\(^2\) The Amorites (v. 21) lived
mainly in the hill country, on both sides of the Jordan River.\(^3\)
"Canaanites" (v. 21) is both a general name for all these tribes
(a synecdoche) and, as used here, the name of one of them.
The tribal Canaanites lived mainly in the western part of
Canaan.\(^4\) Little is known of the Girgashites (v. 21), though they
were descendants of the patriarch Canaan (Gen. 10:16; 1
Chron. 1:14) and were a part of the mixed population of the
Promised Land. The Jebusites (v. 21) lived mainly in the hills
around Jerusalem (Num. 13:29; Josh. 11:3; 15:8; 18:16).\(^5\)

Again, the first readers of Genesis would have been greatly
couraged to read this promise (cf. vv. 13-14). God repeated
the promises of this covenant frequently in Genesis (17:1-22;
17).

The Abrahamic Covenant is basic to the premillennial system of theology.

"How one understands the nature and function of this
covenant will largely determine one's overall theology and
most particularly his eschatology."\(^6\)

This covenant has not yet been fulfilled exactly as God promised it would
be. Since God is faithful to His Word, we believe He will fulfill these promises
in the future. Consequently there must be a future for Israel as a nation
(cf. Rom. 11). Amillennialists interpret this covenant in a less literal way.
They say, for example, that the land promise was fulfilled during the reign
of Solomon (1 Kings 8:65) and again during the reign of Jeroboam II (2
Kings 14:25).\(^7\) The crucial issue is interpretation. If God fulfilled the seed

---

\(^3\) Ibid., s.v. "Amorites," by A. R. Millard, pp. 31-32.
\(^6\) Eugene H. Merrill, "The Covenant with Abraham," Journal of Dispensational Theology
\(^7\) Leupold, 1:490.
and blessings promises literally—and He did—should we not expect that He will also fulfill the land promises literally as well?¹

The Palestinian, Davidic, and New Covenants are outgrowths of the Abrahamic Covenant. Each of these expands one major promise of the Abrahamic Covenant: the land, seed, and blessing promises respectively.

Now that God had given Abram the covenant, the writer proceeded to show how He would fulfill the promises. This is the reason for the selection of material that follows. So far in the story of Abram, Moses stressed the plans and purposes of God, culminating in the making of the covenant. Now we learn how Abram and his seed would realize these plans and purposes. This involves a revelation of God's ways and man's responsibilities.²

God's people can rely on His promises, even if they have to experience suffering and death before they see the promises fulfilled.

6. The birth of Ishmael ch. 16

Sarai and Abram schemed to obtain the heir God had promised to give them, by resorting to an albeit culturally acceptable custom of their day, but which involved a failure to trust God. This fleshly act created serious complications for Abram and his household, that included Hagar fleeing into the wilderness. Nevertheless God proved faithful to His promises and responded to Hagar's cries for help. He provided for her needs, and promised her many descendants—through Ishmael, since he was Abram's son.

"The account of Sarah's plan to have a son has not only been connected with the list of nations in chapter 15, but also appears to have been intentionally shaped with reference to the account of the Fall in Genesis 3. Each of the main verbs


²See Darby, 1:54-55.
(wayyiqtol forms) and key expressions in 16:2-3 finds a parallel in Genesis 3."¹

Alluding to the Fall, which the above quotation points out, implies the writer's disapproval of what Sarai did (cf. 3:17). He continued to focus increasing attention on the problem of an heir. Sarai had borne Abram no children (v. 1). She therefore concocted a plan to obtain an heir from his "own body" (15:4). It looked as if everything would work out well, until a conflict developed between Sarai and Hagar (v. 4). This conflict grew into a major crisis when Hagar fled the family encampment pregnant with Abram's unborn child (v. 6). Yahweh intervened again to resolve the crisis (v. 7). He instructed Hagar to return to Sarai (v. 9). Thus Hagar bore Ishmael in Abram's house, but later God revealed that he would not be the promised heir.

**Sarai and Hagar 16:1-6**

Using a woman other than one's wife (v. 2) was a method—apart from adoption—of providing an heir in the case of a childless marriage.² The Code of Hammurabi, which influenced life in the ancient Near East at this time, gave the Babylonians permission to do what Sarai suggested.³ Hagar was Sarai's personal servant ("slave woman"). Abram also had at least one personal servant (24:2).

"It was a serious matter for a man to be childless in the ancient world, for it left him without an heir. But it was even more calamitous for a woman: to have a great brood of children was the mark of success as a wife; to have none was ignominious failure. So throughout the ancient East polygamy was resorted to as a means of obviating childlessness. But wealthier wives preferred the practice of surrogate motherhood, whereby they allowed their husbands to 'go in to' their maids, a euphemism for sexual intercourse (cf. 6:4; 30:3; 38:8, 9; 39:14). The mistress could then feel that her maid's child was her own and

---

¹Sailhamer, *The Pentateuch...*, p. 153. See this page for a chart of the parallels.
³See Free, pp. 59-60.
exert some control over it in a way that she could not if her husband simply took a second wife."\(^1\)

People in Abram's culture regarded a concubine as a "secondary wife" with some, but not all, of the rights and privileges of the primary wife.\(^2\) In effect, Hagar became Abram's concubine.

"... one Nuzi tablet reads: 'Kelim-ninu has been given in marriage to Shennima. If Kelim-ninu does not bear children, Kelim-ninu shall acquire a woman of the land of Lulu (i.e., a slave girl) as wife for Shennima.'"\(^3\)

Not only was using a concubine an option, but in Hurrian culture, husbands sometimes required that if their wife could not bear children, it was then her duty to provide a concubine for him.\(^4\)

"... any child of the bond-slave would necessarily belong to the mistress, not the mother."\(^5\)

This custom helps explain why Abram was so willing to be part of Sarai's plan, which seems very unusual to us in the West. Abram agreed to his wife's faithless suggestion, just as Adam had followed Eve's lead. Abram's passivity contrasts with his earlier valiant action to save Lot from his captors (ch. 14). Like Eve, Sarai also blamed someone else for the results of her act, namely, Abram ("May the wrong done me be upon you! ... May the \textsc{Lord} judge between you and me," v. 5). "If mama ain't happy, nobody's happy!"

Did Sarai mean that she would obtain children through Hagar by adopting them as her own, or by becoming fertile herself as a result of Hagar's childbearing (v. 2)? Most interpreters have taken the first position, but some have preferred the second.\(^6\) The basis of the second view is the not-

---

\(^1\) Wenham, \textit{Genesis 16—50}, p. 7. See also Wood, \textit{A Survey ...}, p. 28.
\(^2\) Bush, 1:258.
\(^3\) West, p. 69.
infrequent phenomenon of a woman, who has had trouble conceiving, becoming pregnant after she has adopted a child.

When Sarai gave Hagar to Abraham, Hagar became his "property;" she was no longer Sarai's personal maid but his concubine. Hagar proceeded to despise Sarai, because she (Hagar) had been elevated to the status of Abram's (secondary) wife and because Sarai could not bear children. This led Sarai to complain to Abram about Hagar's behavior. This in turn led Abram to give Hagar back to Sarai as her "property;" she was no longer his concubine.¹

Though using a woman other than one's wife to bear one's children was a custom of the day, it was never God's desire (2:24; Matt. 19:4-5). Abram and Sarai here repeated the failure of Adam and Eve, namely, doubting God's word. This episode ended in total disaster for everyone involved. Hagar lost her home, Sarai lost her maid, Abram lost his concubine and his wife's maid, and his child by Hagar as his heir.

"A thousand volumes written against polygamy would not lead to a clearer fuller conviction of the evils of that practice than the story under review."²

Sarai tried to control the will of God by seizing the initiative from God (cf. 3:17). She and Abram chose fleshly means of obtaining the promised heir, rather than waiting for God in faith (cf. 25:21).³ They let their culture guide them rather than God.

"It's a shame that she [Sarai] hadn't comprehended the fact that her infertility could be used by the Lord to put her in a place of dependence on Him so that fruit could be born in her life."⁴

---

¹ von Rad, p. 192.
² Bush, 1:259. See also Waltke, Genesis, p. 339.
⁴ Don Anderson, Abraham: Delay Is Not Denial, p. 93.
The Angel of the LORD and Hagar 16:7-14

This is the first of 48 references to "the angel of the LORD" in the Old Testament. Sometimes "The angel of the LORD" is deity, and in other places, he appears to be an angelic messenger from the LORD. Here He seems to be the LORD.

"He is God himself in human form. ... The figure of the angel of the Lord has conspicuous Christological qualities."¹

"The prophetic description of Ishmael as a 'wild ass of a man' [v. 12] (RSV, NRSV) is rather intriguing. The animal referred to is the wild and untamable onager, which roams the desert at will. This figure of speech depicts very accurately the freedom-loving Bedouin moving across vast stretches of land."²

"We should say, he will carry a chip on his shoulder and have his finger on the trigger."³

This prophecy was not an insult or a curse. Ishmael would enjoy the freedom that his mother sought. The LORD named Ishmael (v. 11), whose name means "God Hears," and Hagar "named" the LORD (v. 13) "You are a God who sees me." These two names constitute a major revelation of God: He hears and He sees. This may be the only instance in Scripture of a human being conferring a name on God.

Abram and Sarai's presumptuous and manipulative "solution" proved to be a source of much difficulty for everyone involved (cf. Abram's error in going to Egypt, 12:11-13). God, however, took care of and blessed Ishmael even though he was the fruit of Abram's presumption. This was another occasion when Abram did not trust God as he should have (cf. 12:10-20).

"Both Hagar and Mary [the mother of Jesus] stand as examples of women who obediently accepted God's word and thereby brought blessing to descendants too many to count."⁴

¹von Rad, pp. 193, 194.
³Leupold, 1:505.
⁴Wenham, Genesis 16—50, p. 13.
The Apostle Paul used this story as an allegory (Gal. 4:24: "This is speaking allegorically"). An "allegory" today means a story without factual basis. Paul did not deny the factuality of Genesis 16, but he used this story as the basis for a comparison. Perhaps "illustration" or "comparison" would be better words to use to describe Paul's use of this story. He used Hagar to represent the Mosaic Covenant, and Ishmael as its fruit (a slave). He used Sarai to represent the Abrahamic Covenant, and Isaac as its fruit (a free son). Children of the flesh, like Ishmael, persecute children of the promise, like Isaac (Gal. 4:29).

There is much irony in this story: Barren Sarai lived in a fertile land, whereas fertile Hagar ended up living in a barren land. Furthermore the Egyptians, to whom the persecuted Hagar fled for freedom, later enslaved the persecutor, represented by Sarai's descendants.

Resorting to fleshly means, rather than waiting for God to provide what He has promised, always creates problems. This story also shows that human failure does not frustrate God's plans ultimately.

"If we have made mistakes which have led us into sin, the primary condition of restoration is complete submission to the will of God, whatever that may involve."\(^1\)

When in great or in any kind of distress, people should always pray, because God is aware of their needs—and will fulfill His promises to them.

**The birth of Ishmael 16:15-16**

When Ishmael was finally born, Abram named him as God had directed (v. 11). Ishmael was born 12 years after God had first promised that Abram would have descendants (12:2, 7). At that time, Abram was "eighty-six years old." Now it appeared that Ishmael would be the promised heir, but God had someone else in mind for Abram.

7. **The sign of circumcision ch. 17**

The Lord confirmed His covenant with Abram, 13 years after Ishmael's birth, by reiterating the promises of descendants and land—and by commanding Abram to circumcise all the males in his household.

---

\(^1\)Thomas, *Genesis*, p. 149.
Circumcision thereby became the physical demonstration (sign) of the obedient faith of Abram and his descendants. There is archaeological evidence from tombs and mummies that the Egyptians practiced circumcision at this time.¹

There are three types of signs in the Old Testament. Some signs were proofs that convinced observers of something (e.g., the Egyptian plagues). Others were certain acts that resembled an announced situation (e.g., acted prophecies). Still others were reminders of something (e.g., the rainbow, circumcision).

God further encouraged the patriarch's faith by changing Abram's name to "Abraham," and Sarai's to "Sarah." This was an added confirmation that God would indeed give them innumerable seed (descendants), as He had promised.

"The change was significant, as it placed emphasis not upon the importance of the man, but upon the purpose of God through him."²

"This chapter is a watershed in the Abraham story. The promises to him have been unfolded bit by bit, gradually building up and becoming more detailed and precise, until here they are repeated and filled out in a glorious crescendo in a long and elaborate divine speech. From this point in Genesis, divine speeches become rarer and little new content is added to the promises, but the fulfillment of these promises becomes more visible."³

There are in fact five divine speeches in this section: verses 1b-2, 4-8, 9-14, 15-16, and 19-21. The third speech comprises the center of the chiastic structure of this chapter, which may also be read as two parallel panels, namely, 1-14 and 15-27.

"The chapter is more of a theological treatise than the typical Abraham story."⁴

¹See Free, p. 60.
²Morgan, An Exposition ..., p. 19.
³Wenham, Genesis 16—50, p. 16.
Abram undoubtedly assumed that Ishmael would be the promised heir—until God told him that Sarai would bear his heir "herself" ("a son by her," emphasis added, v. 16). That revelation is the most important feature of this chapter. God gave the name changes and circumcision, both to confirm the covenant promise of an heir and to strengthen Abram's faith.

17:1-8 Thirteen years after the birth of Ishmael (16:16), God spoke to Abram again (the fifth revelation; v. 1). God called Himself by a new name: El Shaddai (the "Almighty God"). This was appropriate, in view of the thing God proceeded to reveal to Abram that He would do. It would require supernatural power.

"Blameless" (v. 1) does not mean sinless, but "with integrity," or "wholeness of relationship" (with God; cf. 6:9). God requires a sanctified life of those who would enjoy His promised blessings.

The references to the "covenant" in this chapter have caused some confusion. The Abrahamic Covenant (ch. 15) is in view (vv. 4, 7, 11, 19, 21), but also the outward sign of that covenant, which was the Covenant of Circumcision (vv. 2, 9, 10, 13, 14; cf. Acts 7:8). Thus Moses used the word "covenant" with two different references here, though throughout, the Abrahamic Covenant is in view.¹ Visualizing the Covenant of Circumcision as a smaller circle, within the larger circle of the Abrahamic Covenant, will help us understand the relationship of these two covenants to one another. Whereas the Abrahamic Covenant was unconditional, the Covenant of Circumcision depended on Abram's obedience (vv. 1-2). God would bless Abram as Abram obeyed God by circumcising his household. This blessing would be in the form of multiplying Abram's descendants "exceedingly" (v. 2)—even more than God had already promised. The rite of circumcision was to be a continuing sign of the Abrahamic Covenant to all of Abram's descendants.

¹For refutation of the view that God made more than one covenant with Abraham, see Jeffrey J. Niehaus, "God's Covenant with Abraham," Journal of the Evangelical Theological Society 56:2 (June 2013):249-71.
God also gave Abram and Sarai the added assurance, that they would have a multitude of descendants, by changing their names.¹ He changed the name "Abram" ("High" or "Exalted Father") to "Abraham" ("Father of a Multitude"), and he changed the name "Sarai" ("My Princess" [perhaps a reference to her noble descent]) to "Sarah" ("Royal Princess" [from whom kings would come; cf. v. 16]). Abraham's name emphasized the number or vastness of his seed. Sarah's evidently stressed the royal nature of their line (vv. 6, 16, 20; cf. 12:2).

"The choice of the word be fruitful in verse 6 and multiply in verse 2 seems intended to recall the blessing of all humankind in 1:29: 'Be fruitful and multiply and fill the land,' and its reiteration in 9:1: 'Be fruitful and multiply and fill the land.' Thus the covenant with Abraham was the means through which God's original blessing would again be channeled to all humankind."²

Circumcision was "an everlasting covenant" (v. 7) because it marked the eternal salvation of the person who believed God as Abraham did, not because God wanted people to practice it for all of human history.³ God, for instance, has not commanded circumcision of the flesh for Christians (cf. Gal. 5:6).

Some Christians in the reformed traditions of Protestantism regard baptism as what God requires of us, today, in place of circumcision. They practice infant baptism, believing that this rite brings the infant into the "covenant community" (i.e., the church), and under God's care in a special sense. Some believe baptism saves the infant. Others believe it only makes the infant a recipient of special grace.

The Bible is quite clear, however, that baptism is a rite that believers should practice—after they trust Christ as their

---

¹See my comment on 1:4.
Savior—as a testimony to their faith. Undoubtedly there are some parallels between circumcision and baptism, nevertheless God did not intend baptism to replace circumcision. God did command circumcision of the Israelites in the Mosaic Law, but He has not commanded circumcision of Christians. We do not live under the Mosaic Law (Rom. 4:10-13; 6:14-15; 7:1-4; 10:4).

17:9-14 God wanted Abraham to circumcise all his of male servants, including slaves he had bought from a foreigner, as well as his children and grandchildren (vv. 12-13). The reason for this was that the Abrahamic Covenant would affect all who had a relationship with Abraham. Consequently they needed to bear the sign of that covenant. The person who refused circumcision was "cut off from his people," because, by refusing it, he was repudiating God's promises to Abraham ("he has broken My covenant," v. 14).

"This expression ["cut off from his people"] undoubtedly involves a wordplay on cut. He that is not himself cut (i.e., circumcised) will be cut off (i.e., ostracized). Here is the choice: be cut or be cut off."  

There are two main views as to the meaning of being "cut off from his people." Some scholars hold that it means excommunication from the covenant community (in this case Abraham's family) and its benefits. However, there is also later evidence in Scripture that points to execution as the meaning—sometimes by the Israelites, but usually by God, in the form of premature death. The threat of being "cut off" hung over the Israelite offender, like the threat of contracting...

---

1 Hamilton, p. 473.
a terminal disease, that might end one's life at any time, does today.

The person who refused to participate in circumcision demonstrated his lack of faith in God by his refusal. Thus he broke the Covenant of Circumcision (v. 14).

Only males underwent circumcision; females did not. In the patriarchal society of the ancient Near East, people considered that a girl or woman shared the circumcised condition of her father, if she was single, or her husband, if she was married.

Circumcision was a fitting symbol of belief in God's promises to Abraham for several reasons:

1. It would have been a frequent reminder to every circumcised male of God's promises involving seed (descendants), since circumcision was a medical procedure on the penis.

2. It involved the cutting off of flesh. The circumcised male was one who repudiated "the flesh" (i.e., the simply physical and natural aspects of life) in favor of trust in Yahweh and His spiritual promises. Thus the "flesh" was involved in circumcision both literally and figuratively.

3. It resulted in greater cleanliness of life and freedom from the effects of sin (i.e., disease and death). Literal circumcision is still performed today for hygienic reasons.

"Research indicates that other Middle Eastern cultures practiced circumcision. However, the Hebrews were unique in that they practiced infant circumcision, which, though medically risky if not properly performed, is less physically and

---

1See also Archer, *Encyclopedia of ...,* pp. 93-94.
psychologically traumatic than circumcisions performed at an older age."\(^1\)

Designating the eighth day after birth as the day of circumcision is one of the most amazing specifications in the Bible, from a medical standpoint. Why the eighth day?

"At birth, a baby has nutrients, antibodies, and other substances from his mother's blood, including her blood-clotting factors, one of them being prothrombin. Prothrombin is dependent on vitamin K for its production. Vitamin K is produced by intestinal bacteria, which are not present in a newborn baby. After birth prothrombin decreases so that by the third day it is only 30 percent of normal. Circumcision on the third day could result in a devastating hemorrhage.

"The intestinal bacteria finally start their task of manufacturing vitamin K, and the prothrombin subsequently begins to climb. On day eight, it actually overshoots to 110 percent of normal, leveling off to 100 percent on day nine and remaining there for the rest of a person's healthy life. Therefore the eighth day was the safest of all days for circumcision to be performed. On that one day, a person's clotting factor is at 110 percent, the highest ever, and that is the day God prescribed for the surgical process of circumcision.

"Today vitamin K (Aqua Mephyton) is routinely administered to newborns shortly after their delivery, and this eliminates the clotting problem. However, before the days of vitamin K injections, a 1953 pediatrics textbook recommended that

the best day to circumcise a newborn was the eighth day of life.\(^1\)

Another writer saw the eighth day as symbolic of completing a cycle of time corresponding to the Creation.\(^2\)

17:15-21 "Sarai [v. 15] signifies *my princess*, as if her honour were confined to one family only. *Sarah* signifies *a princess*—namely, of multitudes."\(^3\)

Abraham's laughter (v. 17) may have expressed his incredulity, but it was probably an amazed and joyful response to God's promise.\(^4\) Sarah's laughter (18:15) seems to have arisen from a spirit of unbelief. God did not criticize Abraham for laughing in delight, but He did rebuke Sarah when she laughed in doubt.

17:22-27 The writer's use of the phrase the "very same day" (v. 26) points to a momentous day, one of the most important days in human history (cf. Noah's entry into the ark, 7:13; and the Exodus, Exod. 12:17, 41, 51).

This fifth revelation from God advanced God's promises in six particulars:

1. Part of God's blessing would depend on Abraham's maintaining the Covenant of Circumcision, though the Abrahamic Covenant as a whole did not depend on this (vv. 1-2).

2. Many nations would come from Abraham (vv. 4-6).

3. The Abrahamic Covenant would be "everlasting" (vv. 7-8).

4. God would be the God of Abraham's descendants in a special relationship (vv. 7-8).

5. Sarah herself would give birth to the promised heir (v. 16).

---

\(^3\) Matthew Henry, p. 34.
6. This is also the first time God identified the Promised Land as "Canaan" by name (v. 8).

"Abraham's experiences should teach us that natural law [barrenness] is no barrier to the purposes and plans for [sic] God."\(^1\)

"Thus Abraham and Noah are presented as examples of those who have lived in obedience to the covenant and are thus 'blameless' before God, because both obeyed God 'as he commanded them' (17:23; cf. 6:22; 7:5, 9, 16)."\(^2\)

8. **Yahweh's visit to Abraham 18:1-15**

Chapters 18 and 19 constitute one integrated story, but we shall consider this episode in the Abraham narrative section by section. Like the Flood story, it has a chiastic structure, this time focusing on the announcement of the destruction of Sodom (19:12-13).\(^3\) Again there is a mass destruction, with only one man and his family escaping. Both stories end with the father's intoxication, and shameful treatment of the father by his children, that have consequences for future generations.\(^4\)

We can perceive the LORD's gracious initiative, that He extended toward Abraham, in His visit, namely, to eat and commune with the patriarch under the tree outside his tent. This was an evidence of intimate fellowship in Abraham's culture. On the basis of that close relationship, God guaranteed the soon arrival of the promised heir. In response to Sarah's "laugh" of unbelief, the LORD declared that nothing would be "too difficult" for Him.

This chapter and the next may seem at first reading to be extraneous to the purpose of the Abraham narrative, which is to demonstrate God's faithfulness to His promises to the patriarch, but they are not. Chapter 18 contributes the following:

1. It records another "promised heir" revelation (the sixth), this one in which God identified, for the first time, exactly when the heir would

---

\(^1\)Davis, *Paradise to ...,* p. 193.


\(^3\)See Wenham, *Genesis 16—50*, p. 41, for a diagram of the chiasm.

\(^4\)See ibid., pp. 43-44; and Mathews, *Genesis 11:27—50:26*, pp. 212-13; for more parallels.
appear (vv. 10, 14). With this revelation God strengthened Abraham's, and especially Sarah's, faith.

2. It fortifies Moses' emphasis on God's supernatural power at work to fulfill His divine promises—in spite of apparently impossible circumstances (vv. 9-15).

3. As a literary device, this chapter provides an interlude in the story line, and heightens suspense by prolonging the climax. We anticipate the arrival of the heir with mounting interest.

4. It presents Abraham as an intercessor, one of the roles of the prophets—of whom Abraham was one of the first (cf. 20:7).

5. It records God's announcement of judgment on Sodom and Gomorrah (vv. 16-33), which follows in chapter 19.

"The noon encounter in this chapter and the night scene at Sodom in the next are in every sense a contrast of light and darkness. The former, quietly intimate and full of promise, is crowned by the intercession in which Abraham's faith and love show a new breadth of concern. The second scene is all confusion and ruin, moral and physical, ending in a loveless squalor which is even uglier than the great overthrow of the cities."\(^1\)

"There is also a blatant contrast between how Abraham hosted his visitors (ch. 18) and how the Sodomites hosted the same delegation (ch. 19)."\(^2\)

18:1 Abraham was living near Hebron at this time ("the oaks of Mamre"; cf. 13:18).

18:2 The three "men" were "the Lord" (the Angel of Yahweh, vv. 13, 17, 20, 33) and "two angels" (19:1; cf. 18:22), who later visited Lot. If Abraham had previously met the Angel of the Lord, it seems likely that he would have recognized Him at once

---

\(^1\)Kidner, p. 131.

(cf. 17:1, 22). If he had not, Abraham definitely became aware of who this Angel was during this interview (cf. v. 25).

"It is safe to assume that every visible manifestation of God in bodily form in the Old Testament is to be identified with the Lord Jesus Christ."\(^1\)

"It appears that in Old Testament times God came in the form of a man, while in the incarnation He actually became man."\(^2\)

18:3-11 Abraham's hospitality reflects oriental custom as practiced in his day and, in some respects, even as it is practiced today in the Middle East.\(^3\) He was behaving more wisely than he realized, since he did not yet know that his guests were divine visitors (v. 8). "Where is your wife Sarah?" (v. 9) recalls God's earlier questions about Adam (3:9) and Abel (4:9).

18:12 Sarah's laugh "to herself," which the Lord nevertheless heard, sprang from a spirit of unbelief, due to long disappointment, as is clear from the Lord's response to it ("Is anything too difficult for the Lord?" v. 14). Abraham's laugh (17:17) did not draw such a response.

18:13 The fact that the Lord knew Sarah had laughed, and knew her thoughts, demonstrated His omniscience to Abraham and Sarah. This would have strengthened their faith in what He told them.

18:14 The Lord's rhetorical question, one of the great statements of Scripture, reminded the elderly couple of His supernatural power, and fortified their faith further (cf. Jer. 32:17, 27).

18:15 Sarah evidently "denied" that she had laughed, either from fear of the Lord's power or from fear of offending Him. Again, God

\(^1\) Walvoord, Jesus Christ ..., p. 54.
\(^2\) J. Oswald Sanders, The Incomparable Christ, p. 23.
\(^3\) See Thomson, 2:161-62.
built confidence in His word. If the L ORD could read Sarah's thoughts, could He not also open her womb?

Believers should never doubt God's promises, because nothing is impossible for Him.

9. Abraham's intercession for Lot 18:16-33

After God reviewed the reasons for sharing His plans for the destruction of Sodom with Abraham, He told the patriarch that He was about to investigate the wicked condition of that city. This news moved Abraham to ask God to be just in His dealings with the righteous there.

"A rhetorical question in each section—'Is anything too demanding for Yahweh?' [v. 14]; 'Shall not he who judges all the earth give right judgment?' [v. 25]—sounds the major motif of each unit [vv. 1-15 and vv. 16-33]. In both units it is some kind of noise that provokes Yahweh—Sarah's laugh and Sodom's groans."^1

18:16-21 God chose to reveal His intention to destroy Sodom and Gomorrah to Abraham. He did so because of His plans for Abraham. He evidently wanted to challenge Abraham to act wisely and nobly for justice. "Righteousness and justice" (v. 19) may be a hendiadys meaning "genuine righteousness" (cf. Mic. 3:1; 4:8). "I will go down now and see" (v. 21) is another anthropomorphism, this one emphasizing God's justice (cf. Ps. 113:4-6).

"In this section [vv. 1-21] we have an illustration of fellowship with God and some of its essential features. Fellowship is the crowning purpose of God's revelation (1 John i: 3). There is nothing higher than this, for man's life finds its complete fulfillment in union and communion with God. Notice the following elements:—

"1. Sacred Intimacy. ...
"2. Genuine Humility. ...

"3. Special Revelation.—Fellowship with God is always associated with the knowledge of His will. Servants do not know their master's purposes, but friends and intimates do. ...

"4. Unique Association.—The man who is in fellowship with God does not merely know the Divine will, but becomes associated with God in the carrying out of that will. ..."¹

God always thoroughly investigates a situation before passing judgment and sending calamity, because He is just.²

"The Lord would not arbitrarily destroy them [the people of Sodom]. As a fair and just judge, He would examine the evidence and then reward their deeds appropriately. The anthropomorphic language veils the ontological reality of God's omniscience, but the Lord seems to have been more concerned in this context with revealing Himself as a fair judge, emphasizing the importance of human responsibility and inviting Abraham to assume the role of an intercessor."³

18:22-33 This is the first time in Scripture that a man initiated a conversation with God. Abraham prayed—he interceded directly to God—for all the people of Sodom, not just Lot. Abraham's intercession raises several questions in the minds of thoughtful Bible students. Did Abraham succeed in his intercession, since, in the end, God destroyed Sodom and Gomorrah? Some interpreters believe he did not succeed, because he quit too soon:

¹Thomas, Genesis, pp. 161-62.
²See Tozer, pp. 92-95, for discussion of the justice of God as one of His attributes.
"... Abraham ceased asking before God ceased giving."¹

This conclusion assumes that Abraham's primary purpose was to get God to demonstrate mercy and to spare the cities for the sake of their few righteous inhabitants (v. 24). While this idea was obviously in Abraham's mind, his primary purpose seems rather to have been to secure justice (i.e., deliverance) for the righteous minority in their wicked city (vv. 23, 24). Secondarily, he wanted God to spare the city. This interpretation finds support in Abraham's appeal to the justice of God rather than to His mercy (v. 25). This appeal was the basis of his intercession. Abraham was jealous for the reputation of Yahweh among his neighbors. If this was indeed his primary purpose, Abraham succeeded in obtaining justice for the righteous in Sodom.

A second question arises from Abraham's method of interceding. Is his haggling with God an example we should follow? Evidently Abraham was not trying to wear God down by pressuring Him. Instead, he was seeking clarification from God as to the extent of His mercy. He wanted to find out just how merciful God would be in judging Sodom.

Why did Abraham stop with 10 righteous" people (v. 32)? Perhaps he had learned that the LORD would be merciful regardless of the number.² Perhaps he thought there would be at least 10 righteous in Sodom. If so, he underestimated the wickedness of the Sodomites, and, perhaps, he overestimated "righteous" Lot's influence over his neighbors (cf. 2 Pet. 2:7).

Will God spare a city or nation today because of the Christians in it? This passage is helpful in answering this question, because in it we can see that the presence of a godly minority does play a role in influencing God's judgment. A godly minority can delay judgment by promoting godliness.

¹Ibid., p. 116. See also Chris Wright, "Intercession or Irritation?" Third Way 29 (February 1983):18-19.
"Here begins the doctrine [sic doctrine] of the Remnant, the 'salt of the earth,' which from then till now has preserved corrupt societies from final disintegration."¹

However, a godly minority may not prevent God's judgment if "sin is exceedingly grave" (v. 20). God does not always choose to remove the righteous from the wicked before He judges the wicked, as He did in Lot's case. Nevertheless, "the Judge of all the earth" (v. 25) does "deal justly." We can see this when we take the long view. People alive now have yet to receive their final judgment from the divine Judge (cf. Rom. 2:4; 9:22; 1 Pet. 3:20; 2 Pet. 3:9, 15).

Abraham's shameless, bold persistence with God illustrates what Jesus had in mind when he taught the importance of these qualities in prayer (e.g., Luke 11:5-10; 18:1-8). Three-fold repetition is common in Scripture, but Abraham's doubling of it—six-fold—gives his request even more solemnity and weight.

This chapter illustrates a progression in Abraham's relationship with God, which is normal for those who have a trusting relationship with Him.

1. God revealed Himself to Abraham (v. 1).
2. Abraham welcomed God's revelation (vv. 2-3).
3. Fellowship resulted (vv. 4-8). They ate together.
4. This fellowship led to further revelation and greater understanding of God's will (vv. 9-22).
5. Having learned of God's purpose to judge the sinners, Abraham's response was to intercede for those under God's judgment (vv. 23-33).

¹Blaiklock, p. 29.
"It is extremely difficult, if not impossible, to pray effectively for lost souls if one is not convinced that lostness will ultimately result in literal, eternal punishment."  

The outstanding lesson of this section is, most likely, that since God is a righteous Judge, He will not destroy the righteous with the wicked.  

10. The destruction of Sodom ch. 19  

Chapters 18 and 19 "paint a vivid contrast between the respective patriarchal ancestors, Abraham and Lot, with an obvious moralistic intent (i.e., a demonstration that human initiatives—Lot's choice—always lead to catastrophe)."  

"In the development of the story two of the themes in counterpoint with Abraham and the Promise—the theme of Lot, the righteous man without the pilgrim spirit, and of Sodom, the standing example of worldly promise, insecurity (chapter 14) and decay—are now heard out to their conclusion. By a master-stroke of narrative, Abraham, who will outlive all such time-servers, is shown standing at his place of intercession (27), a silent witness of the catastrophe he has striven to avert. It is a superb study of the two aspects of judgment: the cataclysmic, as the cities disappear in brimstone and fire, and the gradual, as Lot and his family reach the last stages of disintegration, breaking up in the very hands of their rescuers."  

"Lot's move from a tent pitched near Sodom (13:12, 13) to a permanent residence in the city showed his willingness to exist with unbridled wickedness."  

---  

1 Davis, Paradise to ..., p. 199.  
3 Helyer, p. 84.  
4 Kidner, pp. 133-34.  
5 Davis, Paradise to ..., p. 200.
The traditional site of Sodom is near the south bay of the Dead Sea. Many scholars still support this location.¹

19:1-11 Lot was "sitting at the gate of Sodom" when the angels found him (v. 1). Sitting in the gate of a town was the equivalent of having an official position at city hall (2 Sam. 15:2-6; 1 Kings 22:10; Amos 5:10, 12, 15).² This was an indication that Lot had been recognized as a leader in Sodom (cf. v. 9).

"Archaeological excavations show that the gates of Palestinian cities often had stone benches or seats as a built-in part of the structure, so that people might sit there and wait for their friends, or engage in conversation with those whom they had agreed to meet at the gate."³

The men of Sodom wanted to have homosexual relations with Lot's visitors (v. 5).⁴ The Mosaic Law later regarded all homosexual behavior as a capital offense (Lev. 18:22; 20:13; cf. Rom. 1:26-27).⁵ Their lack of hospitality contrasts with Abraham's hospitality (18:1-8), and reflects their respective moral states.

"With the growing prominence of the homosexual movement, it is now being said that the sin was

³Free, pp. 61-62.
not homosexuality but inhospitality and gang rape.

"The claim goes that when Lot received the two angels (who appeared as men and were strangers to the residents of Sodom), he angered the locals because no one had examined their credentials. So when the locals demanded to 'know' them (v. 5), they only wanted to get acquainted with them. Lot, however, was bound to be hospitable to the strangers and to protect his guests, so he offered to sacrifice his daughters to the crowd. And had not the angels blinded the men of the city, then gang rape would have occurred. But, the argument concludes, homosexual relations were never the intent of the men of Sodom. This view gained initial prominence in 1955 and has been restated often.

"Exegetically, the word know can mean 'get acquainted with.' But it also means 'to have intercourse with' and is used with that meaning about nineteen times in Genesis. But statistics do not decide the matter. What decides it is the use in verse 8, where it obviously means that Lot's daughters had not had intercourse with a man. It certainly cannot mean they had never been acquainted with a man. If intercourse is the clear meaning in verse 8, then the same verb in verse 5 evidently has the same meaning (though in relation to homosexual relations in that verse). The men of Sodom lusted after the two men (angels), desiring homosexual relations with them."\(^1\)

Hospitality was more sacred than sexual morality to Lot (v. 8; cf. Judg. 19:23-25). Compromise with sinners distorts values. Lot considered his duty to his guests (hospitality) of greater importance than his duty to his children (protection). Lot

\(^{1}\text{Ryrie, } Biblical Answers ..., pp. 144-45.\)
offered his daughters to these men, but Abraham later offered his son to the LORD (ch. 22).

"When a man took in a stranger, he was bound to protect him, even at the expense of the host's life."¹

Archaeologists have found evidence that, at this time, it was not uncommon for houses to have very strong walls and heavy stone doors.² This may explain, in part, why the men of Sodom could not enter Lot's dwelling.

The moral blindness of the Sodomites led to their spiritual blindness, and even to physical "blindness" (v. 11; cf. 2 Kings 6:18).

"Apparently there was no attempt made in the city of Sodom to have a church for this crowd and to tell them that they were all right in spite of the fact that they practiced this thing."³

19:12-22 "In order to show that the rescue of Lot was in response to the prayer of Abraham, the narrative reads so that the words of the messengers ["swept away," vv. 15, 17] recall explicitly the words of Abraham's prayer in behalf of the righteous in the previous chapter ["sweep away," 18:23]."⁴

The rescue of Lot and his family was due ultimately to the LORD's mercy ("compassion," v. 16).

"This is the whole point of the story. God could have destroyed the city of Sodom with no word to Lot or Abraham (18:17). But because of God's

---

²Free, p. 62.
³McGee, 1:81.
mercy, His angels grabbed Lot and his family and brought them forcefully to safety."¹

"Zoar" (v. 22) means "insignificant" (in size at least) (cf. v. 20).

19:23-26 Josephus wrote that God sent a thunderbolt to set the city on fire (v. 24).² Probably the burning sodium sulfate ("brimstone and fire") that was raining down was what covered Lot's wife while she was lingering behind, and which turned her into a "pillar of salt" (v. 26).³

"The heaven's rain cannot be explained solely as a natural phenomenon, such as earthquake; it was exceptional, never again repeated, providing the parade illustration of the fiery eschatological judgment against the wicked (e.g., 2 Pet 2:6-9). The twin calamities of Noah and Lot illustrate Jesus' teaching on the suddenness of the coming of the Son of Man (Luke 17:26-30)."⁴

"... something tragic occurs in us when we fan the flames of an old lust and linger over the pleasurable scenes of a lifestyle that was ruining us. If, by the grace of God, He leads you out of a lifestyle of wrong, you will only hinder your recovery by looking back in longing. There's something about a second glance—about lingering over a selective memory—that makes us weak against the pull of what we left behind."⁵

All that Lot had gained by living in Sodom burned up like "wood, hay, and stubble" (cf. 1 Cor. 3:10-15). The Apostle Peter cited Lot as an example of the LORD's deliverance of the godly from the very trials that He uses to punish the ungodly

¹ The Nelson ..., p. 40.
⁵ Swindoll, p. 36.
(2 Pet. 2:6-10). John called believers to not love the world, or the things in the world—because they will pass away (1 John 2:15-17).

19:27-29 As in the Flood story, the writer focused the reader's attention on the response of individuals to the judgment, rather than on the destruction itself. Here those individuals are Lot's wife and Abraham. Later they will be Lot and his daughters. The picture of Abraham, in verses 27-28, standing on a mountain, and looking down toward Sodom and Gomorrah, is similar to that of Moses, interceding for Israel in the battle with the Amalekites (Exod. 17:11-12).¹ Lot's "prayer request" of the two angels, concerning Zoar (vv. 18-20), contrasts sharply with Abraham's prayer for Sodom (18:23-32).

"It is possible that God did see fit miraculously to time an earthquake at this precise moment, which could have released great quantities of gas, mixed sulphur with various salts found in abundance, and measurably increased the flow of asphalt seepage. Lightning could have ignited all, and the entire country been consumed as indicated. The Bible is clear that God does use natural means to accomplish His purpose when and to the extent that they are available. He may have done so here."²

"The substitution of Abraham for Lot in this sentence ["God remembered Abraham," v. 29; cf. 8:1] makes an important theological point. Lot was not saved on his own merits but through Abraham's intercession."³

Abraham rescued Lot twice: from the Mesopotamian kings (ch. 14) and from Sodom. "God remembered Abraham, and sent Lot out of the midst of the destruction" (v. 29).

¹Sailhamer, The Pentateuch ..., p. 173.
²Wood, A Survey ..., p. 56.
³Wenham, Genesis 16—50, p. 59.
Moses evidently included this account of Lot's incest for at least two reasons:

1. This story explains the origin of the Moabite and Ammonite nations, which played major roles in the later history of Israel as her inveterate enemies. "Moab" sounds like the words translated "from the father," and "Ammon" means "son of my kin."

"His [Lot's] legacy, Moab and Ammon (37f.), was destined to provide the worst carnal seduction in the history of Israel (that of Baal-Peor, Nu. 25) and the cruelest religious perversion (that of Molech, Lv. 18:21)."¹

2. This story also illuminates the degrading effect that living in Sodom had on Lot's daughters. The writer censured Lot's daughters by not naming them (cf. Ruth 4:1). Lot's older daughter was so desperate to marry, that she exaggerated the effects of the recent catastrophe, in order to—at least according to her way of thinking—"keep our family [line] alive through our father" (v. 31).

Previously Lot could not find room enough for himself and his livestock in the whole land (13:4-5). Now he was confined to a hole in a hill ("a cave," v. 30), where he hardly had room to turn around. Instead of being surrounded by servants and self-confident, he was alone and afraid.

"Lot was able to take his daughters out of Sodom, but he was not able to take ... Sodom out of his daughters."²

"Throughout the ancient Near East, incest between father and daughter was regarded as wrong, and OT law punishes more remote forms of incest with death (Lev 20:12). The fact that

---

²Davis, Paradise to ..., p. 206.
his daughters had to make him drunk shows that they were consciously flouting normal conventions. Because of his readers' moral assumptions, the narrator did not feel it necessary to excoriate Lot's daughters' behavior. The facts spoke for themselves."¹

"The story of Lot and his family should provide a sobering reminder that all of our decisions are significant, even that of where we live. Our moral environment significantly influences our lives. For this and many other reasons the New Testament constantly implores the believer to fellowship with those of like precious faith."²

"There are lives recorded in the Bible which have well been called beacons. There are men like Balaam, Saul, and Solomon, who started well, with every possible advantage, and then closed their careers in failure and disaster. Such a life was that of Lot, the nephew of Abraham. ... There is scarcely a life recorded in Scripture which is fuller of serious and solemn instructions for every believer."³

"The impact of the unit focuses more directly on a characterization of the father. The one who offered his daughters for the sexual gratification of his wicked neighbors now becomes the object of his daughters' incestuous relationship ... To be seduced by one's own daughters into an incestuous relationship with pregnancy following is bad enough. Not to know that the seduction had occurred is worse. To fall prey to the whole plot a second time is worse than ever."⁴

¹Wenham, Genesis 16—50, pp. 61-62.
²Davis, Paradise to ..., p. 207.
³Thomas, Genesis, p. 171. Paragraph division omitted.
⁴George W. Coats, Genesis, with an Introduction to Narrative Literature, p. 147.
"In tragic irony, a drunk Lot carried out the very act which he himself had suggested to the men of Sodom (19:8)—he lay with his own daughters.

"The account is remarkably similar to the story of the last days of Noah after his rescue from the Flood (9:20-27). There, as here, the patriarch became drunk with wine and uncovered himself in the presence of his children. In both narratives, the act had grave consequences. Thus at the close of the two great narratives of divine judgment, the Flood and the destruction of Sodom, those who were saved from God's wrath subsequently fell into a form of sin reminiscent of those who died in the judgment. This is a common theme in the prophetic literature (e.g., Isa 56—66; Mal 1)."1

From 2 Peter 2:6-9, we know that Lot was a "righteous" man, though from the record of him in Genesis, we might doubt that. He chose to live as, what the New Testament calls, a "fleshly" (NASB, HCSB) or "carnal" (AV, NKJV) or "worldly" (NIV, TNIV) believer (1 Cor. 3:3). First, he "raised his eyes and saw all the vicinity of the Jordan" (13:10). Then, he "chose for himself all the vicinity of the Jordan" (13:11). Then, he "settled in the cities of the vicinity of the Jordan and moved his tents as far as Sodom" (13:12). Then, he sat "at the gate of Sodom" and acted as one of its judges (19:1, 9). Then, "he hesitated"—as Sodom's destruction loomed (19:16). Finally, he ended up committing incest with his daughters in a cave (19:30-38). How far it is possible for a believer to depart from God's will when he or she keeps making selfish decisions!

A major revelation of this chapter is that it is foolish for a believer to become attached to the things of this world. They will corrupt him or her, and God may destroy these things swiftly and suddenly.

1Sailhamer, _The Pentateuch..._, p. 174.
"There is many a man today who may be a saved man, but due to his life style or where he lives, he loses his family, his influence, and his testimony."¹

11. Abraham's sojourn at Gerar ch. 20

Chapters 20 and 21 place Abraham in Philistine territory. Abraham had not yet obtained the Promised Land but had to live as a sojourner in a land not his own. In between the incidents involving Abimelech in these chapters, the writer has inserted the record of Isaac's birth, giving hope that the promises of God will yet be fulfilled.

Righteous Abimelech in this chapter, who was not a part of Abraham's family, contrasts with Lot who, in the previous chapter, behaved like a pagan, even though he was a part of Abraham's family.

"The stories about the jeopardy of the ancestress in pagan kings' harems form an inner frame around the Abraham cycle before the transition to the next cycle in 22:20—25:11. After Abraham's initial call to the Promised Land to become a great nation, he immediately jeopardizes Sarah in Pharaoh's harem. Now, immediately before the birth of the promised seed, he jeopardizes the matriarch in Abimelech's harem."²

The writer composed chapter 20 as another chiasm, with the focal point being Abimelech warning his servants (v. 8). Two dialogues constitute the main parts of the story: the one between God and Abimelech (vv. 3-7), and the one between Abimelech and Abraham (vv. 9-13).

"The focus of the narrative of chapters 20 and 21 is on the relationship between Abraham and the nations. Abraham's role is that of a prophetic intercessor, as in the promise 'all peoples on earth will be blessed through you' (12:3). He prayed for the Philistines (20:7), and God healed them (v. 17). In the narrative Abimelech plays the role of a 'righteous Gentile' with whom Abraham could live in peace and blessing. There is, then, an implied contrast in the narratives between chapters 19

¹McGee, 1:80.
²Waltke, Genesis, p. 284.
Abraham again misrepresented his relationship with Sarah, calling her his "sister" (cf. ch. 12). This was misrepresentation, because, though Sarah was indeed Abraham's half-sister (v. 12), she was also his wife. By presenting her as his sister Abraham was implying that she was not his wife.

"Abraham stopped asking 'What is right?' and began asking 'What is safe?' and this led to his downfall." 

"Abraham isn't the only one returning to the same sin again and again. Look back in your own life at the past few days or weeks. You and I return to the same patterns of sin. We bring the same things before the Lord again and again, don't we? It is easy to say, 'Abraham, you should have known better!' It is more difficult, however, to learn these basic lessons ourselves."

Abimelech took Sarah into his harem as a consequence of the patriarch's deception. Although some women are still attractive at 90 years old, Abimelech's motivation may have involved the desire to make a treaty with Abraham through marriage. Nevertheless God intervened to preserve Sarah's purity. He warned Abimelech in a dream about who Sarah was, and instructed him: to restore Sarah to her husband, to make restitution to Abraham, and to ask Abraham the "prophet" to intercede with God ("pray") for him (v. 7).

This chapter records another crisis in the story of God providing an heir for Abraham.

"Apparently, shortly after the announcement of a birth one year hence, Sarah is again taken into another man's harem. The reader is to infer that if there is an heir, he is in danger of being reckoned as Abimelech's not Abraham's. But Yahweh

---

2 Wiersbe, p. 97.
3 Swindoll, p. 37.
4 Leupold, 2:583.
intervenes once again and preserves Sarah (20.6b) and restores her to Abraham."¹

"... the episode is chiefly one of suspense: on the brink of Isaac's birth-story here is the very Promise put in jeopardy, traded away for personal safety. If it is ever to be fulfilled, it will owe very little to man. Morally as well as physically, it will clearly have to be achieved by the grace of God."²

Abraham, naturally, moved frequently since he had to find pasture for his flocks and herds (v. 1). He lived a semi-nomadic life.

"... his house and family remained at Gerar while he was down in Sinai"³

"Abimelech" was a title rather than a proper name (cf. 26:1; Judg. 8:31; 2 Sam. 11:21; Ps. 34 title). It meant "royal father" or "the king [Milku, a Canaanite deity mentioned in the Amarna letters] is my father."⁴

Dreams were one of the primary means by which God revealed Himself to individuals in Old Testament times, along with visions and personal encounters (cf. 15:1; Num. 12:6-8).

Adultery commonly drew the death penalty in the ancient Near East, which the Mosaic Code later specified (Lev. 20:10; Deut. 22:22). Other ancient Near Eastern texts refer to adultery as a "great sin" and a "great crime," reflecting the seriousness of this offense in the eyes of society.⁵

Abimelech claimed to head a "blameless" nation (v. 4), so we expect God to be gracious, since Abraham had prayed that the LORD would not destroy the righteous with the wicked (18:23-32). God was gracious with Abimelech and his people (v. 6; cf. v. 17). In contrast to the Sodomites, this community responded to God's warnings.

¹Helyer, p. 84.
²Kidner, p. 137.
³Albright, "Abram the ...," p. 48.
⁴Wenham, Genesis 16—50, p. 70. For an explanation of Abraham's behavior here, see my notes on 12:10-20. D. Garrett, Rethinking Genesis, p. 30, noted several parallels between the three similar events in 12:10-20; 20:1-18; and 26:1, 7-17.
⁵See The Anchor Bible Dictionary, s.v. "Adultery," by E. A. Goodfriend, 1:82-86.
"In king Abimelech we meet with a totally different character from that of Pharaoh [ch. 12]. We see in him a heathen imbued with a moral consciousness of right, and open to receive divine revelation, of which there is not the slightest trace in the king of Egypt."\(^1\)

"Like the sailors and the king of Nineveh in the book of Jonah (1:16; 3:6-9), the Philistines responded quickly and decisively to God's warning. Like Jonah, however, Abraham in this narrative was a reluctant prophet."\(^2\)

Moses identified Abraham as a "prophet" (v. 7). This is the first explicit reference to a prophet in the Old Testament. Prophets received direct revelations from God, spoke to others for God, and praised God (1 Chron. 25:1). Here the role of the prophet includes that of intercessor, as it does elsewhere in Scripture.

"The term indicates more a relationship to God than an ability to speak for Him. Abraham's relationship to God was the basis for God's command that Sarah be restored to her husband."\(^3\)

Fear for his safety evidently led Abraham to act as he did this second time, even though his previous deception in Egypt had been unsuccessful. Even the repeated promises of God did not drive out the fear of potential danger from Abraham's heart. God used a "pagan" king to rebuke the righteous prophet—who had just recently boldly pleaded for Sodom—when Abraham's faith failed.

This incident shows and contrasts God's faithfulness to Abraham and Abraham's unfaithfulness to God (cf. 2 Tim. 2:13). God's chosen ones cannot destroy His ultimate plans for them by failing. Abraham learned that Yahweh will maintain His covenant and fulfill His promises, in spite of the opposition and interference of influential and powerful individuals.

God requires His people to maintain purity in marriage, and to look to Him to provide what He has promised.

---

\(^1\) Keil and Delitzsch, 1:242.  
\(^3\) The Nelson ..., p. 42.
12. The birth of Isaac 21:1-21

God proved faithful to His promise—to give Abraham a son from Sarah—by providing Isaac. Abraham and Sarah responded with obedience and praise to the fulfillment of this promise. Ishmael, however, became a threat to Abraham's heir, Isaac, and consequently Abraham sent Ishmael away, into the wilderness, where God continued to provide for him and his mother.

God's provision and Abraham and Sarah's response 21:1-7

The emphasis in this brief section is on God's faithfulness and power, both in keeping His promise, and in miraculously providing an heir through Sarah, in spite of Abraham's old age (v. 2; cf. 17:16; 18:14). Note the repetition: "as He had promised," and "of which God had spoken" (vv. 1-2). The tension of anticipating the birth of Abraham's heir finally subsides, but only temporarily.

God "visited" Sarah (AV, NKJV, ESV, RSV), "came to" her (HCSB), "took note" of her (NASB), "was gracious" to her (NIV, TNIV), and "showed favor" to her (NEB, v. 1). The Hebrew word used here is a common metaphor that describes God's intervention in nature and human affairs. It also appears when God intervened to save the Israelites from Egyptian bondage (50:24-25; Exod. 4:31), and when He ended a famine (Ruth 1:6). It also occurs when He caused Hannah to conceive (1 Sam. 2:21), and when He brought the Jewish exiles home from the Babylonian Captivity (Jer. 29:10). Thus this word's presence here highlights the major significance of Isaac's birth.

McGee listed nine similarities between the birth of Isaac and the birth of Jesus: (1) They had both been promised. (2) With both births there was a long interval between the promise and the fulfillment. (3) The announcements of the births seemed incredulous and impossible to Sarah and to Mary. (4) Both Isaac and Jesus were named before their births. (5) Both births occurred at God's appointed time. (6) Both births were miraculous. (7) Both sons were a particular joy of their fathers. (8) Both sons were obedient to their fathers, even unto death. (9) The miraculous birth of Isaac is a picture of the resurrection of Christ.¹ Also, both births resulted in their mothers' rejoicing in God's goodness to them.

¹McGee, 1:88.
Abraham's obedience, in naming his son "Isaac" (17:19) and circumcising him on the eighth day (cf. 17:12), was an expression of worship.

Isaac's name ("Laughter") was appropriate for two reasons:

1. Isaac would be a source of joy to his parents as the fulfillment of God's promised seed.

2. Both Abraham and Sarah had "laughed"—in delight and disbelief respectively—when told that God had chosen to bless them by giving them a son so late in life (17:17; 18:12).¹

The expulsion of Ishmael and God's care of him and Hagar 21:8-21

All was not well in Abraham's household, even though God had provided the promised heir. Ishmael was a potential rival to Isaac's inheritance. This section records another crisis in the story of Abraham's heir. This was the second time that Sarah treated Hagar harshly and drove her from Abraham's compound (cf. 16:6). Waltke pointed out six parallels between Hagar and Ishmael's trek, and Abraham and Isaac's (ch. 22).²

Normally, in ancient Near Eastern culture, the son of a concubine became the heir of his mother but not of his father (cf. Judg. 9:1-3). Now that Abraham had a son by his wife, Sarah did not want Ishmael to share Isaac's inheritance. Weaning would normally have occurred at age two or three (cf. 1 Sam. 1:22-24; Hos. 1:8; 2 Macc. 7:27-28). The Hebrew word translated "mocking" (v. 9) comes from the same root as Isaac's name, and means "laughing." However, this participle is in the intensive form in Hebrew here, indicating that Ishmael was not simply "laughing," but cruelly ridiculing Isaac (cf. Gal. 4:29, "persecuted" him). Ishmael disliked Isaac, like Hagar had despised Sarai (16:4). Abraham, understandably, felt distressed by this situation, since he loved both Ishmael and Isaac (cf. 17:18).

"... Abraham's insight into the deeper issues of the case was in this instance blurred by the very strong affection he felt for Ishmael."³

¹On the alternate reading of verses 6-7 as "God has made a joke of me laugh at me ....," see Isaac Rabinowitz, "Sarah's Wish (Gen. XXI 6-7)," Vetus Testamentum 29 (July 1979):362-63. This reading has not won support from most commentators.
²Waltke, Genesis, p. 292.
³Leupold, 2:602.
"... even in that culture it was reprehensible to send Ishmael away. When a surrogate wife had borne a son to one's husband, that mother and child could not be dismissed even if the first wife subsequently gave birth to a son. This partly explains Abraham's reluctance to do what Sarah demanded (v. 11)."¹

God appeared to Abraham again (the seventh revelation), to assure him that Sarah's desire was in harmony with His will (cf. 17:19-21). He encouraged Abraham to divorce Hagar.

"But how could God ask Abraham to do evil if divorce is always a sin? The answer must be that divorce in this case is either not a sin or else is the lesser of two evils."²

For other instances where God apparently commanded divorce, see Deuteronomy 21:10-14 and Ezra 9—10. Since God makes the rules, He alone can also alter them according to His sovereign will.

"The key to Sarah's demand lies in a clause in the laws of Lipit-Ishtar where it is stipulated that the father may grant freedom to the slave woman and the children she has borne him, in which case they forfeit their share of the paternal property."³

The "laws of Lipit-Ishtar" were laws that governed life in Mesopotamia that antedated the Mosaic Law.

The focus of this revelation is a clarification of God's purposes for each of the two sons. God would bless Abraham through Ishmael as well as through Isaac.

"As Cain suffered both banishment from the divine and protection by the divine, so Ishmael is both loser and winner, cut off from what should be his but promised a significant lineage."⁴

¹ The Nelson ..., p. 43. See also Wood, A Survey ..., p. 28.
³ Sarna, Understanding Genesis, p. 147.
⁴ Hamilton, The Book ... Chapters 18—50, p. 81.
The concluding description of Ishmael's experiences (vv. 14-21) provides essential information that is necessary to understand and appreciate later references to him and his descendants in the text: "I will make a great nation of him" (v. 18), and "he lived in the wilderness of Paran" (v. 21). Ishmael became the father of 12 sons (25:13-16), as Jacob also did. From Ishmael's sons came the Arab nations, that have ever since been the chief antagonists of the Israelites. The term "Arab" (someone from Arabia) came into use for the first time in the ninth century B.C.¹ Hagar chose a wife for her son from her homeland: Egypt (v. 21).

"In this respect she does not display the wisdom used by Abraham in choosing, as he did, a god-fearing wife for his son."²

"The picture of Ishmael as the rejected son is complete: he is the son of a slave woman, married to an Egyptian, lives outside normal social bounds, and is remembered for his hostilities."³

God not only makes promises, but He also makes provision. His provision of what He has promised results in great joy, and should lead to separation from whatever might hinder His program of blessing. (See Paul's use of this account in Galatians 4:21-31.)

13. Abimelech's treaty with Abraham 21:22-34

"This scene occurs at the same time as the events of Scene 6 [21:1-21] but focuses on different characters and tensions. This second conflict with Abimelech creates a bracket around the Isaac birth narrative. Whereas the first conflict, Scene 5 (20:1-18), concerned jeopardy of the seed, the second conflict, Scene 7 (21:22-34), concerns jeopardy of the land (i.e., well rights)."⁴

God's blessing of Abraham resulted in his material prosperity, among other things. In response to Abimelech's initiative, Abraham agreed to make a covenant, or treaty of peaceful coexistence, with him. This treaty enabled

---
¹Wenham, Genesis 16—50, p. 156.
²Leupold, 2:609.
⁴Waltke, Genesis, p. 298.
Abraham to live, serve, and worship God freely, without worry or threat from his neighbors, in the Promised Land.

The writer may have included this incident in the text, partially because it records the testimony of a Gentile king to God's faithfulness (v. 22), but also to record Abraham's strong testimony to God's faithfulness (vv. 32-33). Furthermore it sets the stage for Isaac's dealings with Abimelech (ch. 26).

Since Abraham had become a powerful individual in the land, as a result of God's blessing, King Abimelech initiated a bilateral treaty with him for his own protection. This was evidently the same "Abimelech" whom Abraham had dealt with previously (ch. 20). They made a parity covenant (i.e., between equals, vv. 31-32). This is the first of several parity covenants in Genesis (cf. 26:28; 31:43-45). This covenant treaty was a remarkable admission of Abraham's standing and blessing by God, and an expression of Abimelech's confidence in the future existence of the patriarch's family.

The birth of Isaac seems to have produced a much stronger faith in Abraham (cf. v. 14). Note Abraham's immediate response, from then on, to God's instructions to him (cf. 22:3).

"Phicol" (v. 22) seems to have been a title rather than a proper name, probably of Anatolian origin.1

Wells were extremely important in the life of semi-nomads like Abraham (v. 25).2 Abraham, being a wealthy owner of large flocks and herds, especially needed much water for his animals.

"Beersheba," one of the more important sites throughout Old Testament times, meaning "Oath of Seven" or "Oath Well," became Abraham's possession with the payment of "seven ewe lambs" (v. 28; cf. 26:33).3

Critics of the historicity of the patriarchal narratives have pointed out that references of "the land of the Philistines" in Genesis (vv. 32, 34; cf. 26:1) are evidence that the Bible contains errors. These critics believe that the

---


Philistines did not enter Canaan until about 1200 B.C., whereas Abraham evidently lived about 800 years earlier. They base this assumption on the lack of archaeological evidence of Philistine occupation. But this is an argument from silence. Perhaps one day archaeological evidence will be discovered that validates the presence of Philistines in Canaan in Abraham’s day.1

One explanation of this reference to Philistines is that the Philistines of Genesis were peaceful, and those of Judges and later were warlike. Perhaps the same name describes an earlier but entirely different race of people. They may have resembled the later thirteenth-century Philistines, who also emigrated from the Aegean area into Palestine.2 Or, to consider another possibility, perhaps the Philistines of 2000 B.C. were Minoan and thus peaceful, whereas those of 1200 were Mycenean and thus warlike.3 Other explanations follow:

"I hold that the Philistines came from the neighboring coast of Africa, perhaps from Lower Egypt, though Josephus seems to place Caphtor, their ancient home, higher up the valley of the Nile."4

"I suggest that the Philistines of Genesis represent the first wave of Sea Peoples from the Aegean, and that the later Philistines represent the last wave (cf. 1200 B.C.)."5

"Biblical historical data are accurate to an extent far surpassing the ideas of any modern critical students, who have consistently tended to err on the side of hypercriticism."6

By planting a tree, Abraham indicated his determination to stay in that region. Tamarisk trees (v. 33) were long-lived and evergreen.7 This tree

---

1See Free, pp. 65-66.
4Thomson, 2:288.
5Hamilton, The Book ... Chapters 18—50, p. 94. See also Archer, Encyclopedia of ..., pp. 94-96.
6Albright, The Archaeology ..., p 229.
was an appropriate symbol of the enduring grace of the faithful God, whom Abraham now recognized as "the Everlasting God" (*El Olam*).

"The Hebrew word 'olam is often translated with 'eternal,' 'eternity,' but it does not contain the conception of timelessness or otherworldly time but rather of time which extends forward and backward without end."\(^1\)

Abraham now owned the first, small part—like a first installment—of the land God had promised him.

"By granting Abraham rights to a well, Abimelek [*sic*] had made it possible for Abraham to live there permanently and had acknowledged his legal right at least to water. In other words, after so many delays the promises of land and descendants at last seem on their way to fulfillment."\(^2\)

In contrast to Abraham's earlier fear of Abimelech (ch. 20), we now see him boldly standing up to this powerful king. His changed attitude evidently resulted from God's grace in blessing the patriarch as He had promised.

"The reader is forced to ask why the author constantly draws attention to the fact that Abraham was dwelling with the Philistines during this time [cf. v. 34]. The purpose of such reminders may be to portray Abraham as one who had yet to experience the complete fulfillment of God's promises."\(^3\)

Peaceful interpersonal relationships with those who acknowledge God enable the believer to proclaim his or her faith freely (cf. 1 Tim. 2:1-4).

### 14. The sacrifice of Isaac 22:1-19

In obedience to God's command, Abraham took his promised heir to the land of Moriah to sacrifice him to the LORD. Because Abraham was willing to slay his "only begotten son," God graciously restrained him from killing Isaac, and promised to bless him further for his obedience. Abraham memorialized the place by calling it: "The LORD Will Provide."

---

\(^1\) von Rad, p. 237.


\(^3\) Sailhamer, *The Pentateuch...*, p. 177.
"At the age of 75, Abraham enrolled in the 'School of Faith.' Now he was over 100, and he was still having soul-stretching experiences. We are never too old to face new challenges, fight new battles, and learn new truths. When we stop learning, we stop growing; and when we stop growing, we stop living."  

Warren Wiersbe reviewed the tests that Abraham underwent: the *family* test, when he had to leave his loved ones and step out to a new land; the *famine* test, when he went down into Egypt; the *fellowship* test, when Lot separated from him; the *fight* test, when he defeated the Mesopotamian kings; the *fortune* test, when he said no to Sodom's wealth; the *fatherhood* test, when Sarah got impatient with God; and the *farewell* test, when Ishmael left him. We might call the sacrifice of Isaac Abraham's *filial* test, because it tested his love for God and Isaac.

God called on Abraham to make five great sacrifices: his native country, his extended family, his nephew Lot, his son Ishmael, and his son Isaac. Each sacrifice involved something naturally dear to Abraham, but each resulted in greater blessings from God. Previously, God had called Abraham to cut himself off from his past (12:1); now He called him to cut himself off from his future.

This story also demonstrates the strong confidence that Abraham had in God at this time. "He considered that God is able to raise people even from the dead" (Heb. 11:19). This is why Abraham was willing to slay Isaac. Evidently Abraham concluded that if God could enable him and Sarah to bear a son so late in life, God could raise Isaac from the dead (cf. Rom. 4:19-21).

Jewish tradition refers to this chapter as the Akedah, from the Hebrew word *wayya'aqod*, translated "bound," in verse 9.

"With this chapter we reach the climax of the faith life of Abraham—the supreme test and the supreme victory."  

---

1Wiersbe, p. 103.  
2Ibid.  
"The seventh crisis [I believe it is the eleventh] comes at a point in the narrative when we least expect it and is without question the greatest crisis of all. After all obstacles have seemingly been surmounted and all potential rivals eliminated, God now asks for Abraham's only son whom he loves. The gracious intervention of God and the reaffirmation of the basic promise of 12.1-3 in 22.15-18 would seem to conclude the Abraham cycle at the moment when faith triumphs over the greatest obstacle of all, death."

"Our faith is not really tested until God asks us to bear what seems unbearable, do what seems unreasonable, and expect what seems impossible."

22:1-8 This incident took place some time after the events recorded in the chapters immediately preceding this one, evidently several years later.

God's revelation to Abraham (His eighth recorded in Scripture) came to test Abraham's faith (i.e., to prove its character and strength; cf. James 2:21-23).

"Life is a succession of tests, for character is only possible through discipline."

The Hebrew text says that "the God" tested Abraham (v. 1). The presence of the definite article before "God" underlines the fact that it was the true God, genuine Deity, who made this request, not a false god or a demon (cf. 41:32). The true God was testing Abraham's love for Himself, and not simply his faith (v. 2). Such testing (Heb. nsh) shows what someone is really like, and it usually involves difficulty or hardship (cf. Exod. 15:25; 16:4; 20:20; Deut. 8:2, 16; 13:3; Judg. 2:22; 3:1, 4; 1 Kings 10:1; Job 1—2; Dan. 1:12, 14).

---

1Helyer, pp. 84-85.
2Wiersbe, p. 104.
3Thomas, Genesis, p. 195.
"This scene presents the radical nature of true faith: tremendous demands and incredible blessings."\(^1\)

"The ... best approach to the passage is that God commanded an actual human sacrifice and Abraham intended to obey Him fully."\(^2\)

"'How could God demand a human sacrifice, when He is on principle unalterably opposed to such a practice?' The answer must be given as follows: What God actually wanted Abraham to give was the *spiritual* sacrifice of his son. ... But then the problem arises, Why did God ask for the spiritual sacrifice in the form of a material sacrifice? ... God asked for one thing only: the spiritual surrender, the giving back to Him of this great gift which He had granted to Abraham."\(^3\)

The "land of Moriah" (v. 2; lit. "Where the L ORD Provides" or "Where the L ORD Appears") was the mountainous country around Jerusalem. This area was located about 45 miles north of Beersheba, which would have been a two-day or a three-day journey for Abraham and Isaac. During this time, Abraham would have had many temptations and opportunities to turn back. "Moriah" may have been the name the Israelites gave this area after this event. On these mountains, God's angel later appeared to David, who built an altar to the L ORD (2 Sam. 24:16-25). Here also, Solomon built his temple (2 Chron. 3:1), and Jesus Christ died. A mountain was a suitable place for Abraham to meet God (cf. v. 14).\(^4\)

Verses 1 and 2 refer to a second time God called Abraham, that parallels the first call in 12:1-3, in which He told Abraham to leave his home to go to another place.

---

\(^1\)Waltke, *Genesis*, p. 301.

\(^2\)Davis, *Paradise to ...*, p. 217.

\(^3\)Leupold, 2:617.

\(^4\)See Appendix 5 at the end of these notes for an article about Jerusalem's Temple Mount.
"The repetition of these motifs forms an inclusio in the narrative structure of the Abrahamic narrative, pointing out the complete cycle in the patriarch's experience. The allusion to the former call would also have prompted obedience to the present one, in many ways a more difficult journey in God's direction."¹

The LORD was not asking Abraham to make any greater sacrifices to Him, the true God, than his pagan neighbors were willing to make to their false gods. Canaanite religion involved child sacrifice, but we do not know for sure that the Canaanites practiced it as early as Abraham's time.²

"The demand [to sacrifice Isaac] was indeed only made to prove that Abraham was not behind the heathen in the self-denying surrender of his dearest to his God, and that when the demand had been complied with in spirit, the external fulfillment might be rejected."³

Matthew Henry suggested several questions that Abraham must have asked himself as he and Isaac made their trek northward: Am I not going to disobey God's command against murder (9:6)? How can I do this to my own son? Why did God not explain His reason for commanding me to do this? How will God fulfill His promises to me if I kill Isaac? If I do this, how can I ever look Sarah in the face again? Will this action not cause the pagan people of the land to disrespect the LORD?⁴

Abraham may have told his servants to stay behind (v. 5) so they would not try to restrain him from killing Isaac. The three verbs that Abraham used in verse 5 are all intensive in Hebrew (cf. 12:2): "We are determined to go," "We are determined to worship," and "We are determined to return." The words used to describe Isaac in this chapter, as well as what Moses said of

---

³Delitzsch, 2:91.
⁴Matthew Henry, p. 40.
him, indicate that he was probably a young man at this time (v. 6). Josephus, reflecting the belief of the Jews of his day, wrote that he was 25 years old.¹

"There are indications to suggest that the meaning of Abba in Mark 14:36 is to be found in the light of its whole context and Genesis 22. Jesus' final trial in Gethsemane appears to be modelled on the supreme trial of Abraham and Isaac. Despite his horror and anguish before the prospect of an imminent sacrificial death, Isaac calls to Abraham his Abba and, as a faithful son, obeys the voice of God speaking through his father. Parallel to this, Jesus says Abba to God in the same way that Isaac does to Abraham. In this context, Abba has the meaning of 'father' in the sense of a relationship to a devoted and obedient son. In Jesus' supreme hour of trial, it is his trust and obedience to God as Abba that carries him through, even to the cross. This meaning of Abba may prompt further study of the significance of son in other NT texts to discover whether the obediential aspect may be more prominent than has been suspected. The father-son relationship in Genesis 22 may be a far-reaching New Testament model of that between Jesus and God."²

Abraham referred to the sacrifice he would offer, supposedly Isaac—but in reality God's substitute for Isaac—as "the lamb." This statement (v. 8), of course, proved prophetic of Jesus Christ as well (John 1:29). Abraham spoke better than he knew.

22:9-19 Isaac demonstrated his own faith clearly in this incident. He must have known what his father intended to do to him, yet he submitted willingly (v. 9). Josephus recorded a supposed conversation between Abraham and Isaac at this point, in

¹Josephus, Antiquities of ..., 1:13:2.
which Abraham explained to his son what he was about to do and why, and in which Isaac verbalized his willingness to die.\(^1\)

"If Abraham displays faith that obeys, then Isaac displays faith that cooperates. If Isaac was strong and big enough to carry wood for a sacrifice, maybe he was strong and big enough to resist or subdue his father."\(^2\)

The possibility of Isaac resisting may have been the reason why Abraham bound him on the altar.

"The sacrifice was already accomplished in his [Abraham's] heart, and he had fully satisfied the requirements of God."\(^3\)

"The test, instead of breaking him, brings him to the summit of his lifelong walk with God."\(^4\)

"The temptation does not aim to uncover the evil in a saint of God but rather to make apparent what good God has wrought in this faithful believer."\(^5\)

God had previously told Abraham to offer Isaac as a sacrifice (v. 2), but now He told him not to sacrifice him ("Do not reach out your hand," v. 12). Sometimes, even today, we may proceed on a course of action believing that God has called us to it. Yet afterward, we may become equally convinced that He wants us to do the very opposite. We should not necessarily conclude that we were wrong in the first case. God may be testing our faith, as He did Abraham's.

As a result of this incident, Abraham gained a greater appreciation of God as the One who will provide or "look out for" him (Yahweh-jireh, lit. "The Lord Sees," v. 14).

---

\(^2\)Hamilton, *The Book ... Chapters 18—50,* p. 110.
\(^3\)Keil and Delitzsch, 1:250.
\(^5\)Leupold, 2:617.
"... the whole issue in this narrative has consistently turned on the question, not whether Yahweh would 'appear' but whether He would 'provide.'"\(^1\)

Also, the LORD acknowledged Abraham's faith ("I know that you fear God," v. 12; cf. 18:21; Job 1:1, 8; 2:3).

"The story reaches its climax when Abraham demonstrated his loyalty (22:12, 15-18) by obeying God's command (cf. 26:5). God then elevated the patriarch to the status of a favored vassal who now possessed a ratified promise, comparable to the royal grants attested in the ancient Near East. God contextualized His self-revelation to Abraham (and to the readers of the narrative) within the relational, metaphorical framework of a covenant lord. Thus one should not be surprised to hear Him speak in ways that reflect the relational role He assumed within this metaphorical framework."\(^2\)

"... where the phrases 'fear of God' and 'fearing God' occur in the Old Testament [cf. v. 12], they refer not to a particular form of strong emotions but rather to their consequences, i.e., to obedience (Gen. 20.11; 42.18; II Kings 4.1; Isa. 11.2; Prov. 1.7; Job 1.1, 8). It would be more correct to interpret the phrase 'fear of God' simply as a term for obedience to the divine commands."\(^3\)

Abraham's sacrifice of the ram (v. 13), like Noah's sacrifice after he left the ark (8:18—9:17), expressed thanks and devotion to God—and anticipated His benevolence toward future generations. A "burnt offering" was most appropriate, because it symbolized complete surrender to God (cf. Lev. 1).

---

\(^1\)Ibid., 2:632.
\(^3\)von Rad, pp. 241-42.
This is the first explicit mention in the Bible of the substitutionary sacrifice of one life for another.

The LORD appeared again ("The angel of the LORD called to Abraham a second time from heaven," the ninth revelation) at the end of his test (v. 15). God "swore" by Himself to confirm His promises to Abraham (v. 16). God so swore ("By Myself I have sworn") only this one time in His dealings with the patriarchs. Moses referred to this oath later in Israel's history (24:7; 26:3; 50:24; Exod. 13:5, 11; 33:1; et al.; cf. Heb. 6:13-14).

"... the main point of Genesis 22:9-14 is not the doctrine of the Atonement. It is portraying an obedient servant worshiping God in faith at great cost, and in the end receiving God's provision."¹

One writer suggested that 22:15-18 really "... describes the establishment of the covenant of circumcision first mentioned in Genesis 17."² However, the lack of reference to circumcision in the immediate context makes this interpretation tenuous.

For the first and last time in Genesis, the LORD swore an oath in His own name guaranteeing His promise (v. 16; cf. Heb. 6:13-14). God thus reinforced, reemphasized, and extended the promise that He had given formerly (12:1-3), because Abraham trusted and obeyed Him (vv. 17-18). "Greatly bless" and "greatly multiply" (v. 17) translate a Hebrew idiom in which the verb is doubled to stress the certainty of the action.

"Here again God promised Abraham that he would become the recipient of the [Abrahamic] covenant blessings. The covenant was not based on obedience, nor was the perpetuity of the covenant based on obedience—but rather the reception of covenant blessings was conditioned

¹Ross, "Genesis," p. 65.
on obedience. Remember, an unconditional covenant may have conditional blessings.\(^1\)

Abraham's "seed" (v. 18) refers not only to Isaac but also to Messiah (cf. Gal. 3:16). It is important to consider the context of any reference to the seed of Abraham in Scripture, in order to interpret which seed is in view.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>The Four Seeds of Abraham in Scripture</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>NATURAL SEED</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>All physical descendants of Abraham</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Genesis 12:1-3, 7; et al.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>NATURAL-SPRITUAL SEED</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Believing physical descendants of Abraham</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Romans 9:6, 8; Galatians 6:16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>SPIRITUAL SEED</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Believing non-physical descendants of Abraham</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Galatians 3:6-9, 29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>ULTIMATE SEED</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jesus Christ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Galatians 3:16</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Having passed his test, Abraham then returned to the well he had purchased at Beersheba and lived there (v. 19).

Moses probably preserved the details of this story because this test involved the future of God's promised seed, Isaac, and, therefore, the faithfulness of God. He probably did so also because this incident illustrates

\(^1\)Pentecost, *Thy Kingdom ...*, pp. 66-67.
God's feelings in giving His Son as the Lamb of God (cf. John 1:29; 3:16). Other themes in this chapter include testing and obedience, the relationship between God and man, and the relationship between father and son.\(^1\)

Every time Abraham made a sacrifice for God, the LORD responded by giving Abraham more.

1. Abraham left his homeland, and God gave him a new one.

2. Abraham left his extended family, and God gave him a much larger family.

3. Abraham offered the best of the land to Lot, and God gave him more land.

4. Abraham gave up the King of Sodom's reward, and God gave Abraham more wealth.

5. Abraham gave up Ishmael, and God made Ishmael the father of a multitude of Abraham's posterity.

6. Abraham was willing to give up Isaac, and God allowed Isaac to live, and, through him, gave Abraham numerous seed.

In each case, God gave Abraham a deeper relationship with Himself, as well as more material prosperity. Note the closeness of this fellowship in Abraham's response to God's revelations: "Here I am" (vv. 1, 11).

God has not promised Christians great physical blessings (cf. 2 Tim. 3:2), but whenever we make a sacrifice for Him, He at least gives us a deeper relationship with Himself (cf. John 15:14). For this reason we should not fear making any personal sacrifice for God.

Note, too, that what God called Abraham to give back to Him, each time, was something that He had provided, or would provide, for Abraham supernaturally—in faithfulness to His promise. Sometimes God tests our

faith by asking us to give back to Him what He has supernaturally and faithfully provided, not just what He has provided through regular channels.

This test of Abraham's faith is the climax of his personal history. It is the last major incident in the record of his life.

"... God does not demand a literal human sacrifice from His worshippers, but the spiritual sacrifice of an unconditional denial of the natural life, even to submission to death itself."1

The faithful believer will surrender to God whatever He may ask, all the while trusting in God's promise of provision and blessing.

"Faith does not demand explanations; faith rests on promises."2

15. The descendants of Nahor 22:20-24

The testing of Abraham's faith was complete with the sacrifice of Isaac. The divine Author of Genesis (cf. 2 Tim. 3:16) therefore brought the history of his life to a close, and began to set the scene for related events in Isaac's life.

This section signals a change in the direction of the narrative. It moves from Abraham to the next generation, and its genealogical connections with the East. The record of Nahor's 12 sons prepares the way for the story of Isaac's marriage. It also shows that Rebekah (meaning "Heifer," "Soft," or "Supple") was the daughter of Bethuel's wife (v. 23), not the daughter of Bethuel's concubine (v. 24). Isaac's marriage was very important, because Isaac was the heir of the promises (ch. 24). His wife would produce the next generation of the promised "seed."

Only a few of the individuals named as descendants of Abraham's brother Nahor appear elsewhere in Scripture. The most important individuals were Rebekah and her father Bethuel. This is a "segmented" genealogy, designed to establish family relationships—not a "linear" genealogy, which identifies the final descendant as the legitimate successor of the first (cf. Ruth 4:18-22).

1Keil and Delitzsch, 1:252.
2Wiersbe, p. 104.
16. The purchase of Sarah's tomb ch. 23

Abraham's purchase of a burial site in the Promised Land demonstrated his intention to remain in Canaan, rather than go back to his native homeland. Since he was a "stranger and a foreign resident" in Canaan (v. 4), his friends and relatives probably expected him to bury Sarah back in their home area, namely, Mesopotamia.

The two major events contained in this chapter continue Moses' emphasis on God's faithfulness. They do so by recording the death of Abraham's wife, the mother of his heir, and by showing the beginning of the fulfillment of the land promise that God had given Abraham.

23:1-2 Sarah is the only woman whose age at death ("127 years" old) the Scriptures record (v. 1). She is also the only woman whose name God changed (17:15). This notation of her age illustrates her importance. Isaac was 37 years old when his mother died. Abraham died at the age of 175 (25:8), 38 years after Sarah.

Abraham and Sarah had moved back near Hebron after having lived at Beersheba for some time (v. 2; cf. 22:19). "Kiriath-arba" means "Village of Four" (cf. Josh. 14:15). It was another, perhaps older, name for Hebron.

"It should be stressed here that the world of the patriarchs was that of a developed and organized society and not what is usually regarded as a simple pastoral-bedouin existence. Throughout Genesis 12-50 there are connections to Mesopotamia and to Egypt as well as negotiations with local political centers (Shechem, Salem and Hebron) as well as Gerar in the Western Negev on a branch of the Coastal Highway.

"Much of the theological relevance of the patriarchs is based upon the fact that there were other more attractive lifestyles available to these early Biblical figures. The option they chose gave them few of the advantages they could have enjoyed elsewhere, especially in Mesopotamia where their family was established. In light of this
fact and the great promises made to Abraham during his lifetime, his remark to the leaders of Hebron after the death of his wife, Sarah, takes on new meaning."¹

Abraham mourned and wept for his wife (v. 2).

"Tears are a tribute due to our deceased friends. When the body is sown, it must be watered."²

23:3-16 Typically, ancient Near Easterners buried family members in their native land.³ Abraham's desire to bury Sarah in the Promised Land shows that he had turned his back on Mesopotamia forever (v. 4). Canaan was his adopted homeland.

"The great safeguard against overmuch sorrow is work."⁴

God had made Abraham a powerful person, which his neighbors acknowledged (v. 6).⁵

"Abraham has put himself at the bottom of the social ladder, and they put him at the top."⁶

"Their warm and generous reply apparently gave Abraham all he wanted, but permission to bury Sarah was only part of what he had requested. He had asked for a burial plot, not simply for the use of one of their graves. Despite the warmth of their reply, the Hittites, by omitting any mention of this point, probably indicate their reluctance to

¹Monson, pp. 153-54. See also Thomson, 1:456.
²Matthew Henry, p. 41. For helpful guidelines for grieving over the death of someone dear to you, see Swindoll, p. 43.
³Ross, "Genesis," p. 66.
⁴Thomas, Through the ..., p. 50.
⁶E. F. Roop, Genesis, p. 154.
transfer land to Abraham, for then he would no longer be a landless sojourner."

These "sons of Heth" (v. 3, Hethites) were native residents of Canaan, not members of the mighty Hittite Empire, that later flourished north of the Promised Land, in modern Turkey and Syria—ancient Anatolia.

Why did Ephron want to sell Abraham the entire field in which the cave lay, rather than just the cave, as Abraham requested (vv. 8-11)? The law specified that when a landowner sold only part of his property to someone else, the original owner had to continue to pay all taxes on the land and remained obligated to the state for military service. However, if he sold the entire tract, the new owner became responsible (cf. 1 Chron. 21:24). Consequently, Ephron held out for the entire tract of land, knowing that Abraham needed to make his purchase quickly, so he could bury Sarah without delay.

Abraham's willingness to pay what appears to have been an unusually large price for the land, further demonstrates his faith (vv. 15-16). An average field cost four shekels per acre, and garden land cost 40 shekels per acre. Abraham was willing to pay 400 shekels! Of course, the text does not give the size of the field.

"The piece of property was no bargain for Abraham; **400 shekels** would be more than a hundred pounds of silver. David paid only one-eighth that amount—50 shekels of silver—for the

---

4Barker, p. 134.
purchase of the temple site from Araunah (2 Sam. 24:24).”

Coins were not minted until the seventh century B.C., so Abraham would have paid for his land with weighed pieces of silver. Ephron's responses to Abraham's requests sound very generous, but he was really asking an exorbitant price, to serve as a starting point for bargaining. Ephron's objective may have been to get a present (favor; gratuity; exchange gift) from Abraham, for having given him the field and cave, that would compensate for the value of the land. Such a gift was customary. On the other hand, he may have wanted to prevent Abraham from offering to pay him less than his asking price (v. 15).

"Did the patriarchs who forsook everything for the sake of the promises go unrewarded? No, answers our narrative. In death they were heirs and no longer 'strangers.' A very small part of the Promised Land—the grave—belonged to them; therefore they did not have to rest in 'Hittite earth' or in the grave of a Hittite (cf. v. 6), which Israel would have considered a hardship difficult to bear." 

"At a time when the children of Israel were on their way to take possession of the land, Moses did well to remind them how in faith their forefathers had secured at least 'a grave which was his own property,' and thus to arouse in them the desire to finish the work of taking into full possession what had so long ago been promised to them." 

23:17-18 Abraham's purchase of the cave in "Machpelah" (lit. "double cave," or "split cave") indicates his continuing faith in God's promise to give the land of Canaan to him and his descendants.

---

1Hamilton, The Book ... Chapters 18—50, p. 135.
2Leupold, 2:650.
4von Rad, p. 250.
5Leupold, 2:653.
Similarly, Jeremiah purchased property in the Promised Land, on the eve of the Babylonian Captivity, in order to express his belief that God would eventually bring the Israelites back there (cf. Jer. 32:6-15). One does not usually bury his family in a place unless he considers it his home and plans to be there a long time.

Acts 7:16 says that Abraham purchased a tomb from the sons of Hamor in Shechem. Perhaps Abraham purchased two burial sites, one in Shechem and one in Hebron. But Genesis 33:19 says that Jacob purchased a piece of land from the sons of Hamor in Shechem. The Acts statement may be a case of attributing to an ancestor what one of his descendants did (cf. Heb. 7:9-10). In the ancient Near East, people regarded an ancestor as in one sense participating in the actions of his descendants (cf. 9:25; 25:23; Mal. 1:2-3; Rom. 9:11-13).

23:19-20 The writer noted twice that Hebron was within the "land of Canaan" (vv. 2, 19), and stressed repeatedly that the negotiations for the land were official (vv. 10, 13, 16, 18). There was no doubt that this part of the land now justly belonged to Abraham and his heirs.

"This verse [v. 20] is a conclusion to vv. 2-19. It seems strange appearing after v. 19—which would have been a reasonable note on which to conclude. Its placement here points out that the crucial element in this chapter is not Sarah's death, but Abraham's acquisition of land from outsiders. As such, it is a harbinger of things to come."²

"The very fact that Abraham buried Sarah in the land of Canaan is proof of his unwavering faith. Knowing that his descendants would have to endure four hundred years of bitter bondage in a

¹Ibid., 2:654.
²Hamilton, The Book ... Chapters 18—50, p. 136.
foreign country (15:13), he looked beyond that to the ultimate fulfillment of God's promises."

Isaac and Jacob, as well as Abraham, used this burial site. Abraham, Sarah, Isaac, Rebekah, Jacob, and Leah were all buried here. Rachel's Tomb, on the other hand, was near Bethlehem (lit. "House of Bread," i.e., "Granary").

The time of death should be the time when the godly proclaim their faith most loudly, in view of their hope in God's promises.

17. The choice of a bride for Isaac ch. 24

Abraham's servant, who was evidently Eliezer, returned to Paddan-aram, charged with the duty of finding a suitable bride for Isaac. He faithfully and resolutely fulfilled his task, relying on God's faithfulness to prosper his journey, and God's providence to guide him. God directed him to Rebekah.

The length of this story, and the amount of detail included, suggest that this incident played an important part in the fulfillment of the divine Author's purpose. This is the longest chapter in Genesis.² The details show how God provided a wife and seed-bearer for Isaac, and thereby remained faithful to His promises to Abraham. God's working providentially through the natural course of events to accomplish His purposes clarifies His ways with humankind.

"The key idea in the passage is in the word hesed, 'loyal love' or 'loyalty to the covenant'—from both God's perspective and man's."³

"This ... narrative is the most pleasant and charming of all the patriarchal stories."⁴

The structure of the four sections (1-9, 10-28, 29-61, 62-67) is again palistrophic (chiastic). The first and fourth sections take place in Abraham's

---

¹Davis, Paradise to ..., p. 223.
²See Brian A. Bompiani, "Is Genesis 24 a Problem for Source Criticism?" Bibliotheca Sacra 164:656 (October-December 2007):403-15, for defense of the unity of this chapter.
³Ross, "Genesis," p. 67.
The household in Canaan, and the second and third sections record events in Rebekah's household in Paddan-aram.

24:1-9 The "thigh" may be a euphemism for the genitals (v. 2). The ancients considered the "thigh" to be the source of posterity and the seat of power (cf. 47:29).

"By putting his hand under Abraham's thigh, the servant was touching his genitals and thus giving the oath a special solemnity. In the ancient Orient, solemn oaths could be taken holding some sacred object in one's hand, as it is still customary to take an oath on the Bible before giving evidence in court. Since the OT particularly associates God with life (see the symbolism of the sacrificial law) and Abraham had been circumcised as a mark of the covenant, placing his hand under Abraham's thigh made an intimate association with some fundamental religious ideas. An oath by the seat of procreation is particularly apt in this instance, when it concerns the finding of a wife for Isaac."  

"Putting a hand under another's thigh was a solemn way of signifying that if the oath were violated, the children, yet unborn, would avenge the act of disloyalty."  

"That act would be significantly symbolic in this instance, for success of the mission would make possible propagation of posterity and fulfillment of the Abrahamic Covenant."  

Abraham's insistence on a non-Canaanite wife for Isaac (v. 3) did not demonstrate racial preference as much as religious preference. Marriage to an influential Canaanite would have given Isaac land and powerful social connections, but...
Abraham's values lay elsewhere. The Canaanites worshipped Baal and Asherah (cf. 15:16; Deut. 7:3), but Abraham's extended family in Paddan-aram evidently worshipped the true God (cf. v. 31; 11:27—12:4; Josh. 24:2).

"Isaac was not regarded as a merely pious candidate for matrimony, but as the heir of the promise, who must therefore be kept from any alliance with the race whose possessions were to come to his descendants, and which was ripening for the judgment to be executed by those descendants."¹

Abraham's last recorded words reflect his continuing faith in God's promises to him, as well as his concern for Isaac's future (vv. 6-8). "He will send His angel ahead of you" (v. 7) means that God would prepare the way for Abraham's servant's arrival.

It is interesting that the name of Abraham's servant never appears in this story. Some expositors have noted the parallel between this fact and the fact that the Holy Spirit, who does the same thing for Jesus Christ that Abraham's servant did for Abraham, does not have an individual name as well. He is simply referred to throughout Scripture as God's Spirit.

Camels were relatively rare at this time in Canaan, so the fact that Abraham owned many of them reflects his great wealth (v. 10; cf. Job 1:3).²

Paddan-aram lay within Mesopotamia, the region between and surrounding the Tigris and Chaboras Rivers. Paddan-aram did not extend all the way to the Tigris River, however.³

"In the East, where wells are scarce, and water indispensable, the existence of a well or fountain determines the site of the village. The people build

---

³Leupold, 2:663.
near it, but prefer to have it outside the 'city,' to avoid the noise, dust, and confusion always occurring at it, and especially if the place is on the public highway. About great cities men often carry water, both on donkeys and on their own backs, but in the country, among the unsophisticated natives, *women only* go to the well or the fountain; and often, when traveling, have I seen long files of them going and returning with their pitchers, 'at the time when women go out to draw water."

"The well itself must be imagined as a large, deep hole in the earth with steps leading down to the water (spring water); above is a watering trough." \(^2\)

The above comment seems to be based on the fact that some wells discovered in Canaan were of this design, such as the well at Gibeon. However, it is possible that this well was a typical small-mouthed well (cf. 29:3; John 4:6-12).

Verse 12 is the first recorded instance of prayer for specific guidance in Scripture. Notice that the servant did nothing but pray; he took no other initiative but left the situation entirely in God's hands to control. Since camels could drink 25 gallons, the servant's sign showed his discernment (v. 14). It tested Rebekah's kindness, hospitality, industry, and willingness to help a stranger.

"Although the Lord elects both Abraham and Rebekah, his mode of revelation to them is strikingly different. To Abraham he speaks (12:7) in visions and auditions, to Rebekah he communicates through answered prayer and providential acts (24:27, 48, 50)." \(^3\)

---

\(^1\) Thomson, 2:404-5.
\(^2\) von Rad, p. 257.
\(^3\) Waltke, *Genesis*, p. 326.
"Even the statement as to the manner of carrying her pitcher, or rather jar, is exact—on her shoulder [v. 15]. The Egyptian and the negro carry on the head, the Syrian on the shoulder or the hip."¹

Rebekah's name means "Ensnaring Beauty," and Moses commented on her beauty (v. 16). It might seem strange that he wrote, redundantly, that she was "a virgin" and that "no man had had relations with her." But the Hebrew word translated "virgin" generally means "young woman," and is therefore not a precise term. It needed some clarification.

24:29-61

"Another striking feature of this story is that after introducing the new characters of Laban and his household, the writer allows the servant again to retell the narrative (vv. 34-39). But as with most repetitions in biblical narrative, the retelling is not a mere repeating. It is rather a reassertion of the central points of the first narrative. As we overhear the servant recount more details, we see that the miracle of God's provision was even more grand than that suggested in the narrative itself."²

"The following detailed speech, which tells the reader nothing new, can be considered long only by Western standards. The ancients had a quite different feeling. To be able to speak worthily in decisive situations was considered a sign of special cultivation and training."³

Repeating an event confirmed its truthfulness in Scripture usage (cf. 41:32). W. M. Thomson described marriage negotiation customs as they existed for millennia in this part of the world as follows:

¹Thomson, 2:405.
²Sailhamer, "Genesis," p. 177.
³von Rad, p. 258.
"The parents, or the elder brother if there are no parents, make the bargain, and the poor bride has nothing to do but to submit [v. 51]."1

It must have been customary in Hurrian society, however, to consult the bride before completing the marriage plans (vv. 58-60), or perhaps this family was exceptional. Note that Laban, Rebekah's brother, was the principal negotiator who represented the family—rather than Bethuel, her father, or her mother (vv. 53, 55; cf. 34:11-17; 42:1-3)—though Bethuel was involved (v. 50). Perhaps Bethuel was simply too old, infirm, or was under his wife's control, as Rebekah later "organized" Isaac.2

The description of the family farewell also reflects Laban's leadership (vv. 59-60).3 Rebekah demonstrated her faith in Abraham's God, in her decisively choosing to leave her family in order to marry Isaac (cf. the similar choices of Abram and Ruth; Ruth 1:16).

24:62-67 Beer-lahai-roi, the place where Isaac lived and meditated (v. 62), was a place where God had previously answered prayer (cf. 16:14). This suggests that Isaac may have been praying for God's will to be done in the choice of his wife. Clearly, Isaac was a man who prayed about important things (cf. 25:21).

Rebekah dismounted out of respect for her intended husband (cf. Josh. 15:18; 1 Sam. 25:23). Her self-veiling hinted at her soon becoming his bride, since it was customary to veil the bride in a marriage ceremony. Normally Israelite women did not wear veils (cf. 12:14; 38:14).

"The final remarks (v. 67) again show that God's guidance in the mundane areas of life is good for those who put their trust in him. When Isaac took Rebekah as his wife, he loved her and was comforted with her after the death of his mother.

1Thomson, 1:451.
2Wenham, Genesis 16—50, p. 149.
3See West, pp. 67-68; Speiser, pp. 184-85.
In other words, Rebekah had taken the place of Sarah in the line of the descendants of Abraham."\(^1\)

The significance of this long story in the larger context of special revelation is fourfold at least:

1. Primarily it demonstrates God's faithfulness to His promise to provide descendants for Abraham and, therefore, His trustworthiness. Along with this is the assurance that, even though Abraham was soon to die, God would fulfill His promises in the future.

2. It reveals that God guides people who are sincerely seeking His will so that they discover it.

3. It illustrates God's later selection of a "bride," that He chose out of the world for His Son, through the Holy Spirit's agency—as revealed and taught in the New Testament—namely, the church.

4. It provides a good model, in the servant, of one who responded properly to the work of God. Abraham's servant *prayed* before he acted, *praised* when God answered his prayers, and *believed* that God controls all the affairs of life.

"There are two themes, one more central, one more auxiliary, which are highlighted by the example story [in Genesis 24]: the faithful, prudent and selfless steward acting on behalf of his master as messenger, and the good wife as a gift from the LORD, the theme underlying much of the steward's action."\(^2\)

**18. Abraham's death 25:1-11**

Before Abraham died, he made sure that God's covenantal blessing would be Isaac's by sending his other sons away. After he died, God confirmed his decision by blessing Isaac.

"It is only said of Isaac among Abraham's children that "God ['elohim] blessed" him (v. 11; cf. 24:1, 35); this language is

---

\(^1\)Sailhamer, "Genesis," p. 178.

used rarely in Scripture, appearing in creation narratives (1:22, 28; 2:3; 9:1)."¹

**Abraham's sons by Keturah 25:1-6**

Keturah (lit. "Enveloped in Fragrant Smoke") was apparently Abraham's concubine (v. 6; 1 Chron. 1:32). Jewish tradition identified Keturah as Hagar.² It is not possible to prove that Abraham married Keturah, and that she bore him six sons after Sarah's death, though this was probably the case.³ He may have married her earlier in his life, while Sarah was alive. Most English translations read, "Abraham took another wife," or the equivalent, and only a few read, "Abraham had taken another wife" (e.g., TNIV, NET2).

"There is little basis in the Hebrew text for the translation, 'Abraham had taken a wife' (NIV mg.), as though Keturah had been a wife or 'concubine' of Abraham in his younger days at the same time he was married to Sarah."⁴

---

²*Targum Pseudo-Jonathan, Targum Neofiti I* (margin); *Genesis Rabbah* 61:4.
⁴Sailhamer, "Genesis," revised ed., p. 221.
The information revealed in these verses may appear, at this point in the narrative, simply to introduce the Midianites, who come into prominence later in Genesis. They were a group of tribes that inhabited the deserts around the Israelites. Probably Moses also included this data, because this passage confirms God's faithfulness in giving Abraham many descendants, though Isaac and his branch of the family would be the recipients of God's special blessings.

"It is related of this Ophren [translated "Epher," v. 4], that he made war against Libya, and took it; and that his grandchildren, when they inhabited it, called it (from his name) Africa; and indeed Alexander Polyhistor gives his attestation to what I here say "¹

"The land of the East" (v. 6), to which Abraham sent his sons, other than Ishmael and Isaac, was evidently Arabia. God's promise that "through Isaac

---

¹Josephus, Antiquities of ..., 1:15:1.
your descendants shall be named" (21:12) undoubtedly led Abraham to act as he did.

"In this case the sending away of the sons is to make Isaac's position more secure."\(^1\)

In this section and the following two (vv. 7-11 and 12-18), those characters who play minor roles in the drama take their curtain calls, making way for the chief actors who follow.

**Abraham's death and Isaac's blessing 25:7-11**

Isaac would have been 75 years old, and Jacob 15, when Abraham died (v. 7; cf. 21:5; 25:26).\(^2\) Abraham lived 100 years in the Promised Land (cf. 12:4).

"It is one thing to live a long life. It is another thing to live a long life that is also a happy life. This obituary notice about Abraham draws attention to the fact that Abraham died not only at an elderly age but in a frame of mind filled with inner *shalom* and satisfaction. That is the thrust of the phrase *full of days* or 'contented.'"\(^3\)

The phrase "gathered to his people" (v. 8) implies reunion in Sheol, the place of departed spirits, with ancestors who had died previously. It presupposes continued personal existence after physical death (cf. 15:15; Heb. 11:13). Abraham was buried in "the cave of Machpelah" near Mamre, the old site that later became a part of Hebron (v. 9).

God's dealings now focus on Isaac, who then lived near Hagar's well at Beer-lahai-roi (lit. "The Well of the One Who Lives and Who Sees Me," v. 11; cf. 16:14; 24:62). Archaeologists have yet to find this site. It was evidently somewhere south of Beersheba in the Negev.

"The patriarch Isaac presents but a pale appearance as he stands planted between two stately and so impressive

---

\(^2\) See the chart "Patriarchal Chronological Data" earlier in these notes.
personages as his father Abraham on the one hand, and his son Jacob on the other hand.\(^1\)

God's servants should do all in their power to ensure the continuation of God's program to bless from one generation to the next.

**B. WHAT BECAME OF ISMAEL 25:12-18**

"The last four toledot sections of the Book of Genesis follow a definite pattern: the lines in each generation that are not chosen lines are traced before the narrative returns to the chosen line."\(^2\)

This section records God's faithfulness to His promises to make Ishmael a great nation, and to give him many descendants (16:10; 21:18). This is another of the 10 family histories that Genesis records.\(^3\) There is probably an intentional parallel with the 10 nations mentioned in the Table of Nations (ch. 10), suggesting that God would bless all the families of the earth through other special families.

These verses show that God fulfilled His promises regarding Ishmael (16:10-12; 17:20). Ishmael, like Nahor and Jacob, fathered 12 sons. Moses drew Ishmael's personal history to a conclusion before he moved on to concentrate on his brother Isaac.

"As with other lists of names throughout Genesis, the number twelve appears to be a deliberate attempt to set these individuals off as founders of a new and separate people"\(^4\)

The Ishmaelites lived in Arabia. Arabia lay to the southeast of Canaan, and extended from the Euphrates River to the Red Sea.\(^5\) Probably the Ishmaelites were once a confederation of tribes like the Israelites.

---

\(^1\)Whyte, 1:93.

\(^2\)Ross, *Creation and ...,* p. 429.

\(^3\)See the outline in the introduction to these notes.


"The names of the twelve princes descending from Ishmael are applied not only to tribal divisions but also to geographical localities (cf. v. 16)."\(^1\)

Ishmael died at 137 years of age, having lived 48 years after Abraham's death. The writer probably included the fact that Ishmael lived "in defiance of all his relatives" (v. 18), in order to show the fulfillment of God's prediction to Hagar (cf. 16:12). The Bedouin-like Ishmaelites later had many conflicts with their more settled Israelite relatives.

God is faithful to His promises to bless whom He has promised to bless.

C. WHAT BECAME OF ISAAC 25:19—35:29

A new *toledot* begins with 25:19. Its theme is "the acquisition of the blessing and its development and protection by the Lord."\(^2\)

Moses set up the whole Jacob narrative in a chiastic structure that emphasizes the fulfillment of the promise of the seed and the seed's prosperity.

"A Oracle sought; Rebekah struggles in childbirth; *bekorah* birthright; birth; themes of strife, deception, fertility (25:19-34).

B Interlude: strife; deception; *berakah* blessing; covenant with foreigner (26).

C Deception; *berakah* stolen; fear of Esau; flight from land (27:1-28:9).

D Encounter (<*paga’*) with the divine at sacred site near border; *berakah* (28:10-22).

E Internal cycle opens: arrival; Laban at border; deception; wages; Rachel barren; Leah fertile (29:1-30:21).

F Rachel fertile; Jacob increases the herds (30:22-43).

---

\(^1\) Davis, *Paradise to ...*, p. 231.
\(^2\) Ross, *Creation and ...*, p. 433.
The Flood story also has a palistrophic structure, and both stories have a similar statement at the middle (turning point): "God remembered Noah" (8:1) and "God remembered Rachel" (30:22). This emphasizes that God controls events and saves His people.

"... the author of Genesis has deliberately split the Jacob-Joseph story into two parts by putting the family history of Esau 36:1—37:1 in the middle. This allows him to alternate the genealogies of the non-elect lines of Ishmael (25:12-18) and Esau (36:1—37:1) with the fuller family histories of the chosen lines of Terah (Abraham) (11:27—25:11), Isaac (Jacob) (25:19—35:29), and Jacob (Joseph) (37:2—50:26) to produce a total of five patriarchal family histories. This matches the five family histories of pre-patriarchal times "

1. Isaac's twin sons 25:19-26

Verses 19-34 introduce the whole Jacob and Esau saga.

In the first pericope (25:19-26), we have the record of God answering Isaac's prayers by making Rebekah fertile (blessing). He gave her two sons, Esau and Jacob, and foretold that, from them, two nations would come, with the elder serving the younger.

---

2Wenham, Genesis 16—50, p. 168.
The emphasis of this section is on the divine oracle (v. 23), as is clear from its chiastic structure:

"A  Isaac was forty years old when he took to wife Rebekah (20).

B  Rebekah was barren; prayer for children was answered (21a).

C  His wife Rebekah conceived (21b). The children struggled together within her (22a).

D  Rebekah asks for an oracle (22b)

D'  Yahweh grants her an oracle (23)

C'  Her days to be delivered were fulfilled (24a). And behold, there were twins in her womb (24b).

B'  Jacob and Esau are contrasted in birth and appearance (25-26a).

A'  Isaac was sixty years old when Rebekah bore the twins (26b)."¹

The question of an heir continues to be primary in this section: "Who will be Isaac's heir through whom God will fulfill His promises?" Rebekah, like Sarah, was barren (v. 21). This is the first reference to a patriarch interceding for someone in the usual sense, though compare 18:22-33. After 20 years of waiting and praying (vv. 21-22), God gave Rebekah children. Which of these two sons would be the blessed heir? God intervened to announce His foreordained choice (v. 23). Jacob's reactions to his election over Esau were quite different from Isaac's reactions to God's choice of him as Abraham's heir, as this section begins to illustrate.

Scripture does not give the reason God chose Jacob over Esau. What we do know, is that His choice did not rest on the superior merit of Jacob, but on the sovereign prerogative of Yahweh (Rom. 9:10-13). In ancient Near Eastern culture, the firstborn normally became his father's heir. So in designating Jacob as Isaac's heir, God sovereignly overruled natural custom by supernatural revelation. The responses of the members of Isaac's family to this revelation demonstrated their faith, or lack of it. However, the main

point of the narrative is to trace God's faithfulness and power in bringing to pass what He had promised.

"The revelation of the Divine will concerning the two brothers (ver. 23) was evidently no secret. It is clear that both Esau and Jacob knew of it. This fact is in some respects the key to the true interpretation of this incident [i.e., vv. 29-34]."\(^1\)

25:19-20 "Paddan-aram" means "The Flat (Land) of Aram." Aram was the area near Haran. People from this region became known as Arameans, and later the Greeks called them Syrians. Bethuel was a semi-nomadic herdsman, like Abraham, and he probably lived in the open fields at least part of the year.

25:21 Rebekah was unable to have children for 20 years after she married Isaac (vv. 21, 26). God closed her womb for that time, so that the chosen family would recognize her children as the fruit of His grace, rather than simply the fruit of nature. Isaac was apparently the only monogamous patriarch among the first three: Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob.

25:22-23 Rebekah's pregnancy was very painful ("the children struggled together within her"), and she wondered why ("Why am I in this condition?"). She expressed a similar thought when her sons had grown up (27:46).

God's choice of the younger over the elder "was contrary to ancient Near Eastern custom, but the elective purposes of God transcend custom."\(^2\) The divine oracle announcing this choice summarizes the careers of Jacob and Esau, and is similar to 12:1-3 in that both statements are programmatic. All of Jacob's subsequent scheming to obtain the birthright and the blessing was unnecessary, because God had already promised that he would become the dominant nation.

25:24-26 Red (v. 25; Heb. 'admoni) is a wordplay with "Edomites," Esau's descendants. Esau means "Hairy One" (Heb. sa'ar, similar to Seir, later the name of the Edomites' [probably]

---

\(^1\) Thomas, *Genesis*, p. 230.

wooded homeland). Jacob means "El Will Protect."\(^1\) Hairiness seems to have been a mark of incivility in the ancient world, indicative of an animal-like nature.\(^2\) The Hebrew *ya’aqob* ("Jacob") is similar to *'aqeb* ("heel"). From Jacob's grasping Esau's heel at birth came the nickname "heel-holder" (i.e., one who outwits by trickery) "just as in wrestling an attempt may be made to throw the opponent by grasping the heel."\(^3\)

The lesson to be learned is that those who owe their existence to God's creation and election can acknowledge His hand at work in the affairs of their lives.

### 2. The sale of the birthright 25:27-34

25:27-28 Abraham died when the twins were 15 years old (25:7), so they grew up knowing their grandfather, and undoubtedly hearing his stories of God's promises to their family. Esau became a "skillful hunter, a man of the field," but Jacob "was a civilized man, living in tents." The name "Esau" sounds like the Hebrew word that means hairy. And "Jacob" sounds like the Hebrew word that means heel. These twins could not have been more different from each other.

"... they became the personification of the two different ways of life which would have been typical for Palestine at this period of history: that of hunter and nomad (Esau) and that of shepherd and semi-nomad (Jacob) Esau is described as a 'skilled hunter,' 'a man of the outdoors;' Jacob, on the other hand, is portrayed as 'a simple man,' one 'remaining in his tents,' that is, a man of stable life in contrast to the rootless life of the nomad."\(^4\)

---

\(^1\)Hamilton, *The Book ... Chapters 18—50*, p. 178.  
\(^3\)Keil and Delitzsch, 1:268.  
"The two characters are utter opposites, as the two nations will eventually be."¹

"This fellow Esau was a cunning hunter, the outdoor boy, the athletic type. He is the one we would call the all-American boy today. He went in for sports. He went in for everything that was physical, but he had no understanding or capacity or desire for spiritual things. He was only interested in that which was physical. He represents the flesh.

"Jacob was a plain man. I think that you can make of that anything you want to. He lived indoors. He was a mama's boy and was tied to her apron strings. You will notice that he did what she told him to do. Jacob is really a mama's boy."²

The Hebrew word *tam*, translated "civilized" or "quiet" (NRSV, ESV, HCSB), "plain" (AV, NIV), "mild" (NKJV), or "content" (TNIV), probably means domesticated, a "homebody."³ Translators have rendered this Hebrew word "perfect" and "blameless" elsewhere (Job 1:1, 8; 8:20; Ps. 37:37; Prov. 29:10). It may imply a quiet, self-contained, detached person, complete in himself.⁴ The NET2 Bible translators translated it "even-tempered," and the NEB has "Jacob led a settled life."

"Descriptions of Jacob's early life in the Scriptures paint an interpersonal portrait of a highly narcissistic individual who grew up in a family of origin ripe for producing such pathology."⁵

---

¹Kidner, p. 152.
²McGee, 1:106. See also Whyte, 1:99-101.
"When one parent is partial to one child and the other parent is partial to the other child, you have trouble. That is exactly what took place here."¹

Adam failed in eating, Noah in drinking, and Isaac in tasting. Isaac became a "gourmand:" one who enjoys eating and often eats too much.

"A marriage made in heaven (see 24:1-67) can end in dysfunction when a spouse gives priority to taste in the mouth over a voice in the heart (see 26:35)."²

25:29-30 The Hebrew word translated "stew" literally means "lentils." Esau wanted to "gulp it down" (Heb. la'at), and he called the stew "red stuff."

"The hunter, in contrast to the shepherd with his much more economic and careful way of life, often does not have enough to eat. If he takes no prey, he goes hungry."³

25:31-34 The way Jacob stated his demand for Esau's birthright suggests that he had long premeditated his act, and he ruthlessly exploited his brother's weakness. His insistence that Esau "swear" to him strengthens this impression. Jacob's lack of compassion and hospitality contrasts with that of Abraham (18:1-8) and Lot (19:1-8). It was right that Jacob valued the birthright, but it was wrong that he obtained it the way he did. Because Esau despised his birthright, Jacob obtained it—and became what God had promised he would become: the "stronger" son who would lead (be served, v. 23). Explicit moral commentary is rare in the Bible, so the writer's inclusion of it here marks something about Esau that he did not want the reader to miss.

¹McGee, 1:106-7.
²Waltke, Genesis, p. 363.
³von Rad, p. 266.
"The cunning hunter fell into a better hunter's trap, becoming prey to his own appetite."¹

The writer showed that the natures of the two sons were very different: they were not identical twins, obviously. Esau cared only for physical and material things, whereas Jacob valued the spiritual. Esau gave priority to the immediate satisfaction of his sensuous desires, but Jacob was willing to wait for something better that God had promised for the future (cf. Heb. 12:16).

"The frivolity with which he [Esau] sold his birthright rendered him unfit to be the heir and possessor of the promised grace."²

"From one human perspective, Esau, who functions as a foil to Jacob, is much more likeable than Jacob. From the divine viewpoint, however, he is rejected because he rejects his right to inherit the divinely given vision of his fathers."³

The "birthright" was the privilege of being chief of the tribe and head of the family (27:29). In Isaac’s family, it entitled the bearer to the blessing of Yahweh’s promises (27:4, 27-29), which included the possession of Canaan and covenant fellowship with God (28:4). It also included a double portion of the inheritance (Deut. 21:17), and the privilege of being the priest (spiritual leader) of the family.⁴

Judah, Joseph, and Levi later received the privileges of the birthright. Judah obtained leadership among the tribes (possession of Canaan and covenant fellowship), eventually through David and Messiah. Joseph received the double portion through his sons Ephraim and Manasseh. Levi became the priestly tribe. In the New Testament, we learn that Christ is the Firstborn among many brethren (Rom. 8:29; Col. 1:15, 18; Heb. 12:23). He is the great Birthright-Bearer.

"It is quite apparent from the Nuzi tablets that instances of the transference of birthright, such as occurred in the

---

¹Ross, Creation and ..., p. 449.
²Keil and Delitzsch, 1:269.
³Waltke, Genesis, p. 352.
Patriarchal narratives, were not uncommon in Hurrian society. One example concerns a certain Zirteshup, whose father disowned him but later restored his status. Another instance of the transference of birthright from the Nuzi tablets is the exchange by one Kurpazah of his birthright in consideration for three sheep given to him by Tupkitilla, his brother. In the light of this example, Esau's willingness to exchange his birthright for Jacob's mess of pottage (Gen. 25:29-34) is perhaps more understandible.1

Even though Esau was a cunning hunter, he placed little value on his privilege as the firstborn son. He was willing to trade it to his cunning brother for a meal of "red stuff," a fitting description of his own nature.2 Though Jacob later deceived Esau regarding his blessing, there was no deception involved in this sale of the birthright. Esau knew precisely what he was doing when he gave it up.

The structure of the narrative again identifies the writer's emphasis, this time Esau's disdain for his birthright (v. 32):

"A Jacob was boiling pottage (29a).

B Esau came in from the field; he was tired (29b).

C wayyo'mer 'esaw: Let me eat some of that red pottage ..., I am so tired! (30)

D wayyo'mer ya'aqob: First sell me your bkrh (31).

E wayyo'mer 'esaw: I depart; I die! Of what use is a bkrh to me? (32).

D' wayyo'mer ya'aqob: Swear to me first. So he swore to him and sold his bkrh to Jacob (33).

C' Jacob gave Esau bread and pottage of lentils; he ate and he drank (34aa).

1West, p. 71.

B' He rose and went his way (34ab).

A' Thus Esau despised his birthright (34b)."¹

There are two important instances of firstborn sons relinquishing the rights of primogeniture in Genesis: Esau and Reuben. Esau considered his birthright of so little value, that he sold all his rights as firstborn to Jacob, just to realize an immediate physical gratification. Reuben forfeited his birthright through sexual promiscuity (Gen. 35:22; 49:3-4). In Esau's case, his entire birthright went to Jacob. In Reuben's case, his birthright went to three of his brothers: Judah obtained the regal right, Levi eventually received the priestly right, and the blessing of the double portion went to Joseph—who realized it through his two sons, Ephraim and Manasseh.²

In reading this pericope, some have concluded that God chose Jacob over Esau because He foresaw that Jacob would value the promises and the birthright, whereas Esau would not. This is not correct. Jacob valued the spiritual because God gave him the grace to do so. In the previous generation, Isaac was the recipient of God's grace, while Lot and Ishmael were not. Abraham was a recipient, too, whereas his brothers were not.

In this incident, Jacob manifested spiritual perception. Some writers have suggested that he was impatient, and took fleshly initiative like his grandfather (cf. 12:10-20; 16; 20). Note, however, that Moses blamed Esau, not Jacob, in this event (v. 34).

"At the beginning he [Jacob] really did rather well as far as the world would measure him. But there came a day when God sent this man off to college, and Uncle Laban was the president of the college. It was known as the college of hard knocks, and Jacob was going to learn a few things in the college of hard knocks. But here he is still operating on the principle that he is clever enough to get what is coming to him."³

"How often do we put the question to ourselves, 'What is my mess of pottage?' It is important to verbalize the question. We are in constant danger of being tempted to give up something very precious in order to indulge a sudden strong desire. The

---

¹Ross, *Creation and ...,* p. 446.
³McGee, 1:108.
desire may involve greedy eating and drinking, lusting after money or material things, letting loose our anger in abandonment of reason, succumbing to depression without check, cursing God in despair or disappointment without even thinking of the trap Satan set for Job and is setting for us, giving in to a sweeping sexual desire without waiting for the right framework. The mess of pottage that is dangerous to you and to me is any temptation to gratify the 'feelings' of the immediate moment in a way that shows we 'despise' the promises of the living God for our future. "¹

God has given Christians special promises as well (e.g., His presence, strength, provisions, fruitfulness, glorification, rewards). How might we "despise" these? By living primarily for the present rather than for the future.

This section is a warning: that profane (secular, lit. "outside the temple," meaning "removed from the sacred") people, who live to satisfy their fleshly appetites, will lose the more valuable things of lasting spiritual worth. Christians who live for the present will not lose their eternal salvation, but they will lose some of their eternal reward (cf. 1 Cor. 3:10-15).

3. *Isaac and Abimelech 26:1-11*

God prevented Isaac from leaving the Promised Land (which included Gerar, where some Philistines lived), and at this time renewed the covenant with him. Soon afterward, the LORD protected Rebekah when Isaac lied to Abimelech about his relationship with her.

"In the short span of one chapter, the writer shows how the whole of the life of Isaac was a rehearsal of that which happened to Abraham. Thus the lesson that is conveyed is that God's faithfulness in the past can be counted on in the present and the future. What he has done for the fathers, he will also do for the sons."²

---

²Sailhamer, "Genesis," p. 185.
Whereas the events of Isaac's life repeated those of Abraham's on several occasions, God dealt with Isaac differently, and in harmony with his individual character. The many parallels between this chapter and the story of Abraham (esp. chs. 12—14, as compared with chs. 20—21) show that the writer wanted the reader to compare and contrast the two men.¹

"The figure of even a great man may be dwarfed by comparison with that of a distinguished father or of a famous son. Thus the character of Isaac is overshadowed by the majesty of Abraham and the dramatic interest of Jacob. There was a third factor which diminished the importance of Isaac; he was the husband of a clever and masterful wife. No matter how exciting the scene in which he may appear, he is always assigned to a minor part. At least, by contrast with these other actors, his role in life was prosaic, uneventful, obscure."²

"The chapter before us is full of illustrations of how difficulties should and should not be met."³

"This is a chapter that teaches patience."⁴

"All this was the calm persistence of faith."⁵

26:1-6 Isaac was evidently considering going to Egypt to escape the famine. He was in Gerar, living close to Abimelech "king of the Philistines" (vv. 8-9), when God spoke to him. This was God's first recorded revelation to Isaac (cf. 25:23). Therefore, it appears that Isaac may have previously moved north from Beer-lahai-roi. Of course, constant relocating was common for the nomadic patriarchs, and these places were not far from one another.

---

¹See Garrett, p. 136, or Waltke, Genesis, p. 366, for several striking parallels.
³Thomas, Genesis, p. 238.
⁴McGee, 1:108.
⁵Morgan, An Exposition ..., p. 23.
The first major migration of the Philistines into Canaan took place hundreds of years later, in the 12th century B.C. However, there were some Philistines (perhaps an unrelated ethnic group) already in Canaan in Abraham's and Isaac's time, as is clear from this reference and others in Genesis (see the notes in the section 21:22-34).

Another famine in the land of Canaan (cf. 12:10) created a crisis for Isaac. God's will for Isaac to remain in the land was definite, and He communicated it clearly to the patriarch. Perhaps God wanted Isaac to stay in the land so he would learn that God would "be with [him] and bless [him]" (v. 3). God reiterated His promise given earlier to Abraham—now to Isaac—in order to give Isaac a promise to believe and the encouragement to obey Him. Promises of protection are also prominent in the Jacob story (cf. 26:24; 28:15, 20; 31:3, 5, 42; 32:10).
The promise, specifically, was that God would protect ("be with") and "bless" Isaac, "multiply" his "descendants," and "give" them "all these lands" (i.e., the lands held by the various Canaanite tribes, vv. 3-4).

"Palestinians today claim they should possess the land, saying that God promised this to Ishmael. This claim is without scriptural support, but it is found in the Koran, on which Palestinian Muslims base their faith. The Koran, however, was written some six hundred years after Christ, in contrast to the Book of Genesis, which was written fifteen hundred years before Christ. There is no ancient evidence anywhere that God promised the land to Ishmael. The entire Old Testament contradicts this Palestinian claim. The covenant of the land is confirmed in Psalm 105:8-11 in unmistakable terms. ... The promises of the land were given to the descendants of Jacob alone, not to the other children of Abraham."¹

One reason for God's blessing of Isaac was Abraham's obedience to God (v. 5; cf. 22:18). Isaac became the spiritual beneficiary of a godly parent, but he had the opportunity to increase God's blessing on him, through his own obedience to God (cf. John 15:14).

"The Abrahamic blessing will pass to Isaac. Everything included in that blessing will now belong to the son, and in turn will be passed on to his sons. But there is a contingency involved: if they are to enjoy the full blessings, they will have to obey the word of the LORD. And so obedience is enjoined here with the example of how well Abraham obeyed."²

The quotation above should not be understood to mean that God's promises made to Abraham, and now Jacob, were

¹Walvoord, *End Times*, p. 78.
²The NET2 Bible note on 26:3.
conditioned on their obedience, as some claim. These promises were prophecies of what God would do regardless of the patriarchs' obedience or disobedience. *Full blessing* for them, however, depended on their obedience.

Verse 5 reads as though Abraham kept the actual "commandments," "statutes," and "laws" of the Mosaic Covenant—before they were even in existence! This verse was the basis upon which the Jews of Jesus' day believed that Abraham kept the whole Law of Moses before it was given.¹ It also may seem to contradict 15:6, which says God justified Abraham because of his faith.

"Ultimately, we should attempt to find the meaning of this verse in the larger strategy and purpose of the Pentateuch. Did the author of the Pentateuch intend to depict Abraham as a model of faith or as a model of obedience to the law? Curiously enough, the overwhelming majority of biblical scholars have read this passage as if the verse intended to show Abraham's life as an example of obedience to the law ... "

"It appears reasonable to conclude that the importance of Gen 26:5 lies in what it tells us about the meaning of the deuteronomic terms it uses. It is as if the author of the Pentateuch has seized on the Abrahamic narratives as a way to explain his concept of 'keeping the law.' The author uses the life of Abraham, *not Moses*, to illustrate that one *can* fulfill the righteous requirement of the law. In choosing Abraham and not Moses, the author shows that 'keeping the law' means 'believing in God,' just as Abraham believed God and was counted righteous (Gen 15:6). In effect the author of the Pentateuch

---

says, 'Be like Abraham. Live a life of faith and it can be said that you are keeping the law.'"\(^1\)

"Israel would immediately see Torah (Law) terminology in the record of Abraham, and would be prompted to keep the Law."\(^2\)

26:7-11 For an explanation of this strange incident, see the notes on chapter 20. When endangered, Isaac, like Abraham, resorted to a "situation ethic" in which the end justifies the means. Isaac did not tell the truth, because Rebekah was not really his "sister," but his cousin. Abraham's claim was only a half truth, since Sarai actually was Abraham's sister—his half-sister. "Like father, like son." Isaac and Rebekah must have been childless at this time, because otherwise, any of their children would have exposed their deception.

A period of between 70 and 97 years had elapsed between Abraham's sojourn in Gerar and Isaac's. Abimelech could have been the same man in both cases, since lifespans of 150 years were not unknown at that time, but he may not have been. Certainly in both cases, "Abimelech" demonstrated pious conduct. In the first case, however, Abimelech took Sarah into his harem, but in the second Abimelech wanted to protect Rebekah from his people. "Abimelech" is a title rather than a personal name, and means "royal father" (cf. 1 Sam. 21:10-15; Ps. 34's superscription). In view of these facts, this probably was a different ruler than the one Abraham dealt with.

4. **Isaac's wells 26:12-33**

26:12-17 This section of verses shows God's faithfulness in blessing Isaac as He had promised (cf. v. 3; 24:1; 25:11). Isaac "planted crops (or "sowed seed," NRSV, HCSB; cf. NASB, AV, ESV, NKJV) in that land and the same year reaped a hundredfold" (v. 12, NIV, TNIV). As a semi-nomad, Isaac practice farming as

---

2 Ross, "Genesis," p. 71.
well as ranching. "The man became rich, and continued to grow richer until he became very wealthy," vv. 12-13. Even Abimelech testified to Isaac's power ("you are too powerful for us," v. 16), which was another testimony to God's faithfulness.

26:18-22 Isaac reopened ("dug again") the wells that Abraham had dug, which the native inhabitants had later filled with dirt.

"... to stop up wells was the most pernicious and destructive species of vengeance, the surest way to convert a flourishing country into a frightful wilderness."\(^1\)

Evidently the Philistines were trying to force Isaac to move away from them by filling the wells with dirt, thus making it difficult or impossible for him to water his extensive flocks. Isaac also dug three new wells, which were named Esek, Sitnah, and Rehoboth. In contrast with Abraham, Isaac "was called not so much to pioneer as to consolidate."\(^2\)

The "wells" incident shows God's blessing of Isaac, too. Water in the wilderness is a symbol of God's supernatural blessing in spite of nature.

The incident furthermore reveals the peaceful character of this patriarch, who did not battle his neighbors for the wells, even though he was stronger than they were (v. 16). His actions expressed his trust in Yahweh.\(^3\)

"Isaac is a pacifist in the best sense of the word. Power is safe in his hands. He shows no inclination to abuse it."\(^4\)

Isaac's decision to sojourn in the town of Gerar (vv. 1, 6), and then the valley of Gerar (v. 17), seems to have been unwise, but was not sinful. Though he sinned in misrepresenting his

---

\(^1\)Thomson, 2:351.
\(^2\)Kidner, p. 154.
\(^3\)See note on 48:22.
\(^4\)Leupold, 2:725-26. "Peacemaker" might be a better word than "pacifist."
relationship to Rebekah out of fear (v. 7), his choice to live in Philistine territory was not sinful. It did, however, open him to temptation and trials that he probably would have avoided if he had stayed away from Gerar.

26:23-25 Isaac returned to Beersheba, where Abraham had lived occasionally. On the very night he arrived, God appeared to him there (his second revelation), calming his fears and reviewing the promises that He had given previously (vv. 2-5). Isaac's response was to build an altar, worship Yahweh, and settle down ("pitched his tent," v. 25) there. God's promise to bless Isaac "for the sake of My servant Abraham" (v. 24) means because of the promises God had made to Abraham, not because of Abraham's merit or obedience.¹

Settlers could only continue to live in an area where there was a working, water-yielding well. Wells were vital to the life of herdsmen, who, because of their flocks, had to move about. While there was probably at least one well at Beersheba already, Isaac dug another for his own use, or perhaps because he needed more water for his great flocks and herds and large household (family and servants). His ability to dig wells indicates both his wealth and his intention to establish permanent residence in the land.

These verses seem to confirm the fact that Isaac's decision to move out of Philistine territory pleased God.

26:26-33 Abimelech again testified to God's blessing of Isaac and gave God glory (vv. 28-29).

Isaac and Abimelech then made a parity covenant (treaty) of mutual non-aggression. They sealed it by eating a meal together, "a feast" that Isaac made for his treaty partners. Eating together was often a sacred rite in the ancient Near East that sealed an agreement (cf. 27:3, 4; 31:46, 54). This covenant renewed the older one made between Abimelech and Abraham (21:31). The exchange of oaths, and Isaac's official renaming of the town "Beersheba" also strengthened this

¹von Rad, p. 272.
agreement. They also dug a new well that they named "Shiba," after their new town: "Beersheba," (v. 33; cf. 21:31).

"... this account of Isaac's dealings with the Philistines portrays Isaac as very much walking in his father's footsteps. He receives similar promises, faces similar tests, fails similarly, but eventually triumphs in like fashion. Indeed, in certain respects he is given more in the promises and achieves more. He is promised 'all these lands [v. 4],' and by the end of the story he is securely settled in Beersheba and has a treaty with the Philistines in which they acknowledge his superiority."¹

God's people must maintain confident trust in God's promises of His presence and provision, in spite of the envy and hostility of unbelievers that His blessing sometimes provokes.

5. Jacob's deception for Isaac's blessing 26:34—28:9

Reacting to Isaac's disobedient plan to bless Esau, Jacob and Rebekah stole the blessing by deception. Esau became so angry with Jacob over his trickery, that Jacob had to flee for his life.

Two reports of Esau's marriages (26:34-35 and 28:6-9) frame the major account (27:1—28:5), providing a prologue and epilogue. Esau's marriages are significant, because Rebekah used them productively, as the incentive to persuade Isaac to send Jacob away to get a wife (27:4b), and because they were the reason Isaac did so (28:1).

The main account centers on Isaac giving the blessing.

"A Isaac and the son of the brkh/bkrh (=Esau) (27:1-5).

B Rebekah sends Jacob on the stage (27:6-17).

C Jacob appears before Isaac and receives blessing (27:18-29).

C' Esau appears before Isaac and receives antiblessing (27:30-40).

¹Wenham, Genesis 16—50, p. 196.
Rebekah sends Jacob from the stage (27:41-45).

Isaac and the son of *brkh/bkrh (=Jacob!) (27:46—28:5)."1

**Esau's marriage 26:34-35**

We can identify three purposes for this brief section:

1. Moses explained and justified the reason for Jacob's later departure for Paddan-aram (27:46—28:2).
2. Moses identified the ancestors of the Edomites, who later played a major role in Israel's history.
3. Moses revealed Esau's carnal character again, which proved him unworthy of being the blessed heir of Isaac.

Esau showed no interest in the special calling of his family, but instead sought to establish himself as a great man in the world by marrying Canaanite women (cf. 11:4). These women were evidently the daughters of Canaanite lords.2 They were probably members of the Hittite tribe that lived in Canaan, rather than members of the mighty Hittite Empire in the North (cf. 15:20). The Canaanites were, of course, under God's curse (9:25-27). Contrast Esau's method of securing wives with Abraham's plan to identify God's choice of a wife for Isaac.

"These preliminary notices [in verses 34 and 35] put into perspective the cunning deed of Jacob and Rebekah. They demonstrate that Esau was not fit to inherit the blessing."3

**Isaac's blessing 27:1—28:5**

Here we have the third round of Jacob's battle with Esau. The first was at birth (25:21-28) and the second was over the birthright (25:29-34). In all three incidents, Jacob manipulated his brother—unnecessarily, in view of God's promise (25:23).

---

3 Sailhamer, "Genesis," p. 189.
"This chapter [27] offers one of the most singular instances of God's overruling providence controlling the affairs of sinful men and so disposing of them that the interests of God's kingdom are safeguarded. Usually the guilt of Jacob is overemphasized, and Esau is regarded as relatively or entirely the innocent party in the transaction. This traditional view requires modification and correction."

"This chapter portrays an entire family attempting to carry out their responsibilities by their physical senses, without faith.

"All the natural senses play a conspicuous part—especially the sense of taste in which Isaac prided himself, but which gave him the wrong answer. Reliance on one's senses for spiritual discernment not only proves fallible, but often fouls up life unduly. Most importantly, however, the story is about deception."

An oral blessing was as legally binding as a written will in the ancient Near East. It finalized, and perhaps altered, the terms of the birthright. In the case of Abraham's family, it was a prophecy regarding through whom and how God would bless. When Jacob blessed his sons (49:1-28), each son received part of his blessing.

"As in modern society, inheritance under Nuzi law was effected by testamentary disposition, although the [Nuzi] tablets indicate that such a testament was often made orally. One of the tablets tells of a lawsuit between brothers concerning the possession of their late father's slave girl, Sululi-Ishtar. The youngest of three brothers, Tarmiya, was defending his elder brothers' claim to Sululi-Ishtar and the tablet sets out his testimony: 'My father, Huya, was sick and lay on a couch; then my father seized my hand and spoke thus to me. "My other sons, being older, have acquired a wife; so I give herewith Sululi-Ishtar as your wife."' In the end result the Court found in

---

1Leupold, 2:735.
2Ross, "Genesis, p. 72.
3Ibid., p. 73. Paragraph division omitted.
4See Davis, Paradise to ..., p. 239.
5See Mathews, Genesis 11:27—50:26, pp. 418-19, for clarification of the difference between a birthright and a blessing.
favour of Tarmiya, upholding his father's oral testamentary disposition.

"It also appears from another Nuzi tablet that even an oral testament commenced with an opening introductory statement such as: 'Now that I am grown old.' which was the legal phraseology to indicate that what was to follow constituted a testamentary disposition. In similar manner, Isaac indicated to his elder son Esau that he wished to bestow upon him his testamentary blessing: 'Behold now, I am old, I know not the day of my death' (Genesis 27:2)."  

27:1-4 Abraham's life ended with happiness, success, and a strong character. In contrast, physical and spiritual decay marked Isaac's old age.  

"In this the infirmity of his [Isaac's] flesh is evident. At the same time, it was not merely because of his partiality for Esau, but unquestionably on account of the natural rights of the firstborn, that he wished to impart the blessing to him, just as the desire to do this before his death arose from the consciousness of his patriarchal call."  

"It seems psychologically most probable that Isaac purposely forgot what God had determined; and at the same time by clever little sophistries he led himself to believe that if he bestowed the blessing on Esau, the divine word uttered long before would not be crossed. He that knows the duplicity and treachery of the human heart will not find it difficult to understand how a man will circumvent a word of God, no matter how clear it

---

1West, p. 71. See also Ephraim Speiser, "'I Know Not the Day of My Death,'" *Journal of Biblical Literature* 74 (1955):252-56.


3Keil and Delitzsch, 1:274.
be, if his heat is really set on what is at variance with that word."¹

"... Isaac's sensuality is more powerful than his theology."²

"Old Isaac, with his eyes so dim that he could not see, is the father of all those men who make their god their belly, who think too much and too often of what they shall eat and what they shall drink, who value their friends by the table they keep, and who are never so happy as when they are sitting over their venison and their wine."³

"We should make it our prayer to end well. To know how to grow old is a task for wisdom, the most difficult chapter in the book of living."⁴

27:5-17 It seems consistent with the character of Rebekah, as presented elsewhere in Genesis, to interpret her actions here as predictable, but not commendable. She was a woman who made quick decisions (cf. 24:58). Her motivation for what she did seems to have been a sincere desire to make sure that Isaac's blessing went to the divinely chosen, more responsible of her sons (cf. 25:23). While her motive seems to have been good, her method evidenced lack of faith in God.⁵ In this she reminds us of Sarai, who tried to obtain what God had promised illegitimately (16:1-3). Rebekah tried to "pull the wool" over Isaac's eyes.

"She prompts her son to lie and to deceive, and the vast irony of the situation is that they secure corruptly, and at infinite cost in suffering, what they would have won in any case, had they waited

---

¹Leupold, 2:736.
²Wenham, Genesis 16—50, p. 206.
³Whyte, 1:98-99.
⁴Blaiklock, p. 38.
⁵See Sharp, pp. 164-68.
for God's time, and the outworking of God's plan."¹

"Jacob is clearly less concerned with the rightness, the morality, of his mother's suggestion than he is with what happens to him if his disguise is discovered and his impersonation revealed."²

"Rebekah must have had rare culinary gifts to presume to make a mess of kid's meat taste like game."³

People used the black, silk-like hair of the camel-goat of the East ("young goats," v. 16) as a substitute for human hair as late as the Roman period.⁴

The reference to Isaac's blessing in verse 23 is proleptic. It refers to the blessing in verses 27-29, not some other blessing that preceded that one.

Isaac uttered his blessing (vv. 27-29) in poetic language, and God's Spirit doubtless inspired it, since it proved to be prophetic (cf. 49:1-27; Deut. 33; et al.). It was a divine oracle, a word from God.

The blessing involved material prosperity (v. 28), leadership among the nations, including those of Jacob's brothers (v. 29a), and the cursing of Jacob's enemies and the blessing of his friends and allies (v. 29b; cf. 12:3).

"Since the intention to give the blessing to Esau the firstborn did not spring from proper feelings toward Jehovah and His promises, the blessing itself, as the use of the word Elohim instead of Jehovah or El Shaddai (cf. xxviii. 3) clearly shows, could not rise to the full height of the divine blessings of salvation, but referred chiefly to the

---

¹Blaiklock, p. 37.
²Hamilton, The Book ... Chapters 18—50, p. 216.
³Leupold, 2:741.
⁴Keil and Delitzsch, 1:275, n. 1.
relation in which the two brothers and their descendants would stand to one another, the theme with which Isaac's soul was entirely filled. It was only the painful discovery that, in blessing against his will, he had been compelled to follow the saving counsel of God, which awakened in him the consciousness of his patriarchal vocation, and gave him the spiritual power to impart the 'blessing of Abraham' to the son whom he had kept back, but whom Jehovah had chosen, when he was about to send him away to Haran (xxviii. 3, 4)."

Isaac evidently knew that he had been resisting God's will and finally accepted defeat submissively ("Yes, and he shall be blessed," v. 33). Besides, in that culture, a paternal blessing, such as the one Isaac had uttered, was irrevocable.

"A discovered court record [from Nuzi] contains the blessing of a father for his sons which the court held binding. This explains Isaac's refusal of Esau's entreaty to change the blessing given to Jacob even though deceit had been involved."

"By showing that the blessing was irrevocable, even by the father who gave the blessing, the writer underscores an important feature of the blessing—its fulfillment is out of human hands."

Perhaps Isaac did not withdraw the blessing he had given Jacob, because he realized that God had overruled his carnal preference for Esau.

Esau's response: "he cried out with an exceedingly great and bitter cry" (v. 34), prefigures the response of all who live for the flesh when they eventually discover their fate.

---

1Ibid., 1:276-77.
3Sailhamer, The Pentateuch ..., p. 191.
Isaac's prophecy to Esau (vv. 39-40) was no true "blessing"; in fact, it resembled more of a "curse." At best, he introduced a disturbing element into the blessing he had given Jacob ("You will break his [Jacob's] yoke from your neck"), because Jacob had used deception to obtain it.

The mountains of Edom (Esau's "dwelling") are some of the most desolate and barren of any on earth today. They stand to the southeast of the Dead Sea. Esau's descendants would subsist by hunting people, just as Esau had subsisted by hunting game (v. 40a).

The Edomites served, revolted from, and were conquered by the Israelites repeatedly during their history. This is apparently what Isaac predicted in verse 40b. Saul defeated the Edomites after they enjoyed a long period of independence (1 Sam. 14:47). Then David made them his vassals (2 Sam. 8:14). They tried to revolt under Solomon but were unsuccessful (1 Kings 9:14 ff.). The Edomites were subject to Judah until King Joram's reign, when they rebelled successfully. In Amaziah's reign, Judah again subjugated them (2 Kings 14:7). They finally achieved permanent freedom from Judah during Ahaz's reign (2 Kings 16:6).

Hundreds of years later, John Hyrcanus conquered Edom, about 129 B.C., forced the Edomites to submit to circumcision, and incorporated them into the Jewish nation. Later, through Antipater and Herod, the Edomites established the Idumean dynasty over Judah, that lasted until the destruction of Jerusalem in A.D. 70. The writing prophets sometimes used "the Edomites" as the epitome of Israel's enemies.

Rebekah feared the loss of both of her sons as a result of her plot (v. 45). Esau might have killed Jacob, and Esau then might have fled, or an avenger of Jacob's blood might have slain him (cf. 9:6).
Rebekah used her dislike for Esau's wives as an excuse to gain Isaac's permission for Jacob to go to Paddan-aram. As previously noted, Paddan-aram was the area around Haran.¹

Evidently Rebekah had kept Esau's hatred for Jacob from his aged father, because she believed Isaac was near death (v. 41). Rebekah's deceit secured the blessing for Jacob, but it resulted in his having to flee from his home. She thought he would be gone only "a few days" (v. 44), but he stayed 20 years. As far as Genesis records, Rebekah never saw him again, though she expected to (v. 45).

"... she greatly underestimated the range of the mischief she had caused."²

"... her broaching the subject of Jacob's marriage [v. 46] was a masterstroke: it played equally on Isaac's self-interest and his principles. The prospect of a third Hittite daughter-in-law and a distracted wife would have unmanned even an Abraham."³

"Rebekah's manipulative language to spare Jacob again displays the poverty of Isaac and Rebekah's relationship. As demonstrated by the previous deception, Isaac and Rebekah do not seem able to communicate honestly with one another on important spiritual matters."⁴

Isaac evidently realized, by now, that his desire to give the blessing to Esau was not God's will, so, having given it to Jacob (27:27-29), he blessed him further (28:1-4).⁵

---

¹See the map "Abraham's Travels Outside the Promised Land" under my comments on 11:27-32 for its location.
²von Rad, p. 279.
³Kidner, p. 157.
⁴Waltke, *Genesis*, p. 382.
⁵Concerning Isaac's desire that Jacob marry someone from outside the Promised Land, see the note at 24:3-4.
This whole story is another remarkable demonstration of God's ability to use the sins of men and women to accomplish His purposes, and, at the same time, punish the sinners for their sins.

"What man intends for evil God utilizes for good."¹

Many years later, the aged Jacob blessed Joseph's younger son Ephraim instead of his older brother Manasseh (48:14-19). He certainly must have remembered then how he had deceived his father Isaac to get his blessing. Joseph's approach to Jacob on that occasion was honorable by contrast, and his life was free of the consequences of deceit. This was not true of Jacob's life.

Jacob reaped what he sowed (Gal. 6:7). Laban later deceived him, and later still, his own sons (in the case of the sale of Joseph) did so—even more cruelly than he deceived Isaac.²

This great story of Jacob's deception teaches that when God's people know His will, they should not resort to deceptive, manipulative schemes to attain spiritual success, but should pursue God's will righteously. Every member of Isaac's family behaved in a self-centered and unprincipled manner, yet God graciously overcame their sins. This reminds us that His mercy is the ultimate ground of salvation.

**Esau's further marriages 28:6-9**

Esau sought to obtain his parents' approval by marrying one of Abraham's descendants (a granddaughter, who was Ishmael's daughter Mahalath). The patriarch's wives were key to God's promises concerning descendants. Mahalath ("Dance," v. 9) is evidently another name for, and the same woman as, Basemath, Ishmael's daughter (36:2).

However, "he [Esau] failed to consider that Ishmael had been separated from the house of Abraham and family of promise by the appointment of God; so that it only furnished another proof that he had no thought of the religious interests of the

---

²For some helpful insights into Jacob's character, see R. Paul Stevens, "Family Feud," *His* 42:3 (December 1981):18-20.
chosen family and was unfit to be the recipient of divine revelation."¹

"Growing up in a household where it was well known why Abraham had taken pains to secure a non-Canaanite wife for Isaac, Esau never seems to have understood why this was done. The entire spiritual heritage and all spiritual traditions had not as yet begun to mean anything to Esau."²

6. Jacob's vision at Bethel 28:10-22

"From a 'stone pillow' to a 'stone pillar,' this account tells how Jacob's lodging place at Bethel became the most celebrated place of worship among the patriarchal narratives."³

Yahweh appeared at the top of an angel-filled stairway, restating the promise made to Abraham, and adding more promises of blessing and protection for Jacob. Upon waking, Jacob acknowledged God's presence, memorialized the place with a monument stone and a name (Bethel), and vowed to worship the LORD there if He did bless and protect him.

¹Keil and Delitzsch, 1:281.
²Leupold, 2:769.
"The two most significant events in the life of Jacob were nocturnal theophanies. The first was this dream at Bethel when
he was fleeing from the land of Canaan, which ironically was his by virtue of the blessing. The other was his fight at Peniel when he was attempting to return to the land. Each divine encounter was a life-changing event.”

Bethel receives more mention in the Old Testament than any other city but Jerusalem. This indicates its importance in biblical history.

28:10-17 The "ladder" (v. 12, Heb. sullam) evidently resembled a broad stairway or ramp. Some interpreters take it as an allusion to a "ziggurat," while others believe it refers to the slope or ascent of the mountain of Bethel. The NIV, TNIV, HCSB, and NET2 translators rendered this Hebrew word "stairway."

"The ladder was a visible symbol of the real and uninterrupted fellowship between God in heaven and His people upon earth. The angels upon it carry up the wants of men to God, and bring down the assistance and protection of God to men. The ladder stood there upon the earth, just where Jacob was lying in solitude, poor, helpless, and forsaken by men. Above in heaven stood Jehovah, and explained in words the symbol which he saw. Proclaiming Himself to Jacob as the God of his fathers, He not only confirmed to him all the promises of the fathers in their fullest extent, but promised him protection on his journey and a safe return to his home (vers. 13-15). But as the fulfillment of this promise to Jacob was still far off, God added the firm assurance, 'I will not leave thee till I have done (carried out) what I have told thee.'"

Other visions of God's heavenly throne-room appear in 1 Kings 22:19-22; Job 1:6-8; 2:1-3; Isa. 6; Ezek. 1; Zech. 1:10; 6:5; Rev. 4—5; et al. This was God's first revelation to Jacob, and

---

2 See C. Houtman, "What Did Jacob See In His Dream At Bethel?" Vetus Testamentum 27:3 (July 1977):337-51.
3 Keil and Delitzsch, 1:281-82.
it came in a dream (cf. John 1:51). Other passages contain promises (prophecies) of the land (12:7; 13:14-16; 15:18; 17:8; 24:7), but this one (vv. 13-14) is closest in terminology to the one in chapter 13, which also features a Bethel setting.

Jacob was the second person in the Bible to hear the assurance "I am with you" (v. 15). Isaac was the first (cf. 26:3, 24). This was a promise that God later repeated to Moses (Exod. 3:12), Joshua (Josh. 1:5), Gideon (Judg. 6:16), regarding Immanuel (Isa. 7:14; Matt. 1:23), and to all Christians (Matt. 28:20; Heb. 13:5).

Perhaps God's revelation surprised Jacob because he was preparing to leave the Promised Land (vv. 16-17). Jacob may have felt that God would abandon him, since he was leaving the land that God had promised his forefathers.

"The term 'fear' [v. 17, "afraid"] is used in the Bible to describe a mixture of terror and adoration, a worshipful fear (cf. Exod. 19:16)."¹

Bethel (lit. "house of God," v. 17) means "the place where God dwells." To Jacob, this was "the gate of heaven," the place where Jacob entered heaven (in his dream).

"As Abraham's vision anticipated narratives from the latter part of the Pentateuch, so Jacob's vision anticipated the events which were to come in the next several chapters."²

28:18-22 Jacob set up the stone on which he had rested his head to serve as a memorial of this revelation and God's promise (v. 18). Pouring oil on it constituted an act of consecration (cf. Lev. 8:10-12). Jacob did not build an altar in response to God's revelation, as his forefathers had done.

Jacob promised to make Yahweh his God "if" the LORD would be with him, protect him on his journey, provide for his needs, and bring him back to his father's house in safety. He also

¹Ross, Creation and ..., p. 491.
promised to make the stone on which he had slept into "God's house" and to give Him a tenth of all that the LORD gave him (vv. 20-22). He evidently meant that he would convert his pillar into an altar and worship God there (cf. vv. 20-21; 31:13; 35:1-3, 7). This sounds like Jacob made a conditional vow—conditioned on God faithfulness. He swore that Yahweh would be his God if God proved faithful to him. This is how most of the English translations of Jacob's vow read.

However, "if" (v. 20) can be translated "since." If "since" is the correct translation, this was not a crass bargain, as it appears to have been, though the record of Jacob's life shows that he typically was keen on negotiating deals. In this case, Jacob was promising that he would fulfill his vow when God did these things for him, not if He would do them. His vow then should be understood as a response to God's promises to him (v. 15). I prefer the former, conditional vow, interpretation.

Jacob was apparently a believer in Yahweh already, but his commitment to God at this time appears to have been somewhat selfish and conditional. He had not yet fully surrendered and dedicated himself to God.

"The assurance of God's presence should bring about in every believer the same response of worship and confidence it prompted in Jacob. This is the message from the beginning: God by grace visits His people and promises them protection and provision so that they might be a blessing to others. They in turn were to respond in faith, fearing Him, worshiping Him, offering to Him, vowing to Him, and making memorials for future worshipers at such places."

Jacob's relationship with Yahweh was quite different from what Abraham's or Isaac's relationship to Him had been. God tested Abraham, but Jacob tested God. God told Abraham to leave his country before he entered into

---

1 von Rad, p. 286; Leupold, 2:780.
2 On tithing, see my note on 14:20.
3 Ross, "Genesis," p. 75.
blessing, but Jacob imposed conditions on God before he vowed to bless God.\(^1\) Jacob was willing to accept God’s promises, but he did not commit himself to God until God proved Himself faithful to him personally. God blessed Jacob because of His election of him, and because of Abraham’s and Isaac’s faith, more than because of Jacob’s faith, at this time.

Many believers bargain with God as Jacob did here. They agree to worship Him on their terms, rather than because God has proven Himself faithful in the past. God often accommodates such weak faith, but the fact that He does so does not commend the practice of bargaining with God.

The personal revelation of God’s presence and promised blessings inspires genuine worship. This worship is the appropriate response to such revelation.

7. Jacob’s marriages and Laban’s deception 29:1–30

The long account of Jacob’s relationship with Laban (chs. 29—31) is the centerpiece of the Jacob story (chs. 25—35). It is a story within a story, and it too has a chiastic structure. At its center is the account of the birth of Jacob’s sons, who became the forefathers of the tribes of Israel (29:31–35).

Jacob met Rachel at a community well, and watered her flock of sheep, in spite of opposition against doing so. Jacob’s love for Rachel (in the sense that he strongly preferred and desired her for marriage) led him to serve Laban for seven years to obtain her as his wife. But Laban deceived Jacob into marrying Leah, the firstborn, so Jacob had to work an extra seven years for Rachel.

"In Laban Jacob met his match and his means of discipline."\(^2\)

"Jacob is now in the greatest of all schools, that of experience, and there are many lessons to learn. These three chapters (xxix-xxxi.) cover forty years [sic, probably twenty years] of his life, and are the record of a large part of his training."\(^3\)

---

\(^2\)Kidner, p. 159.
"More than any other book in the OT, Genesis emphasizes the east (see 3:24; 4:16; 10:30; 11:2; 13:11; 25:6 [and 29:1]) as a direction of some significance."\(^1\)

Jacob had traveled about 450 miles from Beersheba to Haran (v. 4). Notice the absence of prayer for divine guidance to the woman of God's choosing, which dominates the story of Abraham's servant's visit to the same area for the same purpose (ch. 22). Also, Jacob traveled alone and on foot, whereas Abraham's servant came with a well-laden camel caravan.

"True to his character, Jacob proceeds arrogantly, questioning the shepherds' carefree behavior (v. 7). For all the criticism one might level at Jacob's conduct, he was no slacker in his labor ethic (31:6, 38-41)."\(^2\)

Nahor was actually the grandfather of Laban, not his father (v. 5; cf. 22:20-23). The well was probably a cistern that had a mouth with a large circumference (v. 8). A very large stone, that required several men to remove it, evidently covered it. After they moved the stone, water could be drawn for the flocks to drink. The male shepherds may have been unauthorized to roll the stone away because the well belonged to Laban. Their inability may have been legal rather than physical.\(^3\)

Jacob wept—perhaps for joy and relief (v. 11)—but he did not worship God (cf. 24:26). He had ended his journey, was now in the right place, and had met the right person—he thought. This is one of the few places in Scripture that we read of a man kissing a woman. Jacob apparently acted solely on the basis of Rachel's physical attractiveness (see v. 17). Her name means "Ewe Lamb."

---
\(^1\)Hamilton, *The Book ... Chapters 18—50*, p. 252.
\(^3\)Bush, 2:116-17.
"When Abraham’s servant had discovered Rebekah's identity, he worshiped the Lord (24:24, 26), but here Jacob flexed his muscle, proving his capacity to serve Laban's house."¹

"This scene [29:1-14] is chiefly about God's providence versus Jacob's prayerlessness "²

The suggestion of some interpreters that Laban adopted Jacob as his son is questionable.³ There is not adequate information in the text to support it.

29:13-20 Leah’s eyes were evidently dull (NEB) and lacking in luster ("didn't sparkle" CEV), rather than bright (v. 17). Fiery eyes were, and still are, considered the height of beauty among Near Eastern people.⁴ The Hebrew word translated "weak" (NASB, NIV, TNIV, ESV) can also mean "delicate" (NKJV, HCSB) or "lovely" (NRSV) or "tender (AV). Evidently Leah had unusual eyes. Her name means "Wild Cow."

"Regarding marriage generally, the Nuzi tablets provided that if a man worked over a period of time for the father of a girl whom he wished to marry, then he would have the right to take the girl as his wife."⁵

"Seven years was a handsome offer: Jacob was clearly not risking a refusal—a fact which Laban would not fail to note and exploit, as Jacob had exploited Esau's eagerness (25:32)."⁶

Casual laborers received between one-half and one shekel a month in old Babylonia.⁷ Jacob gave seven years of wages for

²Waltke, Genesis, p. 402.
⁵West, p. 70.
⁶Kidner, p. 160.
Rachel's hand in marriage. Later, we learn that Laban changed Jacob's wages several times (31:7), so it impossible to know just how much Jacob paid Laban for Rachel.

The chiastic structure of verses 20-30 focuses attention on the complication caused by deception:

"A Jacob's payment for his wife (20)  

B Consummation of the marriage to Leah by deception (21-24)  

C Jacob's accusation against Laban (25)  

C' Laban's defense (26)  

B' Consummation of the marriage to Rachel by negotiation (27-30a)  

A' Jacob's payment for his wife (30b)."¹

29:21-30 "This was about one of the meanest pranks ever played on a man."²

Jacob had pretended to be Esau's older brother, and now Leah pretended to be her younger sister—by going to bed with Jacob. Laban and Leah deceived Jacob, as Jacob and Rebekah had deceived Isaac. Perhaps Jacob's eating and drinking at the feast had clouded his mind (v. 22). The darkness of his tent at night, additionally, may have made it hard for him to see.³ Furthermore, in that culture a bride customarily entered her husband's presence "veiled."⁴ Gerhard von Rad wrote "heavily veiled," and Aalders "completely veiled."⁵

One year an Indian student of mine told me that his father did not see his mother's face for three days after their wedding.

¹Ross, Creation and ..., p. 498.  
²Leupold, 2:795.  
⁴S. R. Driver, Genesis, p. 271.  
⁵von Rad, p. 291; Aalders, p. 115.
It is still customary among some Indians for the bride to remain veiled before and after the consummation of the marriage.\(^1\)

It was customary for the bride's father to give her a large present when she got married: a dowry. In the ancient world, the gift normally consisted of clothing, furniture, and money, and it served as security for the wife in case her husband died or divorced her. Some dowries were exceptionally valuable, such as slave-girls (24:61; 29:29) or a city (1 Kings 9:16). Laban was being generous, giving away two of his servants.\(^2\)

As Jacob had deceived Isaac by taking advantage of his inability to see due to poor eyesight (27:36), so Laban deceived Jacob by taking advantage of his inability to see in the dark tent (29:25). Earlier Jacob had deceptively pretended to be the older brother (ch. 27), and now Laban tricked him by replacing the younger with the older sister. Laban was just as deceitful as Jacob (v. 26)!

"For despicability Laban takes the prize in the Old Testament."\(^3\)

He should have told Jacob of this custom, of giving the older daughter in marriage before the younger, earlier, if indeed it was a custom, which seems questionable.

The bridal "week" was the week of feasting that followed a marriage (v. 27; cf. Judg. 14:12, 17). Jacob received Rachel seven days after he had consummated his marriage to Leah (cf. vv. 28, 30). (Josephus wrote that after the second seven years, Jacob took Rachel as his wife.\(^4\) As mentioned above, the Hebrew name "Rachel" means "Ewe," and "Leah" means "Cow." Ironically, Laban treated his own daughters like cattle and sheep, and used them for bargaining and trading. "Zilpah" means "Small Nose," and "Bilhah" means "Carefree."

---


\(^3\)Leupold, 2:798.

Notice that Jacob was behaving like his parents, who each favored one son above the other, by favoring one of his wives above the other. In both cases, serious family problems followed. The Mosaic Law later prohibited marrying two sisters at the same time (Lev. 18:18). Bigamy and polygamy were never God's will (2:24).¹

"Jacob had planned to take Rachel as his wife, but God intended him to have Leah."²

Evidence will follow that Leah was the more "spiritual" of the two sisters; that is, she valued unseen things more than seen things.

God remains faithful to His promises to bless His people, but in the process He may discipline them for their previous unresolved sins, and often does so in kind (i.e., with talionic judgment; cf. Prov. 3:12; Gal. 6:7; Heb. 12:5-6).³

"Jacob was getting what he deserved. In this light the seven extra years that Jacob had to serve Laban appear as a repayment for his treatment of Esau. By calling such situations to the attention of the reader, the writer begins to draw an important lesson from these narratives. Jacob's deceptive schemes for obtaining the blessing did not meet with divine approval. Through Jacob's plans God's will had been accomplished; but the writer is intent on pointing out, as well, that the schemes and tricks were not of God's design."⁴


God formed Jacob's family, the ancestors of the tribes of Israel, as He had promised Jacob at Bethel. Unfortunately, Jacob and his wives lived in envy and friction over how God chose to bless them. The real issue of the two sisters' struggle, in this pericope, is the same as that of the brothers',

---

¹See Wenham, Genesis 16—50, p. 249.
³For a fascinating narration of this story in expanded form, see Thomas Mann, "Jacob Takes a Bride," Bible Review (Spring 1986):53-59, which is an excerpt from Mann's Joseph and His Brothers.
⁴Sailhamer, "Genesis," p. 199.
Esau's and Jacob's struggle: "Who will take the lead and be first, and who will have to serve?" When people refuse to let God control, they seek to take control themselves.

"Jacob had planned to take Rachel as his wife, but God intended him to have Leah. Thus in two major reversals in Jacob's life, we can begin to see the writer's theme taking shape. Jacob sought to marry Rachel, but Laban tricked him. Then Jacob sought to build a family through Rachel, but she was barren; and God opened Leah's womb."\(^1\)

This record of Jacob's children, the center of the Jacob story structurally, is important for at least three reasons:

1. It shows God's faithfulness in providing descendants as He had promised.

   "Now the account centers on the fulfillment of Yahweh's promise to be with Jacob and to bless him [28:15]."\(^2\)

2. It gives the origins and circumstances surrounding the births of the tribal heads of Israel.

   "The theme of the Pentateuch is not difficult to discern. It is the story of the birth and adolescence of a nation."\(^3\)

3. It explains the roots of much of the tribal rivalry that follows in Israel's history.

The section culminates with the birth of Joseph (30:24), which proved to be the cue for Jacob to return home (30:25).

**29:31-35** Moses recorded the births of Leah's first four sons: Reuben, Simeon, Levi, and Judah. When the clause "the Lord saw" occurs (v. 31), His acting decisively, often for the weak and oppressed, follows soon (cf. 6:5; 7:1; 18:21; 31:12; Exod. 2:25; 4:31).

---

\(^1\)Ibid., p. 200.
\(^2\)Leupold, 2:800.
\(^3\)Whybray, p. 9.
30:1-8  Rachel's reactions to her barrenness were anger and despair, and Jacob's responses were anger and defensiveness. Both Sarah and Rachel resorted to a custom acceptable in their culture, though contrary to God's will, to secure an heir for their husbands (cf. 16:1-2). Isaac had prayed that God would open Rebekah's womb, and had waited (25:21).

The conflict between Rachel and Leah focuses on love and motherhood. Rachel had Jacob's love, but she could not become a mother. Conversely, Leah was the mother of Jacob's children, but she could not win his love.¹

"It seems that Jacob's love for Rachel savored too much of infatuation growing out of purely physical attraction."²

The account of the birth of Bilhah's sons, Dan and Naphtali, follows (vv. 5-8).

30:9-13  Zilpah, Leah's maid, bore Jacob two sons: Gad and Asher.

"The terms wife and concubine are used more loosely in the patriarchal period. Three women in the patriarchal period are called both wife and concubine: Hagar (Gen. 16:3; 25:6 indirectly), Keturah (25:1; cf. 25:6; 1 Chron. 1:32), and Bilhah (Gen. 30:4; 35:22). Each of these concubines is an auxiliary wife to the patriarch, not a slave, but subordinate to the wife who is her mistress. After the patriarchal period, the term wife is never used as a synonym for concubine. Zilpah, though never called a concubine (cf. 30:9), has the same social position as Bilhah (cf. 37:2)."³

30:14-21  The mandrake, a member of the potato and tomato family, is a plant that bears bluish flowers in winter and yellowish plum-size fruit in summer. The fruit has a strong, pleasant fragrance,

²Leupold, 2:801.
³Waltke, Genesis, p. 411.
and was thought to help barren women conceive. Some Arabs still use it as an aphrodisiac, and call it "devil's apple" (cf. Song of Sol. 7:13).¹

"The outcome was ironical, the mandrakes doing nothing for Rachel, while Leah gained another son by parting with them."²

"Just as Jacob had purchased the birthright for a pot of stew (25:29-34), so also Leah purchased the right to more children by Jacob with the mandrakes of her son Reuben (30:14-16)."³

"'Sleep' (skb), as a euphemism for sex, is never used for loving marital intercourse in this book, only for illicit or forced sex: Lot's daughters with Lot (19:32-35); the Philistines with Rebekah (26:10); Shechem with Dinah (34:2, 7); Reuben with Bilhah (35:22); Potiphar's wife with Joseph (39:7, 10, 12, 14)."⁴

Leah received her other children, Issachar, Zebulun, and Dinah, only because "God listened to Leah" (v. 17), not because of some magic supposedly connected with the mandrakes.

Dinah's name is related to the Hebrew word that means "judgment." She was evidently the only daughter of Jacob (cf. 46:15).

30:22-24 God eventually granted Rachel a son, Joseph. He was born at the end of Jacob's fourteenth year in Laban's service.

The jealousy, bickering, superstition, and weak faith, demonstrated by Jacob and his wives, stand out in this section. God's gift of children was gracious; He gave them in spite of, rather than because of, the behavior of the parents. Rachel acknowledged this finally (vv. 23-24), as did Jacob.

²Kidner, p. 162.
³Sailhamer, "Genesis," p. 201.
⁴Waltke, Genesis, p. 413.
The use of the names Elohim ("God," the mighty One) and Yahweh (LORD," the covenant keeping One), in each story, reflects the attitudes toward God of the various characters, and shows their relationships with Him.

"On the human plane the story demonstrates the craving of human beings for love and recognition, and the price of thwarting it; on the divine level it shows once again the grace of God choosing difficult and unpromising material."¹

"Jacob's partiality and his general handling of his family led to strife and mother groupings that were to affect the history of Israel for centuries thereafter."²

Believers should not envy and strive, which leads to bitter conflicts, but should obey God—trusting Him to dispense His blessings wisely, justly, and compassionately.

The actions of Jacob, Rachel, and Leah in this chapter, and those of Abraham and Sarah in chapter 16, raise questions about surrogate parenting.

Today, husbands and wives who cannot have children naturally, sometimes choose to secure the services of a third person, who can provide a needed reproductive function, and thereby enable them to have children. For example, if the wife cannot carry a baby in her womb for a full term pregnancy, some doctors recommend that the couple use the services of another woman. If acceptable, they implant the couple's fertilized egg in her womb, that she agrees to "rent" for the nine-month gestation period. Another example is the securing of sperm from a donor (artificial insemination), if the husband is sterile. There are many ways in which childless couples can now become parents with this kind of help, from a third, and sometimes a fourth, party. These situations are somewhat similar to what we find in Genesis 16 and 30. The common tie is that, in all these cases, someone other than the husband and wife is essential to "service" the conception of the child.

I do not believe that adoption is similar to "surrogate parenting," because in adoption, a husband and wife simply agree to assume the responsibility of raising someone else's child, as their own, who has already been or will

¹Kidner, p. 161.
²H. Vos, p. 113.
be born naturally. They do not require a third party for the conception of the child, as in surrogate parenting.

9. **Jacob's new contract with Laban 30:25-43**

Jacob and Laban ("White") made an agreement, which both men felt they could manipulate to their own advantage. However, God sovereignly overruled to bless Jacob, as He had promised, in spite of Laban's deceit and Jacob's deviousness (cf. Job 5:13; Ps. 7:15; 1 Cor. 3:19).

As the previous pericope shows how Yahweh provided *descendants* (seed) for Jacob, as He had promised, this one demonstrates how He made Jacob *wealthy* (blessing). In both cases, God acted in spite of, and independent of, the bickering, superstition, deceit, and disobedience of Jacob and his wives.

"By crossing the heterozygotes among themselves, Jacob would produce, according to the laws of heredity, twenty-five percent spotted sheep. Thus he multiplies his flock. Jacob has displayed ingenuity; he has not practiced deception. ... Jacob's knowledge of zoology is far from primitive. But perhaps such knowledge has been given him by God, just as his son's capacity to interpret dreams was a gift from God."

Another explanation is that Jacob did not really understand the laws of heredity, but that he just did what he thought would work, and God blessed him. Jacob was seemingly relying on a popular superstition, namely, that certain experiences of the mother during pregnancy influenced the condition of her offspring. He did what he did in order to mislead Laban (vv. 37-39). At least one writer thought that Jacob was mistakenly counting on this custom to ensure fertility among his flocks:

"All marking of the offspring such as that which Jacob thought he was accomplishing in Laban's flocks, is completely impossible. In the placenta and umbilical cord, which constitutes the only connection between the mother and the fetus, there are *no nerves*. Thus, absolutely no mechanism

---

exists whereby the mother can mark her offspring in the way that Jacob thought he was accomplishing the marking."\(^{1}\)

Whether Jacob was very smart or very superstitious, the success of Jacob’s plan was due to the grace of God ultimately (cf. 31:10-12).

"As with many of the tricks which Jacob attempts in these narratives, God blessed Jacob in spite of them, not because of or through them."\(^{2}\)

The herdsmen believed the stronger members of the flock mated in the summer, and the weaker ones in the fall (vv. 41-42).\(^{3}\) Jacob’s ownership of camels (v. 43) proves that he was very rich, since these animals were rare and costly in Jacob’s day.\(^{4}\)

Jacob’s behavior was devious (deceitful and taking unfair advantage), in that he sought to prosper at the expense of his employer. The text records that Jacob became very wealthy ("exceedingly prosperous," v. 43), but it does not say that his wealth was "a blessing from God" here. God blessed Jacob in spite of his actions, not because of them.

Many carnal Christians prosper materially for the same reason Jacob did. Material prosperity is not necessarily a reward for godliness. Jacob made his own fortune, but the text says that God made Abraham rich (24:35). God allowed Jacob to become wealthy through his own toil and deception. God probably would have done more for Jacob than he could have done for himself, if Jacob had placed himself under God's authority. That is what God usually does.

The lesson of this section is that people who experience God’s material blessing need to acknowledge that it comes from Him, rather than from their own abilities.

---


10. Jacob's flight from Haran ch. 31

In this chapter, Jacob was motivated to return to Canaan, due to Laban's hostility and encouragement from Leah and Rachel. When Laban overtook Jacob in Gilead, Jacob not only defended his own actions of leaving with his share of the livestock without giving notice, but he also accused Laban of deceit. This silenced Laban and led him to request a peace treaty with Jacob.

Jacob's departure for Canaan 31:1-21

God had been faithful in blessing Jacob, as He had promised Abraham and Isaac. Moses recorded the testimony to that fact in this section. Jacob acknowledged that God was responsible for his prosperity. God's goodness, and His command to return to the Promised Land, as well as Laban's growing hostility, motivated Jacob to leave Paddan-aram.

It is unclear, from what Jacob reported to his wives, exactly when the angel of God appeared to him in the dream (v. 11). This may have occurred before or at the same time as the revelation referred to earlier in this passage (v. 3). It seems likely, however, that this was the same revelation, and was God's second one to Jacob.

In this revelation, Jacob learned that God had been responsible for his becoming richer (v. 12). Jacob credited God with this and with his own survival (vv. 5, 7). This is the first time in the narrative that Jacob emerges as a man of public faith. He finally takes the leadership in his home, and his wives, for the first time, follow his lead.

"This is another case of the 'Ruth effect,' where the foreign wife commits herself and future to the God of her adopted family."¹

31:1-16 The increasing antagonism of Laban's household ("Jacob has taken away all that was our father's") encouraged Jacob to obey God's command to return to the Promised Land (vv. 1-2).

"The true character of Laban is clearly seen from the fact that his daughters entirely sided with

¹Ibid., p. 510.
Jacob against their own father. They too had experienced their father's selfishness and greed, and were ready to approve of their husband's project and to go with him."\(^1\)

31:17-21

"Rachel's theft of her father's idols [teraphim] reflects the Hurrian custom of keeping household gods. Nevertheless, the real significance of what she did, and perhaps the reason for the theft, lies in the fact that according to the Nuzi tablets he who possessed the household gods was the legitimate heir."\(^2\)

Evidently Rachel wanted Jacob to remain Laban's heir, even though sons had been born to Laban after Jacob arrived in Haran, presumably (cf. v. 1).

Other writers, however, dispute this significance of the household gods at this time, as well as Rachel's motivation:

"The supposed role of the teraphim or 'household gods' (Gen. 31:19, 30-35) as constituting the title-deeds to inheritances seems also to be fallacious; Rachel simply took them for her own protection and blessing."\(^3\)

These gods were usually small figurines two to three inches long, sometimes carried on the body as charms, many of which archaeologists have discovered. They may have represented departed ancestors or gods that their makers venerated.\(^4\) Rachel may also have hoped that these "gods" would make her a fruitful mother.\(^5\) Apparently Laban's family worshipped false gods as well as the true God (cf. Josh. 24:1-3).

---

\(^1\) Thomas, *Genesis*, p. 285.
\(^2\) West, p. 70. See also Wood, *A Survey ...*, p. 28; Free, p. 71.
"It is curious that Rachel, and not Leah should have almost always turned out to be Jacob's greatest hindrance in life."¹

The writer identified Jacob's deception as such (i.e., "Jacob deceived Laban," tricked him) when he fled from Paddan-aram (v. 20).

Perhaps "Laban's nationality is mentioned [in verses 20 and 24] because the Syrians were known from of old as the trickiest people; here one of this people in a kind of just retribution meets one trickier than himself."²

**Laban's confrontation with Jacob 31:22-55**

God had promised to be with Jacob and to return him safely to Canaan (28:15). We see God doing this, in spite of Laban's opposition, in this section.

"It was only by divine prospering and protection (24) that Jacob brought anything, even his life, back from exile."³

"Whatever wealth Abraham may have forfeited upon leaving the family unit of Terah in Haran comes to his heirs in this most unimaginable way."⁴

31:22-42  God revealed Himself to people other than the patriarchs in those days (Laban, v. 29; cf. Abimelech in 20:3). Many scholars believe that Job also lived in the patriarchal period.

"The behavior of Laban is true to life, and every expression is familiar to my ear 'as household words.' Laban says: The God of your father spake unto me yesternight, saying, Take thou heed that

---

² Leupold, 2:841.
³ Kidner, p. 165.
thou speak not to Jacob either good or bad [v. 29]. Now we should think that Laban was uttering his own condemnation, and it appears strange that Jacob did not retort upon him by asking, Why, then, have you followed me? You have disobeyed the command of God, according to your own admission. Jacob, however, knew very well that such a plea would avail nothing. Laban believed that he fulfilled the intent of the divine command merely by refraining to injure Jacob, and so the latter understood it. The terms of the order were most comprehensive and stringent; but the real intention was to forbid violence, and this sort of construction must be applied to Oriental language in a thousand cases, or we shall push simple narratives into absurdities, and make men, and even the God of Truth, contradict himself."

"Jacob and Rachel are again two of a kind. This time both almost bring ruin on the family by their risk taking: she by her rash theft, he by his rash vow ([v. 32] cf. his sons' rash vow in 44:6-12)."

The teraphim were already "nothing gods," but they became unclean and suffered humiliation when Rachel, who claimed to be unclean, sat on them while menstruating (vv. 34-35; cf. Lev. 15:20).

"... it is still very common for Arabs to hide stolen property under the padding of their saddles. I have known many such thefts of modern teraphim (pictures and images), and by women too. And why not? It is surely not absurd to steal the god whose aid you invoke to assist you to steal other things."
Under traditional ancient Near Eastern law, a shepherd was not held responsible for losses to his master's flocks due to attacking wild beasts and, in some cases, thieves.¹ Yet Jacob had borne these losses. Laban had not only cheated Jacob, but he demanded compensation from Jacob for dead animals that Jacob was not personally responsible for (v. 39).

"God has corked the bottle of his [Laban's] aggressiveness [with Jacob's comments]."²

"Each of the three patriarchs had to be ingloriously extricated from some adventure."³

Note the similarity between Jacob's escape from Laban and his descendants' escape from Egypt in the Exodus.

Jacob believed that he was innocent until proved guilty, but Laban felt he was guilty until proved innocent. "The fear of Isaac" (vv. 42, 53) refers to the God whom Isaac feared. Jacob's words in verse 42 summarize his whole life in Paddanaram.

31:43-55 Jacob and Laban then made a parity covenant (peace treaty). They set up a "memorial stone" (Heb. misbah, "standing stone") to mark the spot, gathered stones in a "heap," and ate a meal together as part of the rite involved in establishing a covenant (vv. 44-48). They may have erected the "heap" of stones (Heb. gal, "cairn," v. 46), both as a table for the meal and as a memorial of the event. Standing stones (stone pillars) sometimes marked supposed dwelling places of the gods (cf. 28:17-18), and cairns (stone heaps) often marked graves (cf. Josh. 7:26; 8:29; 2 Sam. 18:17).

"Galeed" ("witness heap," v. 47) is the name from which "Gilead" came. Gilead became a common name for this mountainous area east of the Jordan River, between the Sea

---

¹Wenham, Genesis 16—50, p. 277.
²Fokkelman, p. 166.
³Kidner, p. 165.
of Galilee (Cinnereth, Hebrew for "lyre" denoting the shape of the lake) and the Dead (Salt) Sea (cf. vv. 21, 23, 25).

The so-called "Mizpah (lit. "watchtower" or "outlook point") blessing" was not really a promise between friends, but a warning between antagonists who did not trust each other (v. 49). They called on God to keep each other true to the terms of the covenant they had just made: "May the Lord keep watch between you and me when we are absent one from the other." They could not check on each other themselves.

"This covenant also might be called a nonaggression pact."¹

"It is impossible to avoid noticing the curious misconception of the term 'mizpah' which characterizes its use today. As used for a motto on rings, Christmas cards, and even as the title of an organization, it is interpreted to mean union, trust, fellowship; while its original meaning was that of separation, distrust, and warning. Two men, neither of whom trusted the other, said in effect: 'I cannot trust you out of my sight. The Lord must be the watchman between us if we and our goods are to be kept safe from each other.'"²

Laban swore by the God of Abraham and the God of Nahor (Abraham and Nahor were brothers) and the God of their father (Terah; v. 53). Abraham was Jacob's ancestor, and Nahor was Laban's ancestor. Jacob swore by the fear of his father Isaac, (the God whom his father Isaac feared; v. 54). Perhaps Jacob described God as he did in order to highlight the difference between himself and Laban; they each had their own designation of God.

This chapter teaches that those who are obediently following God's call and are experiencing His blessing can be confident that He will protect them.

¹H. Vos, p. 122.
²Thomas, Genesis, p. 287.
11. Jacob's attempt to appease Esau 32:1-21

Chapters 32 and 33 can be viewed as one episode in the life of Jacob. They describe his return to the Promised Land, including his meeting with Esau. There are thematic parallels between these chapters and chapter 31.

In spite of the vision of God's angelic assisting messengers, Jacob divided his people into two groups—as a precaution—when he heard that Esau was coming to meet him with 400 men. Furthermore, in addition to praying for God's deliverance, he sought to pacify Esau's anger with an expensive gift.

Jacob had been able to handle his problems himself "by hook or by crook" until now. At this point in his experience, God brought him to the end of his natural resources.

"As Jacob is at the precipice of receiving the promise of Canaan, he is not yet morally ready to carry out the blessing. Jacob must possess his own faith, obtaining the blessing through personal encounter, not by heredity alone."¹

"The events of this chapter are couched between two accounts of Jacob's encounter with angels (vv. 1, 25). The effect of these two brief pictures of Jacob's meeting with angels on his return to the land is to align the present narrative with the similar picture of the Promised Land in the early chapters of Genesis. The land was guarded on its borders by angels. The same picture was suggested early in the Book of Genesis when Adam and Eve were cast out of the Garden of Eden and 'cherubim' were positioned on the east of the garden to guard the way to the tree of life. It can hardly be accidental that as Jacob returned from the east, he was met by angels at the border of the Promised Land. This brief notice may also be intended to alert the reader to the meaning of Jacob's later wrestling with the 'man' at Peniel (vv. 25-30). The fact that Jacob had met with angels here suggests that the man at the end of the chapter is also an angel."²

32:1-2 These "angels" (messengers) must have resembled the angels Jacob had seen at Bethel (28:12), in order for him to have

recognized them as angels. They joined his own company of travelers for Jacob's protection (cf. Ps. 34:7). This is the reason for the name "Mahanaim" (i.e., "double host" or "double camp").\(^1\) Jacob probably saw the "camp of angels" (God's camp) as a source of comfort to his own camp as he prepared to enter the Promised Land.

"Although outside the land of promise, he was not outside the hand of promise."\(^2\)

32:3-12 Why did Jacob initiate contact with "Esau in the land of Seir, the country of Edom" (v. 3)?

"He knows that there can be no peace and quiet until his relations with Esau are assured and put on a proper footing. Not until that matter was settled could Jacob feel certain of his future."\(^3\)

Esau may have had a large army ("four hundred men," v. 6) because he had needed to build one in order to subjugate the Horite (Hurrian) population of Seir. His soldiers probably included his own servants plus the Canaanite and Ishmaelite relations of his wives.

Jacob's reaction to Esau's apparently hostile advance against him was to try to protect himself (vv. 7-8). This was Jacob's standard response to trouble.

"There is nothing generous in the whole matter; nothing like saying, 'These are all my children; I can not [sic] choose between them; come life, come death, it shall come upon us all together.' Far, far from this noble spirit. He [Jacob] in effect says, 'You handmaids and our children go first; if any are to be killed, let it be you. And Leah, go you and your sons next.' This story needs two remarks to set certain matters in their proper light. The first is, that Jacob, in this affair, is no

---

\(^1\) Thomas, *Through the ...*, p. 58.


more than a type of every Arab emeer [emir] in the country, and, indeed, of nearly every Oriental household. Such favoritism is, and always has been, the prevailing custom of the East. He therefore did nothing but what the laws and domestic regulations of his day and generation sanctioned. The second remark is, that we have in this conduct of the father an explanation of the intense hatred to Joseph. 

This time Jacob knew that self-preservation would not be enough. So, he called on God for help (vv. 9-12). We need to be right with God before we can be right with our brothers.

Jacob’s prayer (his first recorded prayer) reflects his deeply felt need for God’s help and his own humility (vv. 9-12). One writer likened its form to the penitential psalms. He reminded God of His past dealings with his forefathers and with himself (v. 9). He confessed his personal unworthiness and lack of any claim upon God’s favor (v. 10). By calling himself "your servant," Jacob was making himself ready to serve God. He requested divine deliverance and acknowledged his own fear (v. 11). Finally, he claimed God’s promise of a continuing line of descendants (v. 12). This is an excellent model prayer.

"He [Jacob] should not be sharply criticized for taking precautionary measures first and praying afterward. Many a man in the face of extreme danger has lost his sense of proportion. Besides, there are emergencies that call for action first and prayer afterward." 

32:13-21 Though he hoped for God's help, Jacob did not fail to do all that he himself could do to appease Esau (vv. 13-15); he offered his magnanimous gifts diplomatically, in order to pacify his offended brother. Jacob was a planner and schemer, and, consequently, he struggled. He planned to take Esau's

---

2Waltke, Genesis, p. 443.
3Leupold, 2:866.
birthright and blessing, and he planned to get rich off of Laban. Now he schemed to pacify Esau. Some interpreters have seen this as evidence that Jacob was not trusting God.\(^1\)

"As the narrative unfolds, however, it was not Jacob's plan that succeeded but his prayer. When he met with Esau, he found that Esau had had a change of heart. Running to meet Jacob, Esau embraced and kissed him and wept (33:4). All of Jacob's plans and schemes had come to naught. In spite of them all, God had prepared Jacob's way."\(^2\)

Jacob's ability to give Esau 580 animals proves that God had made him enormously wealthy.

"Jacob's behavioral response was classically narcissistic."\(^3\)

In view of God's many promises of protection, believers can pray with confidence for His deliverance, and do not need to give away His provisions to appease their enemies.

**12. Jacob at the Jabbok 32:22-32**

"Hebrew narrative style often includes a summary statement of the whole passage followed by a more detailed report of the event. Here v. 22 is the summary statement, while v. 23 begins the detailed account."\(^4\)

The site of this incident was probably just a few miles east of the Jordan Valley (v. 22). The Jabbok River joins the Jordan River about midway (north-to-south) between the Sea of Chinnereth (Galilee) and the Salt (Dead) Sea.\(^5\)

---

\(^1\)E.g., McGee, 1:132.
\(^3\)Shepperson, p. 183.
\(^4\)The NET Bible note on 32:22.
\(^5\)On the location and significance of the Jabbok River, see Bryant G. Wood, "Journey Down the Jabbok," *Bible and Spade* (Spring 1978):57-64.
It was when Jacob was "alone," after having done everything he could to secure his own safety, that God came to him (v. 24). An unidentified man assaulted ("wrestled with") Jacob, and he had to fight for his life. Though not explicitly stated, this "man" appears to have been the angel of the LORD: the pre-incarnate Christ (vv. 28-30; cf. Hos. 12:3-4).

Note that God took the initiative in wrestling with Jacob, not vice versa. God was bringing Jacob to the end of himself. He was leading him to a settled conviction that God was superior to him, and that he must submit to God's leadership in his life (cf. Rom. 12:1-2). This event was the climax of Jacob's spiritual development and similar to Abraham's experience of offering Isaac on Moriah.\(^1\)

"The great encounter with God came when Jacob knew himself to be exposed to a situation wholly beyond him."\(^2\)

This was not a vision or a dream, but a real event. The injury to Jacob's hip joint proves this. It was God's third revelation to Jacob.

"Jacob was not looking for another fight. He has Uncle Laban in back of him and Brother Esau ahead of him, and the last time he saw both of them they were breathing out threatenings against him. This man Jacob is not in a position to take on someone else. Therefore, the 'man' took the initiative; He was the aggressor."\(^3\)

Jacob's refusal to release "the man" indicates the sincerity of his felt need for God's help (v. 26; cf. John 15:5). Again Jacob demonstrated his strong desire for blessing, as he had done previously when he obtained Esau's birthright and blessing.

"Jacob completed, by his wrestling with God, what he had already been engaged in even from his mother's womb, viz. his striving for the birthright; in other words, for the possession of the covenant promise and the covenant blessing ... To save him from the hand of his brother, it was necessary that God should first meet him as an enemy, and show him that his real opponent was God Himself, and that he must first of all

---

\(^1\)Leupold, 2:872-73.
\(^2\)Kidner, p. 168.
\(^3\)McGee, 1:135.
overcome Him before he could hope to overcome his brother. And Jacob overcame God; not with the power of the flesh however, with which he had hitherto wrestled for God against man (God convinced him of that by touching his hip, so that it was put out of joint), but by the power of faith and prayer, reaching by firm hold of God even to the point of being blessed, by which he proved himself to be a true wrestler of God, who fought with God and with men, i.e., who by his wrestling with God overcame men as well."

With his wrestling with God, Jacob began a new stage in his life (v. 28); he was a new man, because he now began to relate to God in a way that was new for him. As a sign of this, God gave him a new name that indicated his new relationship to God. "Israel" means "God's Warrior." Jacob's new name introduced a new stage of his life. Thereafter he behaved either carnally or spiritually. Note which of his names Moses used, in each event, from here on. When Jacob behaved like the "old Jacob," Moses referred to him as "Jacob," but when he behaved like the new "Israel" ("God's Warrior"), Moses referred to him as "Israel."

"The acknowledgment of the old name, and its unfortunate suitability [Jacob, v. 27], paves the way for the new name [Israel, v. 28]."\(^1\)

"... the name Israel denoted a spiritual state determined by faith; and in Jacob's life the natural state, determined by flesh and blood, still continued to stand side by side with this. Jacob's new name was transmitted to his descendants, however, who were called Israel as the covenant nation. For as the blessing of their forefather's conflict came down to them as a spiritual inheritance, so did they also enter upon the duty of preserving this inheritance by continuing in a similar conflict."\(^2\)

I do not believe that Jacob was spiritually regenerated ("saved," or "born again") at this time. There have been many evidences in the preceding chapters that he already had saving faith in God. But this was the time that

\(^1\)Keil and Delitzsch, 1:305-6.  
\(^2\)Hamilton, *The Book ... Chapters 18—50*, p. 333.  
\(^3\)Keil and Delitzsch, 1:307.
Jacob yielded to God as his Master and submitted to His lordship (cf. Rom. 12:1).

"Elohim" ("Very Strong One") occurs here in order to bring out the contrast between God and His creature. Jacob "prevailed" (v. 28) in the sense of obtaining his request, by acknowledging his dependence and cleaving to God as his Deliverer.

"The transformation pertains to the way in which Jacob prevails. Heretofore he prevailed over people by trickery. Now he prevails with God, and so with humans, by his words, not by the physical gifts conferred on him at birth or acquired through human effort."¹

By asking Jacob "What is your name?" (v. 27), "the man" was forcing Jacob to acknowledge his nature. By giving his name to "the man," Jacob ("Heel-holder") was admitting that he was a cheat (v. 27).

"One wonders if 'Why is it that you inquire about my name?' [v. 29] is another way of asking, 'Jacob, don't you realize who I am?'"²

Another view is that God withheld His name in order to heighten Jacob's awe at this great moment in his life, and to impress the significance of the event on Jacob all the more.

Jacob believed that he had seen God "face to face" (v. 30). Of course, what he meant was that he had seen the angel of the Lord, since no one has seen God without some physical manifestation of God, since God is a spirit being (cf. John 1:18; 4:24). The ancients believed that anyone who saw God face to face would die (cf. 16:13; Exod. 33:20; Judg. 13:21-22). Jacob was probably grateful that the Angel had not dealt with him more severely, as he deserved. "Peniel" sounds more like "face of God" in Hebrew than the more common "Penuel," which means the same thing. Perhaps Peniel was an older form of the place name and Penuel a newer form. Penuel seems to have been more common (cf. Judg. 8:8). Or perhaps these names describe two places located closely together, though this seems less likely.

¹Waltke, Genesis, p. 446.
The result of this spiritual crisis in Jacob's life was obvious to all who observed him from then on (v. 31). It literally resulted in a change in his walk—both physical and spiritual.\(^1\)

"From this time on, Jacob is not seen again scheming or deceiving."\(^2\)

"When God touched the strongest sinew of Jacob, the wrestler, it shriveled, and with it Jacob's persistent self-confidence."\(^3\)

Every Christian does not need to have this type of drastic experience. Abraham and Isaac did not. God has told us that we can do nothing without Him (John 15:5), and that we should believe and trust Him. It is only when we do not believe and trust Him that He must teach us this hard lesson. Sometimes He has to bring us very low to do it. Every Christian should yield himself or herself to the Lordship of God (Christ; Rom. 6:13, 19; 12:1-2).

"If only the swimmer yields to the water, the water keeps him up; but if he continues to struggle, the result is disastrous. Let us learn to trust, just as we learn to float."\(^4\)

To become strong in faith, the believer must forsake self-sufficiency.

"The narrative is presented in a deliberately enigmatic manner to channel the reader's imagination in certain directions."\(^5\)

13. **Jacob's meeting with Esau and his return to Canaan ch. 33**

Jacob was ready to sacrifice part of his family, expecting Esau to attack him, and he approached his brother as though Esau was his "lord." In

---


\(^4\)Thomas, *Genesis*, p. 298.

contrast, Esau welcomed Jacob magnanimously, reluctantly received his gift, and offered to host him in Seir. Jacob declined Esau’s offer, and traveled instead to Succoth, four miles west of Peniel, where he settled next.

"As Jacob had won God’s blessing by capitulating to Him, so now he was to win reconciliation to Esau by capitulating to him ...")¹

33:1-17 Jacob arranged his family in a marching order that would preserve those who were most precious to him, in case his brother proved to be violently hostile (vv. 1-3).

"This kind of ranking according to favoritism no doubt fed the jealousy over Joseph that later becomes an important element in the narrative. It must have been painful to the family to see that they were expendable."²

Jacob leading his family to meet Esau (v. 3) shows the new "Israel" overcoming the fear that had formerly dominated the old "Jacob." His plan does not seem to me to reflect lack of trust in God as much as carefulness and personal responsibility. However, Jacob was obviously fearful and felt weak as he anticipated meeting his brother. Faith does not mean trusting God to work for us in spite of our irresponsibility; that is presumption. Faith means trusting God to work for us when we have acted responsibly, realizing that without His help we will fail.

Esau’s behavior, when meeting Jacob, was typical of how people conducted themselves when happily reuniting in his day (v. 4).³ Jacob gave God the glory for giving him his family; he confessed that his family was a gift from God (v. 5). This attitude is evidence of a basic change in Jacob’s approach to life. Whereas he had previously been dishonest and devious,

¹H. Vos, p. 125.
²The NET2 Bible note on 33:2.
³For some interesting insights into eastern behavior, as reflected in verse 4, see Imad Shehadeh, "Contrasts between Eastern and Western Cultures," Exegesis and Exposition 2:1 (Summer 1987):3-12.
now he was honest and forthright about his intentions (v. 10). Jacob's gift to Esau recalls Abram's gift to Melchizedek (14:20).

Jacob's insistence on giving presents to Esau may have been an attempt to give back to Esau the blessing that should have been his in the first place, in order to undo his sins of earlier years.¹

"Now that they are reunited, Esau desires a fraternal relationship, but Jacob is unable to move beyond a formal relationship.

"Only the restraining intervention of God kept Laban from retaliation against Jacob (31:24, 29). Esau is apparently in no need of a similar divine check. His own good nature acts as a check on him. Since his rage and hate of ch. 27, Esau himself has undergone his own transformation. No longer is he controlled by vile passions."²

"I see your face as one sees the face of God" (v. 10) means "I see in your face, as expressive of your whole attitude toward me, the friendliness of God. I see this friendliness demonstrated in His making you friendly toward me" (cf. 1 Sam 29:9; 2 Sam. 14:17). Jacob had seen God's gracious "face," and had been spared at Peniel, and he now saw Esau's gracious "face," and was spared again.

Jacob's "language shows that he saw the two encounters with his Lord and his brother, as two levels of a single event: cf. 10b with 32:30."³

Previously, Jacob had taken Esau's blessing, but now he gave Esau a blessing (v. 11). Jacob's reasons for declining Esau's offer of an escort evidently did not spring from fear (vv. 14-15). He gave a legitimate explanation of why it would be better

---

¹Wenham, Genesis 16—50, pp. 298-99.
²Hamilton, The Book ... Chapters 18—50, p. 345.
for him to travel separately: the condition of his children and animals.

"This, by the way, proves that Jacob's flight was late in the autumn, when alone the flocks are in this condition. The same is implied in his immediately building booths at Succoth for their protection during the winter [v. 17]."¹

Jacob may have been counting on God's protection, and therefore felt no need of Esau's men. Alternatively, Jacob may have mistrusted Esau, having been both deceptive and deceived himself.² Still another view is that Jacob was returning to the Promised Land on God's orders, and that did not include going to Seir.³

His reference to visiting Esau "at Seir" (v. 14) does not mean that Jacob planned to go directly to Seir, where he did not go immediately—as far as the text records. He might have been deceiving his brother again. Perhaps Jacob meant that he would visit his brother in his own land in the future.⁴ Scripture does not record whether Jacob ever made such a trip.

Jacob and his family settled first at Succoth ("Booths"), east of the Jordan River (v. 17). Evidently he lived there for some time, since he built a house and huts for his livestock.

This incident illustrates the truth of Proverbs 16:7, "When a man's ways are pleasing to the Lord, He makes even his enemies to be at peace with him."

"At almost every point in this story, Esau emerges as the more appealing, more humane, and more virtuous of the two brothers."⁵

¹Thomson, 1:304.
²von Rad, p. 328.
³Wenham, Genesis 16—50, p. 299.
⁴Leupold, 2:892.
⁵Hamilton, The Book ... Chapters 18—50, p. 347.
"This is only the second—and it is the last—conversation between Esau and Jacob mentioned in Genesis. On the first occasion (25:29-34) Esau failed to perceive Jacob's capacity for exploitation. On the second occasion he fails to perceive Jacob's hesitancy and lack of excitement about going to Seir. In both cases, Jacob succeeds in deceiving Esau."\(^1\)

What were Jacob's motivation and his relationship to God when he met Esau? This question rises often in the study of this chapter. The answer is not obvious. Some commentators have felt that Jacob completely backslid and returned to his former lifestyle of self-reliance and deceit.\(^2\) Most interpreters attribute good motives to Jacob.\(^3\) I believe the truth probably lies somewhere between these extremes. It seems to me that Jacob's experience at Peniel had a life-changing impact on him. Jacob seems to be referring to it in 33:10: "I see your face as one sees the face of God."

Nevertheless, Jacob's former lifestyle had become so ingrained—Jacob was over 90 years old at this time—that he could have easily slipped back into his former habits. I believe we have a clue to this in the frequent use of his name "Jacob" in the text from now on, rather than "Israel." In short, Jacob seems to have had a genuine experience of coming to grips with himself and yielding his life to God at Peniel. Nevertheless, from then on, his motives and attitudes vacillated. At times he trusted God as he should have, but at others, several others, he failed to trust God.

The divine Author's main concern in this section was not Jacob's motivation, however; He could have clarified that for us. Rather, it seems to have been the faithfulness of God, in sparing Jacob's life and returning him to the Promised Land—as He had promised (28:13-15). The Jacob narrative also contains evidence that God was faithful to bless others through Abraham's descendants (12:3), including Laban (cf. 30:27) and Esau (cf. 33:11).

33:18-20 After an unspecified length of time, Jacob crossed the Jordan River with his family and moved into the land of Canaan. He

\(^1\)Ibid., p. 348.
\(^2\)E.g., Thomas, *Genesis*, pp. 309-16.
\(^3\)E.g., Keil and Delitzsch, 1:307-11; Aalders, pp. 148-53.
chose Shechem ("Peaceful") as his home. By purchasing land there, he showed that he regarded Canaan as his permanent home and the home of his children and descendants. The Israelites eventually buried Joseph at Shechem (Josh. 24:32). Shechem was only about a mile from the Sychar of Jesus' day (cf. John 4:5, 12).

God had granted Jacob's request by bringing him safely back into the Promised Land (cf. 28:20-21). As he had vowed, Jacob here and now worshipped the God of his father as "his God" ("he erected there an altar," v. 20)). He called Yahweh "El-Elohe-Israel" meaning, "The Mighty God is The God of Israel." Jacob, in naming the altar, used his own new name, Israel (32:28). This was Jacob's first altar, which he built to worship God—just as Abraham had done at Shechem when he had first entered Canaan (12:6-7). The altar would have served the double purpose of both providing a table for Jacob's sacrifice, and serving as a memorial for Jacob's descendants in the years to come.

A major lesson of this chapter is, that those who have received God's grace may trust in God's promise of protection when they seek reconciliation with others.

14. The rape of Dinah and the revenge of Simeon and Levi ch. 34

After Shechem the Canaanite raped Dinah, Simeon and Levi plotted and took revenge by deceiving the Shechemites into getting circumcised as the condition for Dinah's marriage. Then, to get their full revenge, they murdered the incapacitated men of the city.

"The name of the Lord isn't mentioned once in this chapter, and the wisdom of the Lord is surely absent as well.\(^1\)

"Once again, as in the birth of his sons (29:31—30:24), Jacob's household is dysfunctional because of his passivity. His

\(^1\)Wiersbe, p. 135.
sons are rash and unbridled, and he is passive. No one in this story escapes censure."\(^1\)

Contrast Jacob's great distress, upon hearing that Joseph had apparently been killed (37:34-35), with his lack of response upon hearing that Dinah had been raped. He favored Rachel's children terribly.

"The story is a tangled skein of good and evil, as are all the patriarchal narratives."\(^2\)

Dinah must have been a teenager at this time. Keil and Delitzsch calculated from other references in Genesis that she was between 13 and 15, Davis wrote that she was 15 or 16, and Leupold believed that she was 14 or 15.\(^3\)

34:1-17 Here is another instance of a man seeing a woman and taking her for himself, like the "sons of God" took "the daughters of mankind" (cf. 6:2).

"This occurrence serves to illustrate the low standard of morals prevalent among the Canaanites. Any unattended female could be raped, and in the transactions that ensue neither father nor son feel the need of apologizing for or excusing what had been committed."\(^4\)

Moses used the name "Israel" here for the first time as a reference to God's chosen people (v. 7). The family of Jacob had a special relationship to God by divine calling, reflected in the name "Israel" ("Prince with God"). Therefore Shechem's act was an especially "disgraceful thing," having been committed against a member of the family with the unique calling in the world (cf. Deut. 22:21; Josh. 7:15; Judg. 20:10; 2 Sam. 13:12; et al.).

"What had happened to Dinah was considered by Jacob's family to be of the same nature as what

---

\(^1\) Waltke, *Genesis*, p. 458.
\(^2\) Ross, "Genesis," p. 83.
\(^3\) Keil and Delitzsch, 1:311; Davis, *Paradise to ...*, p. 256; Leupold, 2:897.
\(^4\) Ibid., 2:898.
later was known as 'a disgraceful thing in Israel' [i.e., rape]."¹

As was customary in their culture, Jacob's sons took an active part in approving their sister's marriage (v. 13; cf. 24:50).² They were correct in opposing the end in view: the mixing of the chosen seed with the seed of the Canaanites. Yet they were wrong in adopting the means they chose to achieve their end. In their deception, they show themselves to be "chips off the old block," Jacob. The Hivites negotiated in good faith, but the Jacobites renegotiated treacherously (vv.13-17; cf. Prov. 3:29; Amos 1:9).

"... Jacob's sons are guilty of treating the sign of the covenant [circumcision] lightly and of dishonoring it."³

"Marriage was always preceded by betrothal, in which the bridegroom's family paid a mhd 'marriage present' to the bride's family (1 Sam 18:25). In cases of premarital intercourse, this still had to be paid to legitimize the union, and the girl's father was allowed to fix the size of the marriage present (Exod 22:15-16 [16-17]; limited by Deut 22:29 to a maximum of fifty shekels). Here it seems likely that Shechem is offering both a 'marriage present' to Jacob and 'a gift' to Dinah."⁴

34:18-31 We can explain the agreement of "the people of their city," including both "Hamor" (meaning "donkey," a valued and respected animal) and "Shechem" (v. 18), to undergo circumcision. Other nations besides Jacob's family practiced this rite, at this time in history, as an act of consecration.⁵ Jacob was not suggesting that these men convert from one

---

¹Aalders, p. 156.
²Thomson, 1:451.
³Leupold, 2:904.
⁵Keil and Delitzsch, 1:313-14.
religion to another.\textsuperscript{1} Normally circumcision was practiced on young adults, rather than on infants, though God told Abraham to circumcise the infants born in his family (17:12-14).

It [circumcision] was "sometimes an initiation into marriageable status."\textsuperscript{2}

Dinah, Simeon, and Levi were the children of Jacob and Leah, the "unloved wife." Simeon and Levi doubtless felt closer to Dinah, being full brothers and sister, than some of their half-brothers did. But Reuben, Judah, Issachar, and Zebulun were also Leah's children, and thus Dinah's full brothers. The fact that only Simeon and Levi reacted as they did, against the men of Shechem, suggests that they responded with excessive recklessness (cf. 49:5-7).\textsuperscript{3} Perhaps Jacob's indifference to Dinah's plight, evidenced by his lack of action, encouraged the violent overreaction of her brothers.\textsuperscript{4}

While Simeon and Levi took the lead in this atrocity, all of Jacob's sons evidently participated with them in the looting of the city (v. 27; cf. vv. 28-29). This was only the first of several notorious incidents that took place at Shechem (cf. Judg. 9:30-49; Jer. 41:4-8; Hos. 6:9).

Jacob's distress arose because of two facts (v. 30). His sons had committed murder and robbery, and his family had now broken a covenant—a very serious act in their society.

"His [Jacob's] censure is more a peevish complaint."\textsuperscript{5}

"It is ironic to hear Jacob venting his disgust over Simeon's and Levi's failure to honor their word, especially in terms of its potential consequence

\textsuperscript{2}Kidner, p. 174.
\textsuperscript{3}Mathews, \textit{Genesis} 11:27—50:26, p. 590.
\textsuperscript{4}Wenham, \textit{Genesis} 16—50, pp. 308-10.
\textsuperscript{5}von Rad, p. 334.
for Jacob, for he had done exactly that on more than one occasion."¹

"Jacob's complaint to Simeon and Levi was utterly unworthy of a man of faith. It breathed the spirit of selfish fear from first to last."²

Deception proceeded to murder and pillage. As a result of this sin, Jacob later passed over Simeon and Levi when he gave his final blessing to his sons (49:5-7). He favored Judah instead.

"The crafty character of Jacob degenerated into malicious cunning in Simeon and Levi; and jealousy for the exalted vocation of their family, into actual sin."³

"Of course, fear is natural in such a situation, but the reasons Jacob gives for damning his sons betray him. He does not condemn them for the massacre, for abusing the rite of circumcision, or even for breach of contract. Rather, he protests that the consequences of their action have made him unpopular. Nor does he seem worried by his daughter's rape or the prospect of intermarriage with the Canaanites. He is only concerned for his own skin."⁴

It is interesting that Simeon and Levi, when responding to Jacob, referred to Dinah as "our sister" (v. 31), rather than as "your daughter," which would have been more appropriate. This implies that, since Jacob had not showed enough concern for Dinah, her blood-brothers felt compelled to act in her defense. This is an early indication that Jacob's family was already dysfunctional and crumbling, which becomes obvious when Joseph's brothers turn on him, sell him as a slave, and lie to their father (37:12-36).

¹Hamilton, The Book ... Chapters 18—50, p. 371.
²Morgan, An Exposition ..., p. 27.
³Keil and Delitzsch, 1:315.
The significance of this chapter is fourfold at least:

1. It explains why Jacob passed over Simeon and Levi for special blessing just before he died.

2. It shows the importance of keeping the chosen seed separate from the Canaanites.¹

   "The law [of Moses] said that Israel was not to intermarry with the Canaanites or make treaties with them but was to destroy them because they posed such a threat. This passage provides part of the rationale for such laws, for it describes how immoral Canaanites defiled Israel by sexual contact and attempted to marry for the purpose of swallowing up Israel."²

   Noah's curse on Canaan and his seed had warned the rest of humanity that bad things would happen to people who mixed with the Canaanites (cf. 9:25-27).

   "People who live on the borderland between church and world are like those who lived in the old days on the borders between England and Scotland—they are never safe."³

3. It gives a reason for the sanctification of Jacob's household that follows (35:2-4).

4. It demonstrates the sovereign control of God.

   "While the story in this chapter operates at a level of family honor and the brothers' concern for their ravaged sister, the story nevertheless also carries along the theme that runs so clearly through the Jacob narratives, namely, that God works through and often in spite of the limited self-serving plans of human beings. The writer's purpose is not to approve these human plans

---
²Ross, *Creation and ...,* p. 569.
³Thomas, *Genesis,* p. 325.
and schemes but to show how God, in his sovereign 
grace, could still achieve his purpose through them."\(^1\)

"What message does such a sordid episode have in the Jacob-
Joseph narratives? At this point forward, Genesis turns its 
attention to Jacob's sons, the progenitors of Israel's twelve 
tribes. After the tension of the Jacob-Esau struggle was 
alleviated in chap. 33's account of the twin's pacification, the 
author sets out to demonstrate the seedy character of Jacob's 
descendants, raising the specter that the promises are again 
in peril."\(^2\)

Abraham had dealt honorably with the Hittites (ch. 23), and Isaac had 
behaved peacefully with the Philistines (2612-33). But now, Jacob's sons 
became the aggressors in a conflict with the Hivites. Simeon and Levi's 
unrepentant treachery stands in stark contrast to Esau and Jacob's recent 
moral transformations. In contrast to the Isaac incident in chapter 27 
(Jacob's deception of Isaac), this chapter contains no prayer, no divine 
revelation, no promised blessing, and no explicit mention of God.\(^3\)

"Jacob's move to Shechem set the stage for a series of 
setbacks. What should have been a period of blessing for Jacob 
and his family in the land of promise (31:3, 13) turned into 
one misfortune after another."\(^4\)

Younger zealots, such as Simeon and Levi, can sometimes bring reproach 
on God through their misguided zeal. This can happen when spiritual leaders 
such as Jacob are indifferent to pagan defilement, and fail to act decisively 
against it.\(^5\)

"... this story shows Jacob's old nature reasserting itself, a 
man whose moral principles are weak, who is fearful of standing 
up for right when it may cost him dearly, who doubts God's

---

\(^1\)Sailhamer, *The Pentateuch...*, p. 200; and idem, "Genesis," p. 214.


\(^3\)Ibid., p. 578.

\(^4\)Brian N. Peterson, "'Jacob's Trouble': The Shechem Fiasco and the Breaking of Covenant 

\(^5\)For an interesting summary of post-biblical rabbinic traditions concerning the characters 
and events in this chapter, see Jeffrey K. Salkin, "Dinah, The Torah's Forgotten Woman," 
*Judaism* 35:3 (Summer 1986):284-89.
power to protect, and who allows hatred to divide him from his children just as it had divided him from his brother."1

Many believers bring the wrath of unbelievers on themselves and on other believers by their ungodly behavior, as Jacob, Simeon, and Levi did.

15. Jacob's return to Bethel ch. 35

After God reminded Jacob of his previous commitment to Him (28:20-22), the patriarch returned to Bethel to worship Yahweh, bringing closure to the past. There the LORD reconfirmed the promises to him, and completed his family with the birth of Benjamin. However, Jacob also experienced three deaths, and rebellion against himself by Reuben. The deaths of Deborah, Rachel, and Isaac signal the end of an era.

Jacob's renewed consecration to Yahweh 35:1-8

About 10 years had passed since Jacob had returned from Paddan-aram, but he had not yet returned to Bethel to fulfill his vow there (28:20-22). He should have gone there immediately after making peace with Esau, rather than settling near Shechem. His negligence evidently was due in part to the continuing presence of the idols that Rachel—and probably others—had brought from Haran. Perhaps their allegiance to these gods had restrained Jacob's total commitment to Yahweh (cf. 1 Kings 11:3-4).

God appeared to Jacob (the fourth time), and commanded him now to fulfill his vow (v. 1). This revelation encouraged Jacob to stop procrastinating. This is the first and only time God commanded a patriarch to build an altar. This command constituted a test of Jacob's obedience, similar to Abraham's test when God instructed him to offer up "a burnt offering" on Mt. Moriah (22:2). In preparation for his trip to Bethel, Jacob purged his household of idolatry—by literally burying Rachel's idols, along with all the other objects associated with the worship of these gods. He also purified them from the defilement of the blood his family had shed in Shechem (ch. 34).

"It is significant that Jacob called God the one 'who answered me in the day of my distress and who has been with me wherever I have gone' (v. 3). That epithet serves as a fitting

1Wenham, Genesis 16—50, p. 318.
summary of the picture of God that has emerged from the Jacob narratives. Jacob was in constant distress; yet in each instance God remained faithful to his promise and delivered him."¹

The "oak" referred to here (v. 4) seems to have been "the oak of Moreh" (lit. "teacher"), where God had appeared to Abraham shortly after he had entered the land (12:6).

"At the same spot, possibly prompted by Jacob's example, Joshua was one day to issue a very similar call to Israel (Josh. 24:23ff.)."²

God blessed Jacob for his commitment, expressed in his burying the idols ("foreign gods") and earrings ("rings which were in their ears")—perhaps taken from the Shechemites—by placing the fear ("a great terror") of Jacob's family in the hearts of the Canaanites, whom they passed on their way to Bethel (vv. 5-8; cf. Prov. 16:7). Perhaps God used the memory of Simeon and Levi's fierce treatment of the Shechemites to cause the Canaanites to fear Jacob and his family.

"Throughout his life Jacob has had to contend with his own fears—fear of God (28:17), fear of Laban (31:31), fear of Esau (32:8, 12 [Eng. 7, 11]). Nobody had been in fear of him. Angry, yes; fearful, no."³

Jacob faithfully fulfilled his vow to God at Luz, which he renamed "Bethel" ("House of God," v. 15). He named the place of his altar "El-Bethel" ("God of Bethel," v. 7), in memory of God's first revelation to him there. This is the first spiritual "revival" recorded in the Bible.

Deborah, Rebekah's nurse (cf. 24:59), must have been an important member of Jacob's household to merit this notice of her death by the writer. She may have left Beersheba with Jacob, or she may have joined him later, after the death of Rebekah. The reference to Deborah is probably a way of reminding the reader of Rebekah, and of alluding to her death in a

---

¹Sailhamer, "Genesis," p. 217.  
²Kidner, p. 175.  
veiled manner.\textsuperscript{1} This may have been appropriate in view of Rebekah's deception of Isaac (ch. 27).\textsuperscript{2}

\textbf{Yahweh's reconfirmation of the covenant 35:9-15}

God then appeared again to Jacob at Bethel (the fifth revelation), after Jacob had fulfilled his vow to God and built an altar there. This revelation came 30 years after the first one to Jacob at Bethel. In this case, God appeared in visible (bodily) form ("God went up from him in the place," v. 13). In the former instance, Jacob had seen a vision.

God now confirmed Jacob's name change (cf. 32:28). This new name, Israel, was a pledge from God that He would do what He now promised Jacob: to give him numerous descendants and the whole land of Canaan.\textsuperscript{3} Here God summed up all the long-range promises that He had made to Jacob at various times in his life.

"The purpose of the second renaming is to erase the original negative connotation and to give the name Israel a more neutral or even positive connotation—the connotation it is to have for the remainder of the Torah. It does so by removing the notion of struggle associated with the wordplay in 23:28 and letting it stand in a positive light."\textsuperscript{4}

God's use of His name God Almighty (\textit{El Shaddai}) is significant in view of what God promised Jacob. It would take an omnipotent God to fulfill these promises (cf. 17:1-2). God expanded the former promises, and added to the significance of the name Israel (vv. 10-11; cf. 28:4, 13-15; 31:3, 13; 32:12, 28).

Jacob solemnized this occasion by setting up a second "memorial stone," which perpetuated the memory of God's faithfulness for the benefit of Jacob's descendants (v. 14; cf. 28:18). He not only set the stone apart as special (consecrated it) by pouring oil on it, as he had done 30 years earlier,

\begin{flushright}
\textsuperscript{1}Gary A. Rendsburg, "Notes on Genesis XXXV," \textit{Vetus Testamentum} 34:3 (July 1984):361-65.
\textsuperscript{2}Waltke, \textit{Genesis}, p. 473.
\end{flushright}
but also made an a drink offering to God there, and renamed the place Bethel. The drink offering probably consisted of pouring some wine on the stone.\(^1\) It constituted a personal sacrifice to God.

"Bethel occupies something of the same focal place in Jacob's career that the birth of Isaac occupied for Abraham, testing his fluctuating obedience and his hold on the promise, for more than twenty years."\(^2\)

God's blessing of Jacob when his dedication was complete illustrates the Lord's response to those who fully obey Him.

"The importance of God's words to Jacob in vv. 11-12 cannot be overemphasized. First, God's words 'be fruitful and increase in number' recalled clearly the primeval blessing of Creation (1:28) and hence showed God to be still 'at work' in bringing about the blessing to all mankind through Jacob. Second, for the first time since 17:16 ('kings of peoples will come from her'), the mention is made of royalty ('kings,' v. 11) in the promised line. Third, the promise of the land, first given to Abraham and then to Isaac, was renewed here with Jacob (v. 12). Thus within these brief words several major themes of the book have come together. The primeval blessing of mankind was renewed through the promise of a royal offspring and the gift of the land."\(^3\)

We can enjoy the fellowship with God that He created us to enjoy, only when we commit ourselves wholeheartedly to Him and obey His Word.

"It is noteworthy that there are certain things in connection with the spiritual life that must be entirely given up and destroyed, for it is impossible to sanctify or consecrate them. They must be buried and left behind, for they cannot possibly be devoted to the service of God. There are things that have to be cut off and cannot be consecrated. Books have to be burned (note xix. 19). Evil habits have to be broken. Sin must

\(^1\) The Nelson ..., p. 68.
\(^2\) Kidner, p. 174.
\(^3\) Sailhamer, "Genesis," p. 218.
be put away. There are things that are beyond all reclamation."¹

"... if only we yield ourselves wholly and utterly to the hand of God, our lives, whatever the past may have been, shall be monuments, miracles, marvels of the grace of God."²

Still, all of Jacob's problems were not behind him.

"Just as Abraham had two sons and only one was the son of promise, and just as Isaac had two sons and only one was the son of the blessing, so now Jacob, though he has twelve sons, has two wives (Leah and Rachel); and each has a son (Judah and Joseph) that can rightfully contend for the blessing. In the narratives that follow, the writer holds both sons, Joseph and Judah, before the readers as rightful heirs of the promise. As the Jacob narratives have already anticipated, in the end it was Judah, the son of Leah, not Joseph, the son of Rachel, that gained the blessing (49:8-12)."³

The birth of Benjamin, death of Rachel, and sin of Reuben 35:16-29

Was Jacob disobedient to God when he left Bethel? God had told him to go to Bethel and "live there" ("dwell" [AV, NKJV, ESV] or "settle" [NIV, TNIV, NRSV, HCSB, NEB] or "make your home" there [CEV], v. 1). This may have been a command to live there temporarily, while he fulfilled his vow. On the other hand, God may have wanted Jacob to establish permanent residence, to settle down there. This seems unlikely, however, since Jacob remained a semi-nomad.

35:16-22a Ben-oni means "Son of My Pain" (v. 18). Oni in Hebrew can mean either "trouble" or "wealth." In this case it means trouble. For Rachel, Benjamin's birth was a fatally painful experience. However, the birth of his twelfth son eased Jacob's sorrow over Rachel's death. He named his son Benjamin, meaning "Son of the Right Hand" or "Son of my Good

¹Thomas, Genesis, pp. 331,
²Ibid., p. 336.
Fortune."¹ This is the only son that Jacob named, which suggests his renewed leadership of the family, at least over Rachel's sons. Benjamin was born on land that later became part of his tribe's allotment.

Jacob buried Rachel "on the way to Ephrath (that is, Bethlehem)." Later, Jacob said, "Rachel died ... on the journey, when there was still some distance to go to Ephrath. I buried her there on the way to Ephrath (that is, Bethlehem)" (48:7). This burial site was evidently somewhere between Bethel, and "Ephrath," an older name for Bethlehem ("House of Bread," v. 19). Both Bethlehem and nearby Kiriath-jeraim ("City of Forests") became known as Ephrath (or Ephratha), because the clan of Ephrath settled in both towns (cf. 1 Chron. 2:50).

First Samuel 10:2 says that Rachel's tomb was "in the territory of Benjamin at Zelzah," a site that is presently unknown but was evidently south of Bethel.² Jeremiah 31:15 says that Rachel wept for her children near Ramah, which was near the center of the territory of Benjamin, which was also south of Bethel, and north of both Jerusalem and Bethlehem. This is not a reference to where she died or was buried, however. Since the fourth century B.C., another site, still covered with a mausoleum a mile north of Bethlehem, in the territory of Judah, has been venerated as the burial place of Rachel.

The record of Benjamin's birth and Rachel's death demonstrates God's faithfulness in providing descendants. It also gives the origin (etiology) of the tribe of Benjamin, and it shows Rachel's important place in the growth of the chosen family.

The opening section of the Isaac toledot (25:19-26) contained the record of two births: Esau's and Jacob's. Its closing section (35:16-29) documented two deaths: Deborah's and Rachel's. Ironically Rachel, who had cried in desperation to Jacob, "Give

me children, or else I die" (30:1), died giving birth to the child that he gave her.

The Tower of Eder (v. 21, *Migdal-eder*) was simply a watchtower, built to help shepherds protect their flocks from robbers (v. 21; cf. 2 Kings 18:8; 2 Chron. 26:10; 27:4). Since the time of Jerome, the early church father who lived for a time in Bethlehem, tradition has held that this watchtower stood very close to Bethlehem.

A concubine (v. 22) was sometimes a slave with whom her owner had sexual relations. She enjoyed some of the privileges of a wife, and people sometimes called her a wife in patriarchal times, but she was not a wife in the full sense of the term.

Reuben may have wanted to prevent Rachel's maid from succeeding Rachel as his father's favorite wife. He probably resented the fact that Jacob did not honor his mother. Reuben's act constituted a claim against and challenge to his father, as well as being an immoral act (cf. Deut. 22:30; 2 Sam. 16:21-22; 1 Kings 2:13-25). In the ancient Near East, a man who wanted to assert his superiority over another man, might do so by having sexual relations with that man's wife or concubine (cf. 2 Sam. 16:21-22). Ancient Near Easterners regarded this act of physical domination as an evidence of personal superiority.

"Taking the concubine of one's predecessor was a perverted way of claiming to be the new lord of the bride."2

Reuben's act, therefore, demonstrated rebellion against Jacob's authority, as well as unbridled lust. It resulted in his losing his birthright as the firstborn of Jacob's sons. Judah and his descendants later obtained the right to rule as head of the Israelites, and Levi and his descendants eventually received the priestly leadership. The double portion of his father Jacob's

---

2Jordan, p. 65.
inheritance went to Joseph, who realized it through his two sons, Ephraim and Manasseh (cf. 1 Chron. 5:1-2).

"At an early stage in the narrative Reuben had played some small part in the all too brief restoration to his mother of her conjugal rights (Gen. XXX. 14ff.), but now, at the end of the Jacob narrative, it is by his agency that the supplanter is well and truly supplanted."\(^1\)

As at Shechem, Jacob appears to have reacted passively at this time. Moses wrote that Jacob heard of Reuben’s act, but not that he did anything about it.

35:22b-27 This paragraph is important because it records the entrance of Jacob into his father's inheritance. Jacob presumably visited Isaac in Hebron on various occasions following his return from Paddan-aram. However, on this occasion he moved his family to his father’s encampment, and evidently remained there as Isaac’s heir.

Jacob had left Beersheba with only a staff in his hand. Now he returned with 12 sons, a large household, and much livestock. The most important aspect of God’s blessing was his 12 sons, grouped here with their four mothers, through whom God would proceed to fulfill His promises to the patriarchs.

Benjamin was not born in Paddan-aram, of course, but near Bethlehem (vv. 16-18). Therefore, the statement that Jacob’s 12 sons were born in Paddan-aram (v. 26) must be understood as a general one, possibly a synecdoche.

35:28-29 With the record of Jacob entering into his father's inheritance, the history of Isaac's life concludes. He died several years later, and was buried in the cave of Machpelah near Hebron (49:29-31). Isaac lived for 12 years after Jacob's relocation to Hebron. He probably shared Jacob's grief over the apparent

---
death of Joseph, but died shortly before Joseph's promotion in Egypt.\(^1\)

"The end of the Jacob narratives is marked by the death of his father, Isaac. The purpose of this notice is not simply to record Isaac's death but rather to show the complete fulfillment of God's promise to Jacob (28:21). According to Jacob's vow, he had asked that God watch over him during his sojourn and return him safely to the house of his father. Thus the conclusion of the narrative marks the final fulfillment of these words as Jacob returned to the house of his father, Isaac, before he died."\(^2\)

This chapter teaches us that it is very important that God's people follow through and keep the commitments they have made concerning participation in His program. When they commit themselves to Him in purity and worship, He commits Himself to blessing them.

**D. What Became of Esau 36:1—37:1**

Moses included this relatively short, segmented genealogy (toledot) in the sacred record to show God's faithfulness in multiplying Abraham's seed—as He had promised. It also provides connections with the descendants of Esau referred to later in the history of Israel. Among his descendants were the Edomites (v. 8) and the Amalekites (v. 12). Lot, Ishmael, and Esau all walked out of the line of promise. This list also includes earlier inhabitants, of the area later known as Edom (lit. "Red"), whom Esau brought under his control.\(^3\)

We can divide this chapter as follows:

- Esau's three wives and five sons (vv. 1-8)
- Esau's five sons and 10 grandsons (vv. 9-14)

---

\(^1\)See Keil and Delitzsch, 1:320, for a chronology of these events.

\(^2\)Sailhamer, "Genesis," p. 220.

\(^3\)The NET Bible note on 36:1.
Chiefs (political or military leaders) descended from Esau (vv. 15-19)

Chiefs of the Horites, with whom the Edomites intermarried and whom they dispossessed (vv. 20-30)

Kings of Edom (vv. 31-39)

A final list of chiefs (vv. 40-43)

Different names of Esau's wives appear here as compared with what Moses recorded earlier (v. 2; cf. 26:34; 28:9). Women often received new names when they married. Also, people added surnames to given names later in life.¹

Esau married a Hittite (v. 2), a Hivite (v. 2) who was a descendant of a Horite (Hurrian, v. 20), and an Ishmaelite (v. 3). Some commentators connected the Horites with cave dwellers, since the Hebrew word for cave is hor.²

"Recent archaeological discoveries have shown that these people were not to be explained as cave-dwellers but are to be identified with an important group in the Near East in Patriarchal times. The homeland of the Horites (Hurrians) was apparently the region south of the Caucasus. From there they swarmed into northern Mesopotamia after 2400 B.C., and in the following years Hurrian names are found to be common in the archaeological records even in southern Mesopotamia."³

"A man's choice in his marriage, more than anything else in this life, makes it manifest what that man is, and where his heart is."⁴

Esau's sons were born in Canaan and then moved out of the Promised Land to Seir. Jacob's sons, except for Benjamin, were born outside Canaan in Paddan-aram, and later moved into the Promised Land.

"That there are two toledot headings for Esau makes his treatment in two consecutive sections exceptional in the book.

¹Keil and Delitzsch, 1:321.
²E.g., Speiser, p. 283; Sailhamer, "Genesis," p. 223.
³Free, p. 72.
⁴Whyte, 1:101.
The first section [36:1-8] focuses on family and homeland, and the second [36:9—37:1] centers on his offspring as a developing nation. These two sections are flanked by the major narrative toledot sections of Isaac (25:19—35:29) and Jacob (37:2—50:26)."'

The descendants of Kenaz (vv. 11, 15) later affiliated with the tribe of Judah. The descendants of Amalek (v. 12) separated from the other Edomites, and became an independent people early in their history. A group of them settled in what later became southern Judah, as far as Kadesh and the border of Egypt (14:7; Num. 13:29; 14:43, 45). Another branch of the tribe settled in the hill country of Ephraim that was in central Canaan (Judg. 12:15). The largest group of Amalekites lived in Arabia to the southeast of Canaan and Edom. They united on occasion with their neighbors, the Midianites (Judg. 6:3; 7:12) and the Ammonites (Judg. 3:13). Saul defeated the Amalekites (1 Sam. 14:48; 15:2), as David did after him (1 Sam. 27:8; 30:1; 2 Sam 8:12). Some Simeonites finally exterminated them during Hezekiah's reign (1 Chron. 4:42-43).

"What is most interesting about the king list [vv. 31-39] is that it reflects an elective kingship rather than a dynastic one."'

"These 'kings' may have indeed been charismatic individuals who, like the judges, assumed their office without regard to heredity."'

This list of Edomite kings (vv. 31-39) demonstrates the partial fulfillment of God's promises that kings would come from Abraham's and Jacob's loins (17:16; 35:11).

"It might seem unusual that such detail concerning the descendants of Esau be included, but the relationship between

---

2 J. Milgrom, Numbers, pp. 391-92.
3 See the chart illustrating their family relationship among my comments on 25:1-6.
4 Hamilton, The Book ... Chapters 18—50, p. 400.
5 Ibid.
Esau and Jacob, and then between the nations of Edom and Israel, is a theme of the entire Old Testament.\textsuperscript{1}

"What Israelites did to Canaanites, Esauites did to Horites. Thus Gen. 36 is moving backward from the conquerors (vv. 9-19) to the conquered (vv. 20-30)."\textsuperscript{2}

Verse 31 may be a post-Mosaic explanation, written after Israel had kings, to show that the Edomites were also a powerful people with kings, even before there were kings in Israel.\textsuperscript{3} On the other hand, Moses could have written this statement, since he knew that kings would eventually arise in Israel, because God had promised them. The presence of kings in Edom is further proof of God's blessing on Esau, one of Abraham's descendants.

"We may suppose it was a great trial to the faith of God's Israel to hear of the pomp and power of the kings of Edom, while they were bond-slaves in Egypt [assuming that Moses wrote Genesis before the Exodus]; but those that look for great things from God must be content to wait for them; God's time is the best time."\textsuperscript{4}

Jacob was living at Hebron when Joseph's brothers sold him, and he may have continued living there until he moved to Egypt ("the land where his father had lived," 37:1; cf. 35:27).

"Verse 1 [of chapter 37] belongs structurally to the preceding narrative as a conclusion to the Jacob story. It shows Jacob back in the Land of Promise but still dwelling there as a sojourner like his father before him. The writer's point is to show that the promises of God had not yet been completely fulfilled and that Jacob, as his fathers before him, was still awaiting the fulfillment."\textsuperscript{5}

\begin{footnotes}
\footnote{Hamilton, \textit{The Book ... Chapters 18—50}, p. 397.}
\footnote{Mathews, \textit{Genesis 11:27—50:26}, p. 656.}
\footnote{Matthew Henry, p. 57.}
\end{footnotes}
"Theologically, the whole narrative cycle of Jacob and Esau [chs. 25—36] is determined by the concept of blessing. The object of the rivalry between the brothers is a blessing. Even the interlude of Jacob and Laban deals with this blessing (the consequences of the blessing in the fertility of Jacob's flock, the effect of the blessing beyond the individual receiving it); the central section of this interlude, which deals with the birth and naming of Jacob's children, is concerned with the blessing of children."¹

Perhaps the major lesson of this genealogy is that secular greatness develops faster than spiritual greatness. Consequently the godly must wait patiently for the fulfillment of God's promises.

**E. WHAT BECAME OF JACOB 37:2—50:26**

Here begins the tenth and last toledot in Genesis. Jacob remains a major character throughout Genesis. Moses recorded his death in chapter 49. Nevertheless Joseph replaces him as the focus of the writer's attention at this point.² These chapters are not entirely about Joseph, however. The writer showed interest in all the sons of Jacob, and among them, especially Judah.³

"The emphasis now shifts from Jacob's personal struggles to receive the blessing promised to Abraham and Isaac, to the events in Jacob's life that lead up to the formation of Israel as a nation."⁴

The story of Joseph also links the history of the patriarchs with their settlement in Egypt.

"The Joseph story develops the theme of the Pentateuch by showing the gradual fulfillment of the promises made to

---

¹Westermann, *The Promises ...*, p. 91.
⁴Aalders, 2:179.
Abraham in 12:1-3. In particular, it shows how God blesses the nations through the descendants of Abraham [cf. 50:20]."¹

"The theme of the Joseph narrative concerns God's hidden and decisive power which works in and through but also against human forms of power. A 'soft' word for that reality is providence. A harder word for the same reality is predestination. Either way God is working out his purpose through and in spite of Egypt, through and in spite of Joseph and his brothers."²

"The story of Joseph and his brothers encourages us to recognize the sovereignty of God in the affairs of life and to trust His promises no matter how dark the day may be."³

Richard Patterson concluded that the genre of the Joseph story in chapters 37—50 is a "court narrative." He provided many observations on the narrative features of the story.⁴

"The Joseph story, though different in style from that of the patriarchs, continues the theme of the patriarchal narratives—God overcomes obstacles to the fulfillment of the promise."⁵

Albright commented on the Joseph narrative from a literary point of view:

"Nothing in the ancient Near East can equal the dramatic portrayal of Joseph's career—Jacob's grief, Joseph's purity and generosity, the shame and remorse of his brethren."⁶

Herbert Wolf's observation was theological:

"Rarely has God's providence been so evident in such an extended passage."⁷

---

¹Wenham, Genesis 16—50, p. 344.
²Brueggemann, Genesis, p. 293.
³Wiersbe, pp. 158-59.
⁵Longman and Dillard, p. 60.
⁶Albright, Archaeology and ..., p. 23.
⁷Wolf, p. 121.
The books of Ruth and Esther also emphasize divine providence. Human responsibility is as much a revelation of this section as divine sovereignty.

William Newell and Gaebelein stressed the typological significance of Joseph's story:

"'The sufferings of Christ and the glories that should follow them' [1 Pet. 1:11] is the theme which his story so wondrously sets forth."\(^1\)

"The Holy Spirit has devoted more space to the life of Joseph than He devoted to Abraham. The reason for this must be sought in the fact that the story of Joseph foreshadows the story of Christ."\(^2\)

This section of Genesis is so long because it illustrates so fully and beautifully, in narrative form, the whole process of divine redemption that the rest of Scripture unpacks.

1. **God's choice of Joseph 37:2-11**

Joseph faithfully served his father, even bringing back a bad report of his brothers' behavior to him, for which Jacob expressed his love by giving Joseph preferential treatment. However, his brothers envied and hated him. God, through a dream, confirmed His choice of Joseph as leader—an event that annoyed and perplexed Jacob and infuriated Joseph's brothers.

37:2-4Joseph was tending his father's flock with his brothers, "the sons of Bilhah and the sons of Zilpah." Why Moses did not also mention the sons of Leah remains a mystery. Reuben and Judah, who play important roles in this incident, were sons of Leah.

This description prefigures Joseph's later shepherding role in relation to his brothers, after they became dependent on him. David also tended sheep in preparation for his role as a leader of people.

---

\(^1\)Newell, p. 95. See pp. 95-97 for 18 parallels between Joseph and Christ.

\(^2\)Gaebelein, 1:1:76.
Joseph's "bad report" (v. 2) implies that the brothers were participating in serious wicked behavior. This is not hard to believe, in view of their former treatment of the Shechemites, and their later treatment of Joseph and Jacob.

The use of the name Israel (v. 3) suggests that Jacob's special love for Joseph had a divine origin, and was part of God's plan for the chosen family. However, Jacob's favoritism of Joseph over his other sons was wrong, and fueled the brothers' hatred of Joseph. Favoritism had a long history in Jacob's family (Isaac's preference for Esau, Rebekah's for Jacob, and Jacob's preference for Rachel). In every case, it created major problems. Leah "was hated," and her sons "hated" (cf. 29:31, 33).

"Son of his old age" (v. 3) means "wise son," or "son of wisdom." Joseph was "old" (mature) for his years; he had the wisdom of age in his youth. Joseph was born when Jacob was 91 years old, but he was not Jacob's youngest son. One of Joseph's brothers was younger than he: Benjamin.

The "multicolored tunic" (v. 3) was probably also a long robe. The sons of nobles wore long robes with long sleeves and ornamentation, like Joseph's, as did Tamar, King David's daughter (2 Sam. 13:18).

"It was a mark of distinction that carried its own meaning, for it implied that exemption from labor which was the peculiar privilege of the heir or prince of the Eastern clan."1

During a visit to Lebanon, I observed a gentleman with a very long fingernail on his fifth finger. I later learned that it identified him as a man who did not have to work with his hands, which would have been impossible with such a long fingernail. This is similar to what Joseph's "tunic" said about his status, though, of course, Joseph did do manual labor.

Such a garment as Joseph wore identified the possessor of the birthright. This sign of Jacob's love for Joseph constantly

---

1 Thomas, Genesis, p. 356.
irritated the jealous brothers. Sibling rivalry continues to mark Genesis, from Cain and Abel, to Jacob and Esau, to Joseph and his brothers.

"Jacob's partiality for Rachel and for her two sons doomed his family to the same strife he had experienced in his father's household."\(^1\)

"The story of Jacob features rocks; that of Joseph features robes (37:3, 23; 39:12; 41:14). These palpable objects symbolize something of the characters' social and/or spiritual situations."\(^2\)

37:5-11 Joseph's dreams were revelations from God (cf. 40:8; 41:16, 25, 28). Joseph, his brothers, and his father did not grasp their significance fully until God brought them to pass. Joseph regarded his dreams as important, however, and therefore did not hesitate to make them known to his family.

"Joseph was more of a prophet than a politician, else he would have kept this to himself, when he could not but know that his brethren did already hate him and that this would but the more exasperate them."\(^3\)

"This is the first dream in the Bible in which God does not speak (cf. 20:3; 28:12-15; 31:11, 24). It forms a transition in the dominant means of God's revelation from theophany in Genesis 1—11, to dreams and visions in Genesis 12—35, and now to providence in Genesis 36—50. These three stages resemble the three parts of TaNaK (i.e., the OT). In the Torah ('Law'), God speaks to Moses in theophany; in the Nevi'im ('Prophets'), he speaks in dreams and visions; and in the Ketubim

---

\(^3\) Matthew Henry, p. 58.
In the first dream (v. 7), God revealed that Joseph's brothers would come to him for bread (food), symbolized by the sheaves of grain. Note the agricultural motif in both the dream and its fulfillment. His brothers did not fail to see Joseph's position of superiority over them (v. 8), and they resented, still more, humiliation from him.

In the second dream (v. 9), which was even grander than the first, Joseph was himself supreme over the whole house of Israel, symbolized by the sun and moon and eleven stars. The repetition of the main point of the dream confirmed that what God predicted would certainly happen (cf. 41:32). (Repetition in biblical narratives is a literary device that usually emphasizes certainty.) Jacob took note of these revelations, but resented the possibility that his son might be in a position of authority over him (vv. 10-11). Many people today, also, are offended by God's election of some to special prominence and usefulness, especially close family members.

Some interpreters of this incident have concluded that Joseph should not have shared his vision with his family, and others have believed that he should. Whether he should or should not have done so, he did it.

"Joseph is depicted as morally good but immature and bratty. His tattling, boasting, and robe parading inflames his brother's hatred against him."\(^2\)

"God's future agent and mouthpiece in Egypt could hardly make a worse impression on his first appearance: spoiled brat, talebearer, braggart."\(^3\)

Textual references cannot establish whether Joseph at this time realized that his dreams were divine prophecies or not.

---

\(^1\)Waltke, *Genesis*, p. 500.
\(^2\)Ibid., p. 498.
\(^3\)Sternberg, p. 98.
People often regarded dreams as divine revelations in the ancient East. If Joseph did so, the fact that he related them boldly to his family may indicate his faith.

"More than likely, the dream, and its recounting, is to be understood as an unsuspecting prophecy uttered by Joseph. God has a plan for his life, a destiny in his future, and Joseph spontaneously shares the enthusiasm that revelation spawns."

"A vision was for the ancients so important and obligatory that a demand to keep it tactfully to oneself would not have occurred to them."

God chooses faithful, righteous individuals for positions of leadership, but those chosen may experience the jealous hatred of their brethren. Note the key word "hated" in this section (vv. 4, 5, 8).

"Divine sovereignty is not a rigid detailed blueprint that manipulates and straitjackets human behavior."

2. The sale of Joseph into Egypt 37:12-36

Joseph's brothers met his second recorded visit to them with great hostility. They plotted to kill him, and thereby render his dreams impossible to fulfill. For practical reasons, they decided to sell him, and to deceive Jacob into thinking that a wild beast had killed him. In spite of their plan, however, God kept Joseph alive and safe in Egypt. Ironically, by selling Joseph into Egypt, his brothers actualized the dreams they sought to subvert. The focus of this pericope is deceit, which is a recurring feature of the Jacob and Joseph narratives.

37:12-17 It was not uncommon for shepherds to lead their flocks many miles from home in search of pasture. Shechem was about 60 miles...
miles north of Hebron, where Jacob lived. Jacob owned land there (33:19). Dothan was 17 miles farther north.

It may seem strange that Joseph's brothers would return to Shechem after their family had become "repulsive" in the eyes of the people who lived there (cf. 34:30). Perhaps the "great terror" of Jacob's family still rested on the locals (cf. 35:5). Or perhaps Joseph's brothers were bold men who did not fear courting danger. Or perhaps, since they were shepherds pasturing their flocks in the fields, they had very little contact with the people who lived in and around Shechem.

37:18-24 The extreme measures that Joseph's brothers considered, in order to silence him, have led some commentators to conclude that it was not just personal hatred springing from jealousy that motivated them (cf. Cain, 4:9). They may have actually wanted to alter the will of God as revealed in Joseph's dreams as well.

"The brothers' hate is therefore a rebellion against the matter contained in the dreams, against the divine power itself, standing behind them, who had given the dreams. The expression usually translated by 'the dreamer' [v. 19] means much more than our English word, namely, the one empowered to prophetic dreams ..."²

Reuben, as the firstborn, looked after his father's interests, and, knowing what sorrow Joseph's death would bring to Jacob, sought to spare Joseph's life and release him from the pit later. Perhaps Reuben wanted to get back in the good graces of his father (cf. 35:22). Joseph's place of confinement was evidently a dry well or cistern (cf. 40:15).

"Cisterns were large holes in the earth, formed like bottles, to store the winter rain for the summer;
and one could put a man in them quite easily (cf. Jer. 38.6)."\(^1\)

"That dreadful pit in Dothan was the beginning of Joseph's salvation."\(^2\)

37:25-28 Dothan stood on a caravan route that ran from Damascus to Egypt.\(^3\) The next time the brothers would eat a meal in Joseph's presence, he would be sitting at the head of the head table (43:32-34).

Moses referred to the traders that bought Joseph as both Ishmaelites (vv. 25, 27, 28) and Midianites (v. 28). Probably the caravan contained a mixture of both of these groups of Abraham's descendants, who made their living as nomadic merchants (cf. 39:1; Judg. 8:24). Residents of this area sometimes used these names interchangeably. "Ishmaelite" is the more generic term for a Bedouin nomad. It became a general designation for desert tribes. "Midianite" is the more specific ethnic term.\(^4\) Alternatively, "Ishmaelites" may designate a league of tribes, with the "Midianites" constituting just one tribe in it (cf. 25:13-17).\(^5\) Rather than being agents of death, the traders proved to be God's instruments of deliverance.

Judah, like Reuben, did not relish killing Joseph. Yet he was not willing to let him go free, either. Probably Judah dreaded the prospect of Joseph receiving the rights of the firstborn, since he was in line for Jacob's blessing. His suggestion that the brothers sell Joseph implies that he knew slave trading was common in Egypt. The price agreed on for Joseph, 20 shekels of silver, was the same price that God later specified, under the Mosaic Law, that Israelites should pay for a slave between the ages of five and 20 years (Lev. 27:5). These prices were evidently standard in the ancient Near East at this time.

---

\(^1\)Ibid., p. 354.
\(^2\)Whyte, 1:120.
\(^3\)See Ammon Ben-Tor, "The Trade Relations of Palestine in the Early Bronze Age," *Journal of the Economic and Social History of the Orient* 29:1 (February 1986):1-27.
\(^4\)Hamilton, *The Book ... Chapters 18—50*, p. 423.
Shepherds employed by others earned about eight shekels a year.\(^1\)

"Favorable circumstances are not always the will of God."\(^2\)

"If Joseph steps onto the pages of sacred history as a bratty do-gooder, Judah enters as a slave trader who has turned his back on Abraham's God-given vision. He is callous toward his father and cynical about the covenant family."\(^3\)

The significance of the action of Joseph's brothers was greater than may appear at first.

"They had not only sold their brother, but in their brother they had cast out a member of the seed promised and given to Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, from the fellowship of the chosen family, and sinned against the God of salvation and His promises."\(^4\)

37:29-36 Reuben was absent during the sale of Joseph. When he returned and found Joseph missing, he felt great distress ("he tore his garments," v. 29). Jacob would have held him responsible for Joseph's safety, since Reuben was the oldest of the brothers. Joseph's brothers tried to cover one sin with another.

"The message accompanying the cloak [v. 32] has a certain blunt brutality about it. They did not try to soften the blow."\(^5\)

Jacob had deceived his father with the *skin* of a goat (27:16). Now his sons were deceiving him with the *blood* of a goat (v. 31).

\(^{1}\)Ibid., p. 356.
\(^{2}\)Thomas, *Through the ...*, p. 62.
\(^{3}\)Waltke, *Genesis*, p. 508.
\(^{4}\)Keil and Delitzsch, 1:332.
\(^{5}\)Leupold, 2:973.
Had Jacob believed more strongly in God's revelations through Joseph's dreams, he might not have jumped to the conclusion that Joseph was dead, and his sorrow might not have been as great (cf. 2 Sam. 18:33). Jacob's fears were groundless, but he did not realize this because he chose, in this instance, to live by sight rather than by faith.

"The first hint of the concept of future life [in Scripture] is found in the words of Jacob, speaking of Joseph, whom he thought to be dead: 'I will go down to Sheol to my son mourning' (Gen. 37:35)."¹

This statement above is disputed by the translation: "I will go down to Sheol in mourning for my son" (NASB, cf. NET2), but most English translations have "I will go down to Sheol to my son mourning," or the equivalent.

The Pharaoh referred to (v. 36) was probably Ammenemes II (1929-1895 B.C.), and the capital of Egypt during this period (the twelfth dynasty) was Memphis. This was where Joseph was taken. Potiphar, as Pharaoh's bodyguard captain, would have been in charge of the king's executioners, who carried out the capital sentences ordered by Pharaoh. "Potiphar" is a shortened form of "Potiphera" (41:45), meaning "He Whom Ra [the sun-god] Has Given" (emphasis added). The meaning of the Hebrew word saris, translated in verse 36 "officer" or "official," changed in meaning in the first millennium B.C. to "eunuch."² Josephus called Potiphar Pharaoh's chief cook, which may or may not be correct.³

This chapter is the first of many, in the record of Joseph's experiences, that demonstrates God's ability to cause the "wrath of mankind" to "praise" Him (Ps. 76:10). He can make even bad situations work for the accomplishment of His purposes, and for the blessing of His elect (Rom. 8:28).

²Kitchen, Ancient Orient ..., pp. 115-66.
"Envy is the root of almost every sin against our brethren. And whenever it is harbored, there is an end of all peace, rest, and satisfaction. Envy is 'the rottenness of the bones' (Prov. xiv. 30), and no one can stand against it (Prov. xxvii. 4). 'Where envying is, there is confusion and every evil work' (James iii. 16)."¹

"The Genesis account presents Joseph as a very unusual young man, possessed of a strong and sterling character, of a high morality and fidelity to God and his superiors. He was also characterized by gentleness in human relations. Remarkably, Joseph's spiritual and moral strength does not appear to be based on or related to God's periodic and direct revelations, as was true of Jacob, Isaac, and Abraham. [This is debatable.] Presumably then Jacob must have put a lot of character building truth into the young man's life at an early time. It does not appear that he could have obtained such information from any other source. If this is the case, Jacob did a much better job with Joseph than with his other sons."²

"They [Joseph's older brothers] had been brought up under the influence of the old Jacob, while Joseph had been the companion of the changed Jacob or 'Israel.'"³

Joseph's motives are not completely clear in the text. Consequently, students of his life have made judgments about his character that are both positive and negative. Most have concluded that he was one of the greatest men in history.⁴ A few have contested this view, and believed that he was selfish and manipulative.⁵ I believe the textual evidence favors the former view primarily, though some of Joseph's early actions may have been unwise, at best, and arrogant at worst.

---

¹Thomas, Genesis, pp. 361-62.
²H. Vos, p. 134.
³Thomas, Genesis, p. 355.
⁴See Thomas Mann's 1,600-page Joseph and His Brothers.
⁵E.g., Maurice Samuel, Certain People of the Book; idem, "Joseph—The Brilliant Failure," Bible Review 2:1 (Spring 1986):38-51, 68.
An important lesson of this chapter is that people who serve faithfully, as unto the LORD, often experience severe persecution, but God will preserve them so that they can fulfill their God-given destiny.

3. Judah and Tamar ch. 38

This chapter at first seems out of place, since it interrupts the story of Joseph, but we must remember that this is the toledot of Jacob. This is the story of what happened to his whole family, not just Joseph. The central problem with which the chapter deals is childlessness. The events of the chapter must span at least 20 years, a long period probably during which Joseph was lost to his family (cf. 37:2; 41:46-47; 45:6).

"Joseph was seventeen when he was sold and thirty years old when he was elevated to the throne, which gives us thirteen years. When you add the seven years of plenty and the two years of famine, you have twenty-two years before Joseph was reconciled to his brothers. That's plenty of time for Judah to marry, beget three sons, bury two sons and a wife, and get involved with Tamar. If his marriage had occurred before Joseph's exile, you have even more time available."¹

Leah's oldest sons were pretty bad men. In chapter 34 we saw Simeon and Levi massacring the inhabitants of Shechem. In chapter 35 we saw Reuben defiling his father's bed. And now in chapter 38 we see Judah having relations with a supposed prostitute and trying to cover it up. Judah was a prodigal son of Jacob.²

Judah tried unsuccessfully to ensure the levirate (brother-in-law) rights of his daughter-in-law Tamar (whose name means "Palm"). As a last resort to obtain her legally rightful child, Tamar deceived Judah into having sexual intercourse with her by masquerading as a prostitute. She thereby fulfilled her right to become the mother of Judah's children, and gave birth to twins, the younger of which displaced his older twin in an unusual birth.

"The following sketch from the life of Judah is intended to point out the origin of the three leading families of the future princely tribe in Israel [Shelah, Perez, and Zerah] and at the

¹Wiersbe, p. 145.
²See David Wyrtzen, Unexpected Grace, pp. 45-54.
same time to show in what danger the sons of Jacob would have been of forgetting the sacred vocation of their race, through marriages with Canaanitish women, and of perishing in the sin of Canaan, if the mercy of God had not interposed, and by leading Joseph into Egypt prepared the way for the removal of the whole house of Jacob into that land, and thus protected the family, just as it was expanding into a nation, from the corrupting influence of the manners and customs of Canaan."

This chapter records the compromise of the Israelites, specifically Judah, with two Canaanites—Shua and Tamar—resulting in the confusion of seed: the chosen people mixing with the condemned. Like Esau, Judah chose a wife from the women of the land, even one of the accursed Canaanites (cf. 24:3-4; 27:46—28:2). This shocking and shameful story is perhaps the basis for the prohibition against mixing various kinds of seed, yoking two different kinds of animals together, weaving two kinds of thread into cloth, and so forth, in the Mosaic Law.

"One gets the distinct impression that ever since the Dinah incident (ch. 34) Jacob has less and less control over the behavior of his family."3

38:1-11 Levirate marriage (the marriage of a man to his deceased brother's wife to provide his brother with an heir) was a common custom in the ancient Near East at this time (vv. 8-10). It was common also in Asia, Africa, and other areas, but it evidently originated in Mesopotamia.4 The Mosaic Law did not abolish it, but restricted it in Israel to preserve the sanctity of marriage (cf. Deut. 25:5-10).

"The enormity of Onan's sin is in its studied outrage against the family, against his brother's widow and against his own body. The standard English versions fail to make clear that this was his

---

1Keil and Delitzsch, 1:338-39.
3Hamilton, The Book ... Chapters 18—50, p. 433.
persistent practice. *When* (9) should be translated 'whenever.'

Onan's refusal to give Tamar a child not only demonstrated a lack of love for his deceased brother. It also revealed Onan's selfish heart, that wanted for himself what would legally have gone to his elder brother's heir. If Tamar had borne Onan a son, that child would have been the perpetuator of Er's name, legacy, family line, and inheritance. Onan thereby would have fulfilled his "duty" to "raise up a child" for his brother (v. 8; cf. Ruth 4:5, 21-22).

God judged Onan's sin severely, because descendants were important in His plans for the Israelite patriarchs—not because he practiced birth control. God leaves the choice of how many children we have, and when, up to us, though He sovereignly controls this, of course. Onan was frustrating the fulfillment of God's promises to Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob by refusing to give Tamar a child (cf. 11:4). This is the first text that explicitly states that God put someone—actually two people—to death ("took his life" [twice], vv. 7, 10).

The Israelites typically viewed incidents with the ultimate cause in view, namely, God—rather than with the immediate cause in view, namely, the instrument that God used to accomplish His will. Thus the statement that "the LORD took his life" means that ultimately God was responsible for his untimely death. It does not mean that God supernaturally intervened to execute him directly. God may have used other means to bring about his death.

Judah sinned against Tamar by forcing her to live as a widow (v. 11). This was because he wrongly blamed Tamar for the deaths of his sons (cf. v. 26), rather than blaming his sons. But Tamar had every right to children by virtue of her lawful marriages. Moreover, as a member of the chosen family, Judah should have made certain that she had another legitimate opportunity to bear children.

---

1Kidner, p. 188.
Judah comes across at the beginning of this incident, again, as a hard and callous man. He had previously suggested selling Joseph into slavery, in order to make money off of him, and deceiving Jacob—despite Reuben's protests (37:26-27, 29-30). Now the writer portrayed him as showing no grief over the tragic deaths of his sons—in contrast to Jacob, who mourned inconsolably over Joseph's apparent death (37:34-35). Judah also ordered the burning of his daughter-in-law (38:24)!

38:12-30 When Judah deceived Jacob (37:31-32), a goat and an item of clothing featured in the trick. Here, ironically, a goat and an item of clothing play a part in Tamar's deception of Judah. Tamar's strategy for obtaining her right was not commendable. She played the role of a common prostitute (Heb. zona). Judah's Canaanite friend described her as a "temple prostitute" later (v. 21, Heb. qedesa, lit. "holy woman," i.e., a woman used in the worship of pagan religion), but he probably said this to elevate her social status in the eyes of the other men he was addressing.

Though ancient Near Eastern society condemned adultery, it permitted prostitution.¹

"The influence of Hittite law may be reflected in Tamar's action, for it held that, when no brother-in-law existed to fulfill the levirate duty, the father-in-law was responsible."²

By wearing a veil, Tamar hid her identity from Judah, but at the same time presented herself as a betrothed (to Shelah) woman, since engaged women wore veils (cf. 24:65; 29:21-25). However, the fact that she sought to obtain seed by Judah shows her legitimate desire for children, at least. It probably also reveals her desire to enter into the Abrahamic

---

promises—by bearing children for Judah and his sons. Jacob's family experienced deception again.

"Tamar qualifies as a heroine in the story, for she risked everything for her right to be the mother in the family of Judah and to protect the family."\(^1\)

"Although Tamar's actions in this regard may seem strange to us, there is evidence that among ancient Assyrian and Hittite peoples, part of the custom was that the levirate responsibility could pass to the father of the widow's husband if there were no brothers to fulfill it. Thus Tamar was only trying to acquire that to which she had a legal right."\(^2\)

"In the ancient Orient, it was customary in many places for married women to give themselves to strangers because of some oath. Such sacrifices of chastity in the service of the goddess of love, Astarte, were, of course, different from ordinary prostitution even though they were repulsive to Israel. They were strictly forbidden by law, and the teachers of wisdom warned urgently against this immoral custom, which was apparently at times fashionable even in Israel (Deut. 23.17; Num. 30.6; Hos. 4.33 ff; Prove. 7.1-27 ..."\(^3\)

Tamar seems to have been presenting herself as following this practice of "sacred" prostitution, since Judah referred to her as "the temple prostitute" (v. 21).

Moses did not clarify Tamar's motivation. Whether or not she understood and believed the promises to the patriarchs regarding their sacred vocation, she did become an ancestress of the Messiah (Ruth 4:18-22; Matt. 1:3, 16).

\(^1\) Ross, *Creation and ...,* p. 612.
\(^2\) Aalders, 2:194.
\(^3\) von Rad, p. 359.
"Just as in chapter 20 where the seed of Abraham was protected by the 'righteous' (saddiq, 20:4; NIV, 'innocent') Abimelech (cf. also 26:9-11), it is the woman Tamar, not Judah the patriarch, who is ultimately responsible for the survival of the descendants of the house of Judah."¹

Judah's initial response to his discovery of Tamar's pregnancy was: "Bring her out and have her burned!" (v. 24).

"Note, It is a common thing for men to be severe against those very sins in others in which yet they allow themselves; and so, in judging others, they condemn themselves, Rom. ii. 1; xiv. 22."²

When Judah was publicly identified as responsible for Tamar's pregnancy, his response seems to have been genuine repentance (v. 26). He confessed his wrong and repented, by ceasing from further sexual relations with Tamar, his daughter-in-law. It is evidently because his repentance was genuine, that Jacob did not exclude him from receiving a special blessing, as he would later exclude Reuben, Simeon, and Levi. Because Judah humbled himself, God raised him up to be the chief of the house of Israel, and blessed the children that he fathered—even though they were a result of his sin. Compare God's blessing of Solomon despite the fact that he was the fruit of the unlawful union of David and Bathsheba.

"The scene marks the beginning of Judah's transformation when he declares of Tamar, 'She is righteous, not I' (lit., 38:26)."³

"... in its biographical sketches, character change is what Genesis is all about: Abram becomes Abraham; Jacob becomes Israel. Particularly in Jacob's family we see examples of character change: Reuben, violator of his father's concubine, later shows great concern for both Joseph and his

---

²Matthew Henry, p. 59.
³Waltke, Genesis, p. 506.
father, while the upstart cocky Joseph becomes the wise statesman who forgives his brothers. Thus, this chapter has a most important role in clarifying the course of the subsequent narrative; without it we should find its development inexplicable."¹

Perez (meaning "A Breach" or "One Who Breaks Through") was the first of Tamar's twins born (vv. 27-30). He became the ancestor of David and the Messiah (Ruth 4:18-22; Matt. 1:3, 16). Moses may have included the unusual circumstances surrounding the birth of these twins in order to emphasize God's selection of the son through whom the line of blessing would descend.

"He [Judah] and his brothers sold their younger brother into Egypt, thinking they could thwart God's design that the elder brothers would serve the younger Joseph. Yet in Judah's own family, despite his attempts to hinder Tamar's marriage, God's will worked out in a poignant confirmation of the principle that the elder would serve the younger."²

The scarlet thread (v. 28) marked the second-born, Zerah" ("Dawning," i.e., "Red" or "Scarlet"). It did not indicate the messianic line. That line came through the other son, Perez (cf. Mic. 2:13). The thread is perhaps just a detail of the story that explains the names given.

"A key to this story is the remarkable similarity between the births of Perez and Zerah and of Jacob and Esau. Both births involve twins; in both the younger thrusts ahead of the elder and displaces him; and in both the one who is naturally expected to get the birthright, but loses it, is

¹Wenham, Genesis 16—50, p. 364.
²Ross, "Genesis," p. 89. See also The NET2 Bible note on 38:29.
associated with red: red stew in the case of Esau and a red string in the case of Zerah.\footnote{Waltke, \textit{Genesis}, pp. 506-7.}

The only mothers in the Bible who bore twins were Rebekah and Tamar.

"As the Jacob narrative began with an account of the struggle of the twins Jacob and Esau (25:22), so now the conclusion of the Jacob narrative is marked by a similar struggle of twins. In both cases the struggle resulted in a reversal of the right of the firstborn and the right of the blessing. The brevity and austerity with which the narrative is recounted leaves the impression that the meaning of the passage is self-evident to the reader. Indeed, coming as it does on the heels of a long series of reversals in which the younger gains the upper hand on the elder, its sense is transparent."\footnote{Sailhamer, "Genesis," p. 232. For a comparison of the births of Jacob and Esau with those of Perez and Zerah, see K. Luke, "Two Birth Narratives in Genesis," \textit{Indian Theological Studies} 17:2 (June 1980):155-80.}

Judah’s hedonistic willfulness, in this chapter, contrasts with Joseph’s self-control in sexual temptation in the next. Here, promiscuous Judah grasps Tamar’s seductive offer, and enlarges his family. Later, chaste Joseph resists Potiphar’s wife’s seductive offer, and ends his career (temporarily) in prison. This chapter also provides an explanation of the origins of the tribe of Judah, helps the reader appreciate the Canaanite threat to Israel’s purity, and helps us appreciate Jacob’s later willingness to leave Canaan to join Joseph in Egypt.

An important lesson from this chapter is that God corrects those who disregard His plan and pursue lives of self-gratification, often using talionic justice (i.e., punishment exactly the same as the crime) in His discipline.
4. Joseph in Potiphar's house ch. 39

Joseph experienced God’s blessing as he served faithfully in Potiphar's house. His master's wife repeatedly seduced him, but he refused her offers, because he did not want to betray Potiphar's trust and sin against God. Joseph continued to enjoy God's abundant blessing, even after being imprisoned because of a false charge.

"Each scene in the record of Joseph's life reveals some distinctive trait of character elicited by means of a crisis."\(^1\)

"Rhetorically, the Joseph narrative often [doubles and] couples events, especially the double dreams of Joseph (chap. 37), the duo of the baker and butler (ch. 40), and the two dreams of Pharaoh (chap. 41). After the Judah-Tamar incident, chap. 39 provides the second story of a patriarch's temptation by a married woman."\(^2\)

Both of the seductresses were non-Israelites.

39:1-6 The clause "the LORD was with" Joseph occurs four times in this chapter (vv. 2, 3, 21, and 23), and explains the reason for his success. The divine name "LORD," Yahweh, appears seven times in this chapter (vv. 2, 3 [twice], 5 [twice], 21, and 23), but only one other time in the Jacob toledot (37:2—50:26): in 49:18. God had previously promised to be with Isaac and Jacob (26:3, 24, 28; 28:15, 20; 31:3). "Yahweh" is the name for God used in this story. The covenant-keeping God of the patriarchs was with this son of Jacob far from home.

"Joseph was sold to an officer of Pharaoh, with whom he might get acquainted with public persons and public business, and so be fitted for the preferment for which he was designed. What God intends men for he will be sure, some way or other, to qualify them for."\(^3\)

---


\(^3\)Matthew Henry, p. 59.
Joseph had a fine physique and a handsome face (v. 6), features that he seems to have inherited from his mother Rachel (cf. 29:17). Joseph proved faithful in a little, and therefore the LORD placed him in charge of much ("he [Potiphar] made him [Joseph] overseer in his house, and over all that he owned," v. 5; cf. Luke 16:10). Note that God blessed Potiphar "on account of Joseph" (v. 5; cf. 12:3a).

"The whole sequence of 39:2-6 is a particularly apt and clear example of the meaning of blessing in the Old Testament. Assistance and blessing belong together, though they are different. Blessing embraces both people and the rest of creation. The narrator simply presupposes that the blessing can flow over from the one whom Yahweh assists to a foreign people and adherents of a foreign religion precisely because of the one whom Yahweh assists. The power inherent in the blessing is expansive."\(^1\)

39:7-23 Joseph was evidently in his mid-twenties at this time. He was in a "no win" position with Potiphar's wife. As a slave he had to obey her, but as a trustworthy and moral servant of Potiphar he had to refuse her. The typical male clothing in patriarchal times consisted of mid-calf-length shorts and a tunic that resembled a long T-shirt (cf. 3:21; 37:3).\(^2\) Joseph regarded obedience to God as his primary responsibility (v. 9), and therefore chose as he did (cf. Ps. 51:4).

The sin of Potiphar's wife (v. 7), like the sin of Judah (39:15), began in her eye.

"We have great need to make a covenant with our eyes (Job xxxi. 1), lest the eye infect the heart."\(^3\)

Note that Potiphar's wife's invitation was for Joseph to lie "beside" (Heb. 'esel) her (v. 10; cf. vv. 15, 16, 18; 41:3), not to lie "with" her, the more common phrase that describes

---

3Matthew Henry, p. 60.
sexual intercourse (cf. 34:7; 39:14). Evidently she invited his physical familiarity, which she hoped would lead to intercourse. Joseph, realizing where this first step might lead, wisely set a boundary for himself and refused even to be alone with her (v. 10).¹

"The garment that Joseph had to leave in the woman’s hands was actually the undergarment, a long shirt tied about the hips. It was not the coatlike [sic] cape, which men were not accustomed to wear indoors. This means that Joseph fled completely undressed, at once disgracefully and honorably."²

"It is better to lose a good coat than a good conscience."³

"To be cast into a prison was a relatively light penalty."⁴

"This story about Joseph reverses a well-known plot in the patriarchal narratives. Whereas before it was the beautiful wife of the patriarch who was sought by the foreign ruler, now it was Joseph, the handsome patriarch himself who was sought by the wife of the foreign ruler. Whereas in the earlier narratives it was either the Lord (12:17; 20:3) or the moral purity of the foreign ruler (26:10) that rescued the wife rather than the patriarch, here it was Joseph’s own moral courage that saved the day. Whereas in the preceding narratives, the focus of the writer had been on God’s faithfulness in fulfilling his covenant promises, in the story of Joseph his attention is turned to the human response."⁵

---

²von Rad, p. 366.
³Matthew Henry, p. 60.
⁴Leupold, 2:1001.
⁵Sailhamer, "Genesis," pp. 234.
"The Joseph narratives are intended then to give balance to the narratives of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. Together the two sections show both God's faithfulness in spite of human failure as well as the necessity of an obedient and faithful response."\(^1\)

Success in temptation depends more on character than on circumstances. Character rests on commitment to the will of God. We can see Joseph's character in his loyalty to Potiphar, concerning what his master had entrusted to his care (v. 9). We also see it in his responsibility to God for what belonged to someone else (v. 9). It is further obvious in his responsibility to God respecting his special personal calling (37:5-9; 45:5-9). Additionally, we see it in his responsibility to God concerning his sacred vocation as a member of the house of Israel.

"It is too little observed, and especially by young men who have most need to observe it, that in such temptations it is not only the sensual that needs to be guarded against, but also two much deeper-lying tendencies—the craving for loving recognition, and the desire to respond to the feminine love for admiration and devotion. A large proportion of misery is due to a kind of uncontrolled and mistaken chivalry."\(^2\)

"But keep in mind that there is no sin in the bait [that tempts]. The sin is in the bite [that tastes]."\(^3\)

This is not saying that Potiphar's wife did not sin when she tempted Joseph—she did—but that Joseph would have sinned only when he yielded to the temptation.

"Heaven has no rage like love to hatred turned, nor hell a fury like a woman scorned."\(^4\)

Joseph's punishment was light in view of the charge against him. Joseph's integrity had obviously impressed his master, but Potiphar himself may have also had questions about his wife's chastity (cf. Ps. 105:18).

\(^{1}\)Ibid., p. 235.  
\(^{2}\)Dods, p. 344.  
\(^{4}\)William Congreve, quoted in *John Bartlett's Familiar Quotations*, p. 324.
Nevertheless, it seems that he believed his wife's story (v. 19).¹ Joseph's slavery in Potiphar's house prefigures Israel's Egyptian bondage.

Because God was still "with" Joseph (vv. 21, 23), and because his character had not changed, Joseph experienced the same kind of favor at the hand of the prison warden that he had received from Potiphar. The Lord honored Joseph ("made whatever he did prosper," v. 23) as one who had honored Him (1 Sam. 2:30). It is easier to depart from God's will when we are alone, and when there is not much hope for the immediate future.

"Yokes borne in youth have at least three results; they prove personal integrity, they promote spiritual maturity, and they prepare for fuller opportunity. In nature and in human life the best things are not the easiest but the hardest to obtain. ..."

"How nobly Joseph comported himself amidst all these trials and hardships! He might have sulked and become embittered; but instead of this his spirit was unconquerable by reason of its trust in God. He steadfastly refused to be unfaithful to his God, whatever might be the consequences. In duty he was loyal, in temptation he was strong, and in prison he was faithful. When this spirit actuates our life, difficulties become means of grace and stepping-stones to higher things. On the other hand, if difficulties are met in a fretful, murmuring, complaining, disheartened spirit, not only do we lose the blessings that would otherwise come through them, but our spiritual life suffers untold injury, and we are weakened for the next encounter of temptation whenever it comes. There is scarcely anything in the Christian life which reveals more thoroughly what our Christianity is worth than the way we meet difficulties by the use of the grace of God."²

This chapter reveals that dedication to God's calling enables His servants to resist temptation.³ I am assuming, with many other interpreters of this chapter, that Joseph remembered his dreams (ch. 36) and believed that God had a future for him.

---

5. The prisoners' dreams and Joseph's interpretations ch. 40

When Pharaoh’s cupbearer and baker had disturbing dreams in prison, Joseph accurately foretold their meanings—the cupbearer's restoration and the baker's execution—but Joseph remained in prison because the cupbearer forgot him.

The "cupbearer" and the "baker" were responsible for Pharaoh's drink and food (vv. 1-4). Nehemiah, much later, occupied a similar position to this cupbearer in the Persian court (cf. Neh. 1:11—2:8). It seems likely that both food-service employees were in prison because someone had tried to poison Pharaoh, or so it seemed, and Pharaoh could not determine immediately which of the two men was responsible. Their offences may have involved no more than the casual lighting of a fly in his cup or a little sand in his bread.¹

"When it is said that they 'offended' their lord, the verb used, hate'u implies actual guilt on the part of each, for literally it means, 'they sinned.'"²

The place of confinement was a state prison: a round, wall-enclosed building, probably attached to Potiphar's house, as was customary in Egypt (vv. 3, 7). These prisoners would have been dealt with much more harshly if their offences had warranted it. The "warden of the prison" (39:21-23) was evidently in charge of the prison. Potiphar was "the captain of the bodyguard" (39:1). The warden gave Joseph the job of taking care of Pharaoh's two important prisoners (v. 4). Obviously the warden trusted Joseph and gave him some responsibility for these accused servants of Pharaoh—like some prisoners now have certain privileges and responsibilities for other prisoners in their facilities.

"Genuine loyalty to God will always express itself in absolute faithfulness in every-day duty."³

---

¹See Matthew Henry, p. 60.
²Leupold, 2:1005.
³Thomas, Genesis, p. 380.
The Egyptians and the Babylonians regarded dreams as very significant predictions (vv. 5-8).¹

"There were men who had learned the technique of interpreting dreams, and there was a considerable literature on the subject."²

The dreams of the cupbearer and baker were revelations from God. Realizing that God had given him the ability to interpret these divine revelations, Joseph invited the two prisoners to relate their dreams to him. He was careful, however, to give God the glory for his interpretative gift (v. 8; cf. 41:16, 25, 28, 39). Daniel also had this ability, and likewise gave God the credit (cf. Dan. 2:28).

"Joseph means to say that the interpretation of dreams is not a human art but a charisma [gift] which God can grant."³

After three days, Pharaoh would "lift up" the butler's head (v. 13) and restore him to his former position.

"This expression goes back ultimately to an actual custom in an audience: the petitioner stands or kneels with bowed head while the one on the throne takes him under the chin and raises his head (cf. II Kings 25.27; etc.)."⁴

Pharaoh would also "lift up" the baker's head (v. 19), but he would do so in a different sense. The baker would not simply suffer execution, but his corpse would then be impaled and publicly exposed. (Josephus called this "crucifixion," impaling being an early form of crucifixion.⁵) The Egyptians did this to prevent one's spirit from resting in the afterlife.⁶

"The Egyptians didn't use the gallows; they beheaded the victim and then impaled his body on a stake ("tree")."⁷

¹Sarna, _Understanding Genesis_, pp. 218-19.
²von Rad, p. 371.
³von Rad, p. 371.
⁴Ibid., p. 372.
⁷Wiersbe, p. 148.
The significance of this chapter lies in Joseph's God-given ability to interpret dreams. This gift, and Joseph's use of it on this occasion, prepared the way for Pharaoh's calling for Joseph, two years later, to interpret his two dreams—and exalting him to high office in the government (ch. 41). During these two years, the butler "forgot" about Joseph (v. 23). He must have done so deliberately, since he could hardly have forgotten the man who had played such a significant role in his life.

"Trials may be viewed from two standpoints, and it will make all the difference to our spiritual life and peace which of these two points of view we take. From the human side Joseph's suffering was due to injustice on the part of Potiphar, and ingratitude on the part of the butler. From the Divine side these years were permitted for the purpose of training and preparing Joseph for the great work that lay before him. If we look only at the human side of trial we shall become discouraged, and it may be irritated and angered, but as we turn to look at it from the Divine side we shall see God in everything and all things working together for our good."¹

An important lesson from this chapter is that those who faithfully use the abilities that God has given them, even in discouraging circumstances, demonstrate unwavering faith in God's promises to them.

6. Pharaoh's dreams and Joseph's interpretations ch. 41

Joseph interpreted Pharaoh's two dreams clearly and accurately. This led to God elevating Joseph in the government, and demonstrating His sovereign control over economic life in Egypt, as He prepared to preserve Israel and Egypt through the coming famine.

41:1-8 The "soothsayer priests" (v. 8) were "men of the priestly caste, who occupied themselves with the sacred arts and sciences of the Egyptians, the hieroglyphic writings, astrology, the interpretation of dreams, the foretelling of events, magic, and conjuring, and who were regarded as the

¹Thomas, Genesis, p. 389.
possessors of secret arts (*vid. Ex. vii. 11*) and the *wise men* of the nation."¹

Divination tries to understand the future, and magic seeks to control it. God prevented the Egyptian diviners from comprehending the meaning of Pharaoh's dreams, even though the clue to their interpretation lay in the religious symbols of Egypt.

"For the cow was the symbol of Isis, the goddess of the all-sustaining earth, and in the hieroglyphics it represents the earth, agriculture, and food; and the Nile, by its overflowing, was the source of fertility of the land."²

Yet these symbols had multiple meanings to the Egyptians, which probably accounts for the difficulty of interpretation.³

"Seven-year famines were a familiar feature of life in the ancient Near East."⁴

Joseph carefully gave God the glory for his interpretive gift in his response to Pharaoh (v. 16).

"As far as Joseph was concerned, absolute truthfulness in guarding God's honor was far more important than personal advantage."⁵

"Like Daniel before Nebuchadnezzar, he expressly disclaims all ability of himself to unfold the secret counsels of heaven, or exercise that wisdom for which Pharaoh seems very willing to give him credit. The same humility has been in every age a

---

¹Keil and Delitzsch, 1:349. See Livingston, pp. 65-80, for information about the scripts of the ancient Near East.
²Keil and Delitzsch, 1:349.
⁴Ibid., p. 398.
⁵Leupold, 2:1025-26.
distinguishing ornament of all God's faithful servants."¹

41:25-36 Joseph also presented God (Elohim) as sovereign over Pharaoh (vv. 25, 28).

"Joseph's life and his thinking are theocentric."²

The Egyptians regarded Pharaoh as a divine manifestation in human form. By accepting Joseph's interpretation of his dreams, Pharaoh chose to humble himself under Joseph's God. God rewarded this humility by preserving the land of Egypt in the coming famine. That Pharaoh believed Joseph's interpretation, and then chose to raise a young foreign prisoner to such an elevated position in his government, are truly miraculous occurrences.

"... the writer has gone out of his way to present the whole narrative in a series of pairs, all fitting within the notion of the emphasis given by means of the repetition: 'The matter is certain and swift' (v. 32). The repetition of the dreams, then, fits this pattern."³

"The intention of prophecies concerning judgments to come, is to excite those threatened with them to take proper measures for averting them."⁴

"The writer's emphasis on the 'good' and 'evil' represents Joseph's wisdom and discernment as an ability to distinguish between the 'good' (tob) and the 'evil' (ra'). Such a picture suggests that in the story of Joseph the writer is returning to one of the central themes of the beginning of the book, the knowledge of 'good' (tob) and 'evil' (ra'). While Joseph is able to discern between

¹Bush, 2:277.
²Leupold, 2:1029.
'good and evil,' it is clear from this story that ultimately such knowledge comes only from God (v. 39). Joseph is the embodiment of the ideal that true wisdom, the ability to discern between 'good and evil,' comes only from God. Thus the lesson of the early chapters of Genesis is artfully repeated in these last chapters."1

"Joseph prefigured the victors Moses and Daniel, the bookends of Israel's period of captivity, whose wisdom prevailed over the Gentiles (cf. 1 Cor 1:18—2:16)."2

41:37-45 Pharaoh recognized Joseph as one who had unique supernatural powers (v. 38; cf. Dan. 5:14). He probably did not identify the "divine spirit" in Joseph as the Holy Spirit, the third person of the Trinity. There is no evidence that Pharaoh understood or believed in the God of Israel, much less comprehended His tri-unity. Most likely, he thought some unfamiliar or unknown deity had manifested himself or herself through Joseph.

"It can hardly be accidental that in all of Genesis only Joseph is described as one who is filled with the Spirit of God (41:38)."3

"Someone once asked Gladstone what is the measure of a great statesman. He said it is the man who knows the direction God is going for the next fifty years. Well, here in Genesis, Pharaoh is told what is going to happen for the next fourteen years."4

It was not unknown in Egypt, for the Pharaohs to appoint individuals who lacked previous social station or political rank, to positions of authority in the government. However, this

---

1Sailhamer, "Genesis," p. 240.
4McGee, 1:166.
Pharaoh seems to have been unusually humble, generous, and secure.

"At any time the king would—and did—appoint outsiders. In fact, the noteworthy careers, as preserved for us in tomb inscriptions, broke through all departmental limitations. Men of humble origin could rise to the top once their gifts were recognized; and we find that they were called to a succession of posts which would seem to us to have required entirely different preparatory training."\(^1\)

"Only a man like Joseph, schooled by adversity and sorrow, could meet a sudden elevation like this without pride and self-exaltation."\(^2\)

To naturalize Joseph and give him the necessary social status, Pharaoh gave him an Egyptian name: Zaphenath-paneah (v. 45; cf. Dan. 1:7), which probably means "The God Speaks and Lives," and an Egyptian wife from an appropriate level of society. Her name, Asenath, means "Belonging to (the goddess) Neith." Joseph's father-in-law, Potiphera, whose name means "He Whom Ra (the sun god) Gave," was evidently a high-ranking priest in the celebrated Temple of the Sun, located in the city of On (Gr. Heliopolis) 10 miles northeast of modern Cairo.

"The high priest at On held the exalted title 'Greatest of Seers.' Joseph thus marries into the elite of Egyptian nobility."\(^3\)

Joseph's marriage to an Egyptian seems to have been Pharaoh's order, and God permitted it. The patriarchs generally avoided marrying Canaanites, because of God's curse on Canaan (9:25), but marriage to non-Canaanite Gentiles was


\(^{2}\)Leupold, 2:1033-34.

\(^{3}\)Sarna, *Understanding Genesis*, p. 288.
less serious. Joseph's wife and in-laws did not turn him away from his faith in Yahweh, or his high regard for God's promises to his forefathers (cf. Moses).

"Although Joseph married a pagan priest's daughter, he trained his sons to worship the living God. Probably Asenath also became a worshiper of the Lord."\(^1\)

41:46-57 The notation of the birth of Joseph's sons is, of course, very significant—in view of God's purposes concerning Abraham's family (vv. 50-52). Their names also reveal their father's faith. Joseph acknowledged God's goodness to him in the naming of both his sons: "God has made me forget all my trouble" and "God has made me fruitful." In both names, Joseph used the name *Elohim*, which highlights His power. McGee suggested that we could therefore call these boys "Amnesia" and "Ambrosia."\(^2\)

"If the name of Joseph's first son (Manasseh) focuses on a God who preserves, the name of Joseph's second son (Ephraim) focuses on a God who blesses."\(^3\)

An allusion to the blessing aspect of the patriarchal promises occurs in the reference to the grain that Joseph had stored up, in verse 49: "in great abundance like the sand of the sea."

Some readers of Genesis have wondered why Joseph did not inform Jacob of his welfare quickly, since he must have realized that Jacob would have worried about his disappearance. In naming Manasseh, Joseph said God had enabled him to "forget all my troubles and all of my father's household" (v. 51). Perhaps Joseph did not try to contact Jacob, because he thought his father had set him up for what happened to him at

---

Dothan.¹ This seems very unlikely to me, since Jacob's sorrow over Joseph's apparent death seems genuine.

Perhaps Joseph did not try to contact Jacob because, through the remarkable events by which God had exalted him, he came to realize that God would fulfill the rest of His promises contained in his dreams.² He may have concluded that his best course of action would be to continue to let God take the initiative, since he had done so consistently in his life to that time.³ Joseph had evidently come to trust God in place of his father. In this sense, he had forgotten his father's household as well, not just his troubles there. Clearly, Joseph had not literally forgotten his father (cf. 45:9-13).

"'Forget' does not mean here 'not remember' but rather to have something no longer (cf. Job 39.17; 11:16. See, too, the Arabic proverb, 'Whoever drinks water from the Nile forgets his fatherland if he is a foreigner'). The phrase refers, therefore, more to an objective external fact than to a subjective, psychological process."⁴

One might say that, for Joseph, life in Canaan was a closed chapter of his life.⁵

"Just as Adam is seen in the Creation account as dependent on God for his knowledge of 'good and evil,' so Joseph also is portrayed here in the same terms. Just as Adam is made God's 'vicegerent' to rule over all the land, so similarly Joseph is portrayed here as the Pharaoh's 'vicegerent' over all his land (vv. 40-43). As Adam was made in God's image to rule over all the land, so the king here gave Joseph his 'signet ring' and dressed him in royal garments (v. 42). The picture of Joseph resembles the psalmist's understanding of Genesis 1 when, regarding that passage, he writes, '[You have] crowned him

²Delitzsch, 2:306; Waltke, Genesis, p. 535.
⁴von Rad, p. 379.
with glory and honor./ You made him ruler over the works of your hands;/ you put everything under his feet' (Ps 8:5-7).
Just as God provided a wife for Adam in the garden and gave man all the land for his enjoyment, so the king gave a wife to Joseph and put him over all the land (v. 45).1

"The picture of Joseph, then, looks back to Adam; but more, it looks forward to one who was yet to come. It anticipates the coming of the one from the house of Judah to whom the kingdom belongs (cf. 49:10). Thus in the final shape of the narrative, the tension between the house of Joseph and the house of Judah, which lies within many of these texts, is resolved by making the life of Joseph into a picture of the one who is to reign from the house of Judah."2

Note some comparisons between Joseph and Daniel. Like Joseph, Daniel was a Hebrew slave summoned before a Gentile king to interpret a dream. Like Joseph, Daniel interpreted the king's dreams that the other wise men in the king's court could not decipher. Like Joseph, Daniel enjoyed promotion from the status of slave to high government official, as a reward for rendering faithful service.3

"Joseph was the first example of the successful Jewish statesman and businessman. From Babylon of the post-exilic centuries, on through all history, they have been legion."4

This chapter teaches us that God controls the fortunes of nations to protect and provide for His covenant people.

7. **Joseph's brothers' first journey into Egypt ch. 42**

In this chapter, Joseph awakened his brothers' guilty consciences, for the things they had done to him and their father, when, after the brothers had come to Egypt for food, he put them in prison as spies. By keeping Simeon

---
1 Sailhamer, "Genesis," p. 242.
2 Ibid. See also idem, *The Pentateuch...*, p. 215.
4 Blaiklock, p. 53.
hostage while allowing the others to bring Benjamin back, Joseph pricked their consciences even more.

Joseph treated his brothers the way he did in order to discover how they felt toward Jacob, and especially his younger brother Benjamin, who had taken Joseph's place as Jacob's favorite son. He also did so to see if they had genuinely repented of their sin against himself. He apparently did not act out of revenge, and he was not spiteful. Joseph simply wanted to uncover his brothers' hearts.

"Joseph's tests of his brothers were important in God's plan to channel his blessing through the seed of Abraham. God had planned to bring the family to Egypt so that it might grow into a great nation [15:13]. But because the people who would form that nation had to be faithful, the brothers needed to be tested before they could share in the blessing. Joseph's prodding had to be subtle; the brothers had to perceive that God was moving against them so that they would acknowledge their crime against Joseph and demonstrate that they had changed. If they failed the test, God could have started over with Joseph, just as he had said he would with Moses in Exodus 32:10, when his wrath was kindled against Israel."¹

42:1-7 "Doubtless there has been but little change in all these matters [of men and donkeys going for grain, v. 3] from that time to this, and the resemblance is often still more exact from the fact that when the crops of this country [Canaan] fail through drouth [drought] or other causes, the people still go down to Egypt to buy corn, as they did in the time of the patriarch. It has also frequently occurred to me, when passing a large company of donkeys on their way to buy food, that we are not to suppose that only the eleven donkeys on which the brethren of Joseph rode composed the whole caravan. One man often leads or drives half a dozen; and, besides, I apprehend that Jacob's sons had many servants along with them. Eleven sacks of grain, such as

¹Ross, Creation and ..., p. 647.
donkeys would carry, would not sustain a household like his for a week."¹

Twenty-one years after his brothers sold Joseph into slavery, they "bowed down to him with their faces to the ground," in fulfillment of his youthful dreams (v. 6; cf. 37:7).

Would it not have been more loving of Joseph to have revealed himself to his brothers immediately, without putting them through the agony that followed?

"True reconciliation, however, requires sincere repentance and humble confession of sin, and often it takes time for a person to get to that place."²

Joseph was really being more loving toward his brothers, by treating them as he did, than he would have been by revealing himself to them immediately—as will become clear. Furthermore, God was at work through Joseph dealing with their sins.

Ronald Hyman analyzed Joseph's skillful use of questions to uncover his brothers' attitudes and intentions, as well as the key role that questions played in the whole Joseph narrative. There are 30 to 40 of them.³

"The time was when Joseph's brethren were men of high respectability in the land of Canaan [because of their wealth, at least], whilst Joseph himself was a slave or a prisoner in the land of Egypt. Now, by a signal reverse, Joseph was governor over all the land of Egypt, while they appeared before him as humble suppliants, almost craving as an alms those supplies of food for which

---

²Wiersbe, p. 151.
they were both able and willing to pay the price demanded."¹

"The double identification of Joseph as hassallit [administrator] and hammmasbir [dispenser] recall Joseph's two earlier dreams, the one in which the sun, moon, and eleven stars bowed before him (his position of authority), and the other in which the brothers' sheaves bowed before his sheaf (his position of provider)."²

People who sell their brothers into slavery are not trustworthy. Therefore Joseph retained power over his brothers until he could trust them.

The chiastic structure of verses 7-24 focuses attention on the brothers' imprisonment:

"A  Joseph knew his brothers and remembered (7-9a).

B  Joseph accused them of being spies, but they explained their situation (9b-13).

C  Joseph set out a test whereby they could prove they were honest men (14-16).

D  Joseph put them in prison (17).

C'  Joseph set out a new test for the brothers to prove they were honest (18-20).

B'  The brothers confessed their guilt concerning their brother, and Reuben accused them of their fault (21-22).

A'  Joseph understood and wept (23-24)."³

42:8-17  Joseph remembered his dreams (v. 9), and the proof of God's faithfulness undoubtedly encouraged his confidence as he

¹Bush, 2:298.
³Ross, *Creation and ...*, p. 649.
proceeded to deal with his brothers. He played the role of a prosecutor before them, charging them with a crime ("you are spies," v. 9) punishable with death in Egypt. Such a serious accusation encouraged his brothers to be as honest as possible, which is what Joseph wanted.

A family will rarely risk almost all of its sons in a dangerous spying mission, which probably explains the brothers' statement that they were all sons of one man (v. 11).

Probably Joseph wanted to be sure that his brothers had not killed Benjamin, remembering that they had contemplated, and even worse plotted, killing himself (v. 15).

The three-day imprisonment provided Joseph with time to plan his strategy, and it impressed the brothers with the importance of cooperating with Joseph (v. 17). These three days also gave the brothers a taste of what Joseph had endured for three years. Joseph may have intended that they serve one day's imprisonment for each year he had suffered incarceration because of their hatred.

"A vindictive Joseph could have dismayed his brothers with worthless sackloads, or tantalized them at his feast as they had tantalized him (37:24, 25); his enigmatic gifts were a kinder and more searching test. Just how well-judged was his policy can be seen in the growth of quite new attitudes in the brothers, as the alternating sun and frost broke them open to God."\(^1\)

42:18-24 Joseph's profession of faith in God (Elohim; "I fear God," v. 18) told his brothers that he realized he was under divine authority, and therefore he would be fair with them. His test guaranteed Benjamin's safe passage to Egypt, something that Joseph had every reason to worry about, in view of his brothers' treatment of himself. Earlier, when he saw only 10 brothers—and not Benjamin—he probably wondered if the 10 had already done away with Benjamin.

---

The brothers saw divine retribution in what had happened to them and admitted their guilt ("Truly we are guilty concerning our brother," v. 21). This is the first acknowledgement of guilt recorded in Genesis (cf. 44:16).¹

The brothers confessed their guilt—in dealing with Joseph as they had done—in his hearing, not knowing, however, that Joseph understood what they said (v. 23). However, Joseph wanted to assure himself that they had also borne the fruits of genuine repentance (i.e., taken a different course of action with Benjamin and Jacob). Therefore, he did not reveal himself to them at this time ("he turned away from them," v. 24). Joseph's heart had not become hard toward his brothers because of their treatment of him. He did not hate them ("he returned to them and spoke to them," v. 24).

"There is nothing more striking in the character of Joseph than the utter absence of revengeful feeling, whether it was against his brothers, or against Potiphar, or against the chief butler."²

Rather, Joseph's heart remained tender, and his brothers' confession moved him (he "wept," v. 24). Reuben, as the eldest and most responsible son, would have been the logical choice to retain as a hostage. Yet because Joseph had overheard that Reuben had talked his brothers out of killing him (v. 22), Joseph passed him over and selected Simeon,"who was the next oldest. Perhaps Joseph also remembered Simeon's cruelty and callousness toward his father (34:25; cf. 49:5-7). According to Jewish tradition, Simeon was the most cruel of all the brothers.³

Joseph restored his brothers' money to them out of the goodness of his heart. His gracious act would satisfy their needs on their return trip, but it would also cause them to search their souls further as they contemplated the implications of their good fortune. When the brothers first

¹See Leupold, 2:1053.
²Thomas, Genesis, p. 407.
³Yates, p. 41.
discovered the money in one of their sacks, they regarded what God was doing to them as divine punishment ("What is this that God has done to us?" v. 28). This is the first time in the story that the brothers mentioned God. Their aroused consciences saw God at work behind what they were experiencing (cf. vv. 21-22).

"'Silver, money' (keseph) is mentioned twenty times (42:25—45:22). In the first scene of Act 1 [37:2-36], the brothers put a total of twenty pieces of silver before a brother (37:28). Now they put their brother over a fortune in silver. As might be expected in an act about family reconciliation [42:1—46:27], other key words are 'brother' (ca. 50x) and 'father' (ca. 40x)."

Each time Jacob's sons had left home, they returned with more money—but minus a brother (chs. 37, 42). Did Jacob think they had sold Simeon?

"Joseph's brothers soften the news considerably, making it sound like Simeon was a guest of Joseph (Leave one of your brothers with me) instead of being bound in prison. They do not mention the threat of death and do not at this time speak of the money in the one sack."

The money in the sacks widened the breach between Jacob and his sons, but drew the brothers closer together. Jacob despaired, not only because he distrusted his sons and the Egyptian ruler, but because he had forgotten the promises of God. He therefore concluded that, "... all these things are against me" (v. 36). In reality, God was causing all those things to work together for good for Jacob (cf. 45:5-7; Rom. 8:28). He would soon realize God's blessing.

---

1 Waltke, *Genesis*, pp. 541-42.
3 *The NET2 Bible* note on 42:34.
"A great portion of our present trouble arises from our not knowing the whole truth."\(^1\)

"Few things are more difficult or troubling to see than a bitter old person—wrapped in a blanket of anger, spewing forth profanity, poring over albums of wrongs done, and feeding on the dregs of would-be memories."\(^2\)

Reuben's offer of his two sons seems pathetically weak (v. 37). He claimed willingness to suffer in Jacob's place. But would he really turn over his own sons before his brother? And how would killing Reuben's sons console Jacob? It is no wonder that Jacob declined Reuben's offer (v. 38).

"This was a thoughtless and unwarrantable condition—one that he [Reuben] never seriously expected his father would accept. It was designed only to give assurance of the greatest care being taken of Benjamin."\(^3\)

Throughout this chapter, we can observe the attitude of Joseph's brothers changing. Faced with a personal crisis, they acknowledged their guilt. They regarded their suffering as righteous divine punishment, and they began to place Jacob's interests above their own. However, their repentance was not yet complete. The process of contrition had to run further before reconciliation was possible.\(^4\)

"The motives and actions of Joseph and his family members are not patterns to be copied or avoided. The author's goal is to show that God's designs for Israel's fathers are working toward the end of redeeming the household of faith."\(^5\)

---

\(^1\)Bush, 2:309.
\(^2\)Swindoll, Joseph, p. 206.
\(^3\)Jamieson, et al., p. 48.
\(^4\)See Waltke, Genesis, p. 550, for further development of the "severe mercies" God used to heal Jacob's fractured family.
\(^5\)Mathews, Genesis 11:27—50:26, p. 768.
When believers have unresolved guilt in their hearts, God often convicts their consciences to discover if they are spiritually sensitive enough to participate in His program.

"St. Anne of Austria, a sixteenth-century saint, once wrote, 'God does not pay at the end of every day, but at the end, He pays.'"¹

8. **Joseph's brothers' second journey into Egypt ch. 43**

Chapters 43—45 are a unit describing what happened when Joseph's brothers returned to Egypt. Like chapter 42, which this section echoes, it consists of seven scenes arranged palistrophically, with the central scene being the arrest of Joseph's brothers (44:1-13).

A  Jacob sends his sons to Egypt (43:1-14).

B  Arrival in Egypt; the steward and the brothers (43:15-25)

C  Lunch with Joseph (43:26-34)

D  The brothers arrested (44:1-13)

C'  Joseph's self-disclosure (44:14—45:15)

B'  Departure from Egypt; Pharaoh and the brothers (45:16-24)

A'  Jacob receives his sons' report (45:25-28).²

Upon returning to Canaan, the brothers had to persuade Jacob to let Benjamin accompany them on their next trip to Egypt, which they did, but with considerable difficulty. When they went back to Egypt and tried to return the money they had found in their sacks, Joseph received them graciously and dealt with them peacefully. He also showered Benjamin with lavish favoritism to test his brothers for jealousy.

43:1-15  Judah evidently took the lead and spoke for his brothers because Jacob had already refused Reuben (42:37-38), Simeon was in Egypt, and Levi had previously forfeited his

father's confidence (ch. 34). As Reuben had done (42:37), Judah offered to be accountable to Jacob, but in contrast to Reuben, Judah took personal responsibility for Benjamin's safety (v. 9; cf. John 15:13). From this point on, Judah becomes the leader of Jacob's sons (cf. 49:8-10; Matt. 1:2, 17; Luke 3:23, 33).

Facing a crisis like his meeting with Esau (chs. 32—33), Jacob again prepared a lavish present to appease "the man" (v. 14), Joseph (cf. Prov. 18:16). However, Moses called Jacob "Israel" here (v. 11), which may indicate that Jacob was not relying on the flesh here.

"Jacob has no guarantee El Shaddai will do anything. His if I am to be bereaved, bereaved I shall be is the same construction as Esther's 'if I perish, I perish' (Est. 4:16) "¹

Rebekah also had complained when she thought she might lose both Jacob and Esau (27:45).

"The 'and Benjamin' [v. 15] hangs like the resigned sigh of a father trapped between the need to live and the possibility of a life made utterly empty through another loss."²

Joseph's brothers felt very vulnerable, being invited to Joseph's house for dinner. They feared Joseph, since the money in their sacks suggested that they were guilty of theft. So they appealed to Joseph's steward as their mediator. He assured them of Joseph's good will toward them. This incident illustrates how guilty sinners crave a mediator who will defend them before a just God, and how Jesus acts as an advocate for them before the Father.

A better translation of, "Your money was in my possession" (v. 23), is, "Your money had come to me." In modern parlance:

²W. L. Humphreys, Joseph and His Family: A Literary Study, p. 45.
"Don't worry; the money was returned to me." Evidently Joseph had covered the loss by paying for his brothers' food himself.

43:26-34 Again the brothers fulfilled God's prophecy in Joseph's dreams by bowing before Joseph (vv. 26, 28; cf. 37:5-9). Benjamin was about 16 years younger than Joseph, so he would have been about 23 at this time (v. 29).\(^1\) Joseph was 39 (41:46; 45:6).

"... according to the prevailing custom of the East, the very fact that they had been invited to Joseph's table was in itself an encouraging circumstance. Though the Orientals are for the most part a revengeful people, yet if you eat with them, you are thenceforward sure of having their protection. Even should you have done them the greatest injury, yet you need be under no apprehension from their resentment."\(^2\)

The caste system in Egypt required that Joseph, as a member of the upper class, eat at a table separate from his Egyptian companions. The Hebrews sat at a third table, since they were foreigners (v. 32). The Hebrews and other foreigners ate animals that the Egyptians regarded as sacred.\(^3\) The Egyptians also followed strict rules for the ceremonial cleansing of their food before they ate it. This made the Hebrews "an abomination" (v. 32) to the Egyptians.\(^4\) The Egyptians also shaved off all their body hair (cf. 41:14), so the hairiness of the Hebrews may have been another reason for the Egyptians' distaste.\(^5\) This segregation later allowed the Israelites to develop into a numerous, distinct nation within the borders of Egypt (cf. 46:34).

\(^{1}\)Keil and Delitzsch, 1:361; Merrill, Kingdom of …, p. 31.
\(^{2}\)Bush, 2:316.
\(^{3}\)Cf. Herodotus, The Histories, 2:18, 41.
\(^{4}\)See also the note on 46:34.
\(^{5}\)The Nelson …, pp. 79, 84.
Joseph now hosted a meal for his brothers, who, years before, had callously sat down to eat while he languished in a pit.\(^1\) Joseph gave the highest honor to Benjamin as his distinguished guest, by giving him larger and better servings of food than the other brothers received ("five times as much," v. 34). Special honorees frequently received double portions, but a fivefold portion was the sign of highest privilege. With this favor, Joseph sought not only to honor Benjamin, but also to test his other brothers' feelings toward Benjamin. He wanted to see if they would hate Benjamin as they had hated him, his father's former favorite. Evidently they passed this test.

"Coming forth from this crucible, the formerly callous brothers emerge a bonded family, shining with integrity and love toward one another"\(^2\)

"Those who would participate in God's program must be willing to take responsibility for their actions, make restitution when they are culpable, and accept their lot gratefully and without jealousy."\(^3\)

9. **Joseph's last test and its results ch. 44**

Joseph next tested his brothers' loyalty to Benjamin, by framing Benjamin and charging him with stealing Joseph's cup. These events prompted the brothers to acknowledge that God was punishing them for their treatment of Joseph many years earlier. Judah's plea for Benjamin voiced the genuineness of the brothers' loyalty to Benjamin. It contrasts with their former disloyalty to Joseph.

Joseph wanted to discover if his brothers would sell Benjamin as a slave, as they had sold him, and possibly kill Jacob with sorrow. Their only reasonable alternative was to submit to slavery for Benjamin's sake. This discovery seems to have been the object of Joseph's actions, as Moses related them in this chapter. As God had tested the genuineness of Abraham's faith (22:1), so Joseph tested the genuineness of his brothers' repentance.

---

\(^1\)Sarna, *Understanding Genesis*, p. 302.
\(^3\)Ross, *Creation and ...,* p. 662.
44:1-5   That Joseph actually practiced "divination" (a black art of the dark demonic world, that was later outlawed by God, in Deuteronomy 18:10) is not clear from either verse 5 or verse 15. He may have, but this seems inconsistent with his character as a man of faith in Yahweh. It also seems unlikely since Joseph had the gift of interpreting dreams (divine revelations) from God. He was a prophet who could reveal the future. If anyone needed to resort to divination, in this case hydromancy (discerning the future from liquids), it would not have been Joseph.

Some interpreters, however, believe Joseph's claim was just part of his ruse. The first statement, made by Joseph's servant, may have been a lie (v. 5). The second statement, made by Joseph, did not claim to actually "practice divination" (v. 15). Joseph said that such a person as he could do it. Leon Wood believed that Joseph meant that he had information not available to ordinary people.

The Hebrew verb in both verses 5 and 15 is nahash ("to whisper," "mumble formulations," "prophesy"), not qasam, the word normally translated "to divine." These references to divination seem intended to impress Joseph's brothers with the value of the cup that had disappeared. The Hebrew word translated "cup" here, gabia', refers to an extremely valuable and special chalice or goblet, not to a common drinking cup, a kos. The brothers inferred, rightly or wrongly, that Joseph used it to give him extraordinary insight.

44:6-13   The brothers' promise ("With whomever of your servants it [the cup] is found, he shall die, and we also shall be my lord's slaves," v. 9) was not only rash but foolish, since the contents of their sacks had surprised them previously. Years earlier, Laban had searched through Jacob's possessions for his teraphim—that remained hidden in Rachel's tent. Jacob had then rashly pronounced a death sentence—which would

2E.g., Waltke, Genesis, p. 559; and Mathews, Genesis 11:27—50:26, p. 799.
4Ibid., p. 32.
presumably have been carried out on Rachel, who was hiding the idols—on the guilty person (cf. 31:23, 25, 32-33, 35). Now the Egyptians searched for Joseph's cup of divination and found it, ironically—in Benjamin's sack—Rachel's son's sack!

Joseph's steward did not hold the brothers to their promise to become slaves, but simply stated that the supposed guilty person would become a slave (v. 10). Joseph had set his brothers up with a perfect excuse to abandon Benjamin—and free themselves from slavery!

There is plenty of evidence in the text that Joseph's brothers had truly repented and changed their attitudes. They were no longer greedy, jealous, or disloyal. This put them in a position to enjoy the blessings of their "sovereign" (Joseph), and to become channels of blessing to others. Their "sovereign" (lord) was Joseph, on the human level, but Joseph was also God's representative, serving their Sovereign in heaven: God. Note how the brothers acted together now, rather than fighting among themselves, as they had done previously.

Tearing one's clothing was a sign of great personal distress in the ancient Near East (v. 13; cf. 37:29). Here it expressed the brothers' sincere agony, first, at the prospect of having to turn Benjamin over to the Egyptians, and second, having to return to Jacob only to break his heart. They tore their clothes in anguish, as Jacob had done when he received news of Joseph's apparent death (37:34). The brothers did not suspect that they were the victims of deception, any more than Jacob did when his sons gave him Joseph's bloody coat.¹

"That all the brothers suffered such distress is a telling sign of the new sense of unity they had developed. They had already been informed that the innocent will be released (v. 10). Moreover, that they all return to Egypt underscores their commitment to Benjamin. The brothers are of one accord without any grumbling or dissent. They were guilty [previously] but did not show remorse;

¹Hamilton, The Book … Chapters 18—50, p. 564.
now they are innocent and demonstrate deepest agony."¹

44:14-17 Judah acted as the spokesman, because he had promised Jacob that he would take responsibility for Benjamin's safety (v. 16; cf. 43:8-9). Judah regarded this turn of events as divine condemnation for the brothers' treatment of Joseph and Jacob years earlier ("God has found out the guilt of your servants," v. 16).² Actually it was divine discipline that God designed in order to produce repentance. Later in Israel's history, as recorded in the Book of Judges, God again used discipline to produce repentance in the Israelites. Judah did not try to get rid of the privileged son this time, as he had done previously with Joseph. Instead, he volunteered to share Benjamin's fate—at great personal sacrifice.

Joseph allowed Judah and the other brothers to depart and return home, but without Benjamin (v. 17). However, Judah's refusal to do so demonstrated the sincerity of the brothers' repentance.

44:18-34 Judah explained the whole story. He did not try to hide or excuse the brothers' guilt. This is the longest speech in Genesis. Key words are "servant" (10 times), "my lord" (7 times), and "father" (13 times).

"This is one of the manliest, most straightforward speeches ever delivered by any man. For depth of feeling and sincerity of purpose it stands unexcelled. What makes it most remarkable, however, is the fact that it comes from the lips of one who once upon a time was so calloused that he cared nothing about the grief he had caused his father."³

¹Mathews, Genesis 11:27—50:26, p. 800.
³Leupold, 2:1086.
"No orator ever pronounced a more moving oration."¹

"Sir Walter Scott called this plea 'the most complete pattern of genuine natural eloquence extant in any language.'"²

"I would give very much to be able to pray before our Lord God as well as Judah prays here before Joseph. For this is a perfect pattern of prayer, yes, of the true feeling which should be in a prayer."³

Jacob had not changed completely, in that he still doted on his youngest son.

"There are Christians today who reveal a very wonderful faith in God at the time when death comes to a loved one. Others actually collapse when this happens. I don't care how much you love a member of your family, friend, if you both are children of God, you know you are going to see each other again someday. The one walking by faith is not going to collapse at a time like that. Therefore, we can recognize that Jacob has not yet arrived. Although he is growing in grace, he still does not have a complete trust in God."⁴

The brothers had changed; they now truly loved their father and Benjamin. Note Judah's appeal to Jacob's old age and Benjamin's youth (v. 20), descriptions designed to stress each one's vulnerability and so elicit Joseph's pity. Judah manifested concern for Jacob as well as Benjamin (v. 31). Rather than hating their father for favoring Joseph and then Benjamin, the brothers were now striving for Jacob's welfare. The supreme proof of Judah's repentance, and the moral high point of his career, was his willingness to trade places with Benjamin and remain in Egypt as a slave (v. 33; cf. John

¹Bush, 2:329.
²Yates, p. 42.
³Martin Luther, Luther's Works, 7:368.
⁴McGee, 1:178.
15:13). This is the first instance of altruistic human substitution in Scripture (cf. 19:8; 22:13).

"A spiritual metamorphosis for the better has certainly taken place in Judah. He who once callously engineered the selling of Joseph to strangers out of envy and anger is now willing to become Joseph's slave so that the rest of his brothers, and especially Benjamin, may be freed and allowed to return to Canaan to rejoin their father."¹

"Jacob will crown Judah with kingship [49:10] because he demonstrates that he has become fit to rule according to God's ideal of kingship that the king serves the people, not vice versa. Judah is transformed from one who sells his brother as a slave to one who is willing to be the slave for his brother. With that offer he exemplifies Israel's ideal kingship."²

"Judah’s faithful adherence to Benjamin, now in his distress, was recompensed long after by the constant adherence of the tribe of Benjamin to the tribe of Judah, when all the other ten tribes deserted it. ... How fitly does the apostle, when he is discoursing of the mediation of Christ, observe, that our Lord sprang out of Judah (Heb. vii. 14); for, like his father Judah, he not only made intercession for the transgressors, but he became a surety for them."³

We should learn from this chapter that God teaches His people to be loyal to one another, by convicting them of previous disloyalty, in order to get them to love one another unselfishly. Such self-sacrificing love is essential for the leaders of God's people.

---

¹Hamilton, The Book ... Chapters 18—50, p. 570.
²Waltke, Genesis, p. 567.
³Matthew Henry, p. 64.
10. Joseph's reconciliation with his brothers 45:1-15

Joseph emotionally revealed his identity to his brothers, when he could no longer hold back his feelings. Joseph assured his brothers of God's sovereign control of his life, and then directed them to bring Jacob to Egypt. He then warmly demonstrated his love for his brothers. This chapter contains one of the most dramatic recognition scenes in all literature.

Judah so impressed Joseph with the sincerity of his repentance, and the tenderness of his affection, that Joseph broke down completely. He wept tears of joy uncontrollably (v. 2; cf. 2 Sam. 13:9).

"The simple statement, 'I am Joseph,' must have come like a thunderclap out of a clear sky on these unsuspecting men."¹

Joseph then explained his perspective on his brothers' treatment of him. He had discerned and accepted God's providential control of the events of his life. Four times he stated that God, not his brothers, was behind what had happened (vv. 5, 7, 8, 9).

"This statement is the theological heart of the account of Jacob's line (see 50:19-21; Acts 7:9-10). God directs the maze of human guilt to achieve his good and set purposes (Acts 2:23; 4:28). Such faith establishes the redemptive kingdom of God."²

"It is divine sovereignty that undergirds the optimism of Genesis. 'God sent me to preserve life,' says Joseph."³

"Then, why was Joseph so great? He was great because of his faith in God, which manifested itself in a magnanimous attitude toward others and his magnificent attitude toward difficulties. A strong faith leads to a good attitude."⁴

---

¹Leupold, 2:1091.
²Waltke, Genesis, p. 563.
³Wenham, Genesis 16—50, p. 433.
⁴Swindoll, Joseph, p. 135.
"Happy is the man whose eye is open to see the hand of God in every-day events, for to him life always possesses a wonderful and true joy and glory."¹

Part of God's purpose was to use Joseph to preserve the house of Israel through the famine (v. 7).

"In using terms like *remnant* and *survivors*, Joseph is employing words that elsewhere in the OT are freighted with theological significance. It may well be that in the deliverance of his brothers and his father Joseph perceives that far more is at stake than the mere physical survival of twelve human beings. What really survives is the plan of redemption announced first to his great grandfather."²

Joseph called God "*Ha Elohim*," the powerful God, the God of their fathers (v. 8). Joseph was "a father to Pharaoh," in that he was his adviser, like a father might be an adviser to his son (v. 8).

"The theme of divine providential care is put into words by Joseph himself (45:7-8; 50:20), summing up the whole patriarchal story."³

An appreciation for God's sovereign control produced in Joseph a character marked by graciousness, forgiveness, and acceptance. No one can force a person who trusts in God out of God's will. I have known people who became bitter because they lost a good job, or a close family member, or a prized possession. But these events are all part of God’s sovereign plan to bring blessing to these people, and through them to others. Even having suffered abuse in the past, as Joseph did, is no excuse for holding grudges and being bitter.

Joseph had evidently been planning for his father's family to move down to Egypt—if or when his brothers would prove that their attitude had changed (v. 10). "Goshen" (a Semitic rather than an Egyptian name) was the most fertile part of Egypt (cf. v. 18). It lay in the delta region northeast of the Egyptian capital: Memphis. Joseph made provision for the blessing of his father's family ("I will provide for you") so that they would not be

³Whybray, p. 5.
"impoverished," since there were still five more years of famine to come (v. 11).

Joseph then embraced Benjamin—and all his other brothers—to express his love to them and to confirm his forgiveness of them (vv. 14-15). The writer highlighted the genuine reconciliation between Joseph and his brothers by recording that they "talked with him" (v. 15). Much earlier they could not speak to him because they hated him (37:4). But now, after a threefold expression of Joseph's goodwill toward his siblings (weeping, explaining, and embracing), the shocked and fearful brothers gained the courage to speak. They now recognized Joseph as the same person whom they had so cruelly abused, and who was now able to crush them if he chose to do so.

Outstanding in this section is the way in which Joseph's perception of God's ways made him gracious, forgiving, and accepting—rather than bitter and vindictive. He saw the loving hand of his God behind the cruelty of his brothers. He had accepted all that had come to him as the will of God, and, therefore, he experienced the blessing of God. Reconciliation is possible when there is forgiveness, and forgiveness is possible when there is recognition of God's sovereignty.

"Some have questioned the morality of Yosef's actions, seeing that the aged Yaakov might well have died while the test was progressing, without ever finding out that Yosef had survived. But that is not the point of the story. What it is trying to teach (among other things) is a lesson about crime and repentance. Only by recreating something of the original situation—the brothers are again in control of the life and death of a son of Rachel—can Yosef be sure that they have changed. Once the brothers pass the test, life and covenant can then continue."¹

"Genesis declares that children raised in dysfunctional families are not locked by fate into living dysfunctional lives."²

Though the Bible never identifies Joseph as a type of Christ, many analogies are apparent and significant: Both had unusual births in answer to prayer. Both were special objects of their father's love. Both were set apart from their brethren. Both were sent by their fathers to their brethren. Both

²Wyrtzen, p. 25.
obeyed their fathers. In both cases their brethren ridiculed and hated them without just cause, and sold them for a few pieces of silver (Joseph for 20 and Jesus for 30). Their brethren rejected their superior claims, sought to prevent their exaltation, conspired to kill them, and turned them over to Gentiles. Both disappeared from their brethren for a time (Joseph in Egypt and Jesus in heaven). Both were tempted and overcame their temptations. Both began their saving work at or near the age of 30. Both were unjustly condemned by Gentile rulers (Potiphar and Pilate). Both found favor with Gentile overseers (Joseph's jailer and the centurion at Jesus' crucifixion). Both suffered with two malefactors, one of which received life and the other death. Joseph asked the blessed prisoner to remember him, and Jesus told the blessed thief that He would remember Him. Both became a savior and a blessing to their brethren, to strangers, to the Gentiles, and to the whole world—in spite of their brethren's hatred and rejection. Both received a bride (Asenath and the church). The brethren of both received judgment for their treachery. Both forgave their persecutors. Joseph reconciled with his brethren and exalted them, and so will Christ. Jacob rejoiced over the fact that Joseph, whom he long regarded as dead, was alive, and returned to him. Likewise the Israelites will rejoice and return to Jesus when He finally appears at His Second Coming.¹

11. Israel's move to Egypt 45:16—46:30

Joseph's brothers returned to Jacob with news of Joseph's survival and prosperity. Israel (Jacob) then moved to Egypt in response to Joseph's invitation and God's encouragement. The survival of Jacob's family in Egypt through the famine recalls the survival of Noah's family in the ark through the Flood.

Israel's decision to move to Egypt 45:16-28

Pharaoh's invitation was so exceptionally generous because Pharaoh held Joseph in such high regard. This is another excellent example of true hospitality: giving the best that one has to a starving and needy family. Pharaoh's invitation was only an invitation, not a command. Pharaoh had no authority to command Jacob to move into Egypt. Jacob was free to accept or reject this offer. If Jacob chose to accept it, he would be free to return to Canaan whenever he chose. The fact that Jacob's family later could not

¹See Leupold, 2:951; Baxter, 1:60-62; McGee, 1:150, 160-61, and 168-69.
leave Egypt, after they had settled there, was due to a new Pharaoh's new policies concerning the Israelites as residents of Egypt. It was not due to the action of this Pharaoh (Sesostris III).

"... when Pharaoh restates Joseph's offer and 'twice' gives the brothers the 'good' (vv. 18, 20) of the land of Egypt, it is hard not to see in the purpose of this narrative a conscious allusion to the 'good' (1:31) land given to Adam in Genesis 1. The picture of Joseph is a picture of restoration—not just the restoration of the good fortune of Jacob, but, as a picture, the restoration of the blessing that was promised through the seed of Jacob. This picture is also a blueprint for the hope that lies for the people of Israel at the end of the Pentateuch. They are to go into the land and enjoy it as God's good gift (e.g., Dt 30:5)."

Joseph's admonition to his brothers not to "quarrel" (NASB, ESV, NRSV, NIV, TNIV, NEB), "fall out" (AV), or "argue" (HCSB, CEV) on their journey (v. 24) is a bit unclear. Probably he meant just that: not to become involved in arguing and recriminations over the past (cf. Prov. 29:9). Since Joseph had forgiven them, they should forgive one another (cf. Matt. 18:21-35). However, the usual meaning of the Hebrew word translated "quarrel" is "fear" or "tremble" (e.g., Exod. 15:14). Another English version has rendered this Hebrew word "become troubled" (NKJV). So part of Joseph's meaning may have been that they should not be afraid of robbers as they returned to Canaan, or fearful of returning to Egypt in the future.

"I think it is safe to say that we are to trust one another, but we are never to trust one another's nature."

Jacob had suffered as a victim of his sons' deception and malice. But he had also suffered because of his own failure to cling to the promises that God had given to his forefathers, to himself, and to Joseph in his dreams. Jacob always had difficulty believing without seeing. Nevertheless, when he believed that Joseph was alive and ruling over Egypt, his spirit revived, and he returned to a position of trust in God. For this reason, Moses called him

---

1 Sailhamer, *The Pentateuch...*, p. 223.
3 Swindoll, *Joseph*, p. 156.
"Israel" again in the text (v. 28). Often, in Genesis, a final comment by a chief actor in the drama anticipates the next scene, as here.

"Both Abraham and Jacob figuratively receive their sons back from the dead. Both sons prefigure the death and resurrection of Christ, but Joseph even more so. Both are not only alive but rulers over all (cf. Acts 2:32-34; Phil. 2:6-11). Jacob's response on hearing the incredibly good news prefigures the response of the disciples when the women tell them that Christ is alive, having been raised from the dead. They too greet the news at first with stunned disbelief and finally with unspeakable joy when it is proved with many infallible proofs (cf. Luke 24:9-49; John 21:1-9, 24-25; Acts 1:3). Their faith, like Jacob's, revives them, reorients their lives, and makes them pilgrims venturing from land plagued by famine to the best land imaginable."¹

"A fugitive is fleeing from home; a vagabond has no home; a stranger is away from home; but a pilgrim is heading home."²

"In the central place of every heart there is a recording chamber; so long as it receives messages of beauty, hope, cheer, and courage, so long are you young. When the wires are all down and your heart is covered with the snows of pessimism and the ice of cynicism, then, and then only are you grown old."³

**God's encouragement to move 46:1-7**

The structure of chapters 46 and 47 is also chiastic:⁴

A  God appears to Jacob (46:1-4)

B  Jacob journeys to Egypt (46:5-27)

C  Joseph meets Jacob (46:28-34)

---

¹Waltke, *Genesis*, p. 578.
²Wiersbe, p. 119.
³General Douglas MacArthur, quoted in *Quote Unquote*, p. 15.
Beersheba lay near the southern border of Canaan (v. 1). Jacob and his caravan stopped there to offer sacrifices to Yahweh. Earlier, Abraham had planted a tamarisk tree there, and called on the name of the LORD (21:33). Isaac had built an altar there and called on the LORD, after God had appeared to him (26:24-25). It was perhaps on this very altar that Jacob now presented his sacrifices.

Jacob must have had mixed feelings as he looked forward to seeing Joseph again. At the same time, he realized he was leaving the land promised to his family by God. This move was as momentous for Jacob as Abram's journey had been from Ur (12:1-3), Jacob's flight to Paddan-aram (28:1-22), or his return to Canaan (31:3-54)—all of which God encouraged with visions.

"In addressing God as God of his father he was acknowledging the family calling, and implicitly seeking leave to move out of Canaan. His attitude was very different from that of Abram in 12:10ff."1

---

Jacob was probably aware of the prophecy that Abraham's descendants would experience slavery in a foreign land for 400 years (15:13). Consequently, he must have found it even more difficult to cross into Egypt (vv. 2-4). God revealed Himself to Jacob here (the sixth time) in order to assure him that this move was in harmony with His will for him and his family. This is one of four "Do not be afraid" consolations that God gave in Genesis (v. 3; cf. 15:1; 21:17; 26:24).

God promised to make Jacob's family "a great nation" in Egypt (cf. 12:2; 15:13-14; 17:6, 20; 18:18; 21:13-8). Because of the Egyptians' disdain for Hebrew shepherds, Jacob's family was not in danger of assimilation into Egyptian life—as they had been in danger of being assimilated into Canaanite life. They also received the best land in Egypt. The Israelites' removal to Egypt was a divine discipline, too. Jacob's sons had failed to stay separate from the Canaanites, so God, in keeping with His promise, temporarily removed them from the land He had promised them. Note the parallels with Esau's migration to Seir (cf. 36:2-8 and 46:8—47:27).
God promised to go with Jacob into Egypt (v. 4). Egypt became the womb that God used to form the nation of Israel. Though Jacob was leaving God’s Promised Land, he was not leaving God behind. God further promised to bring Jacob back into the land ("I will also assuredly bring you up again," v. 4). He did this by bringing Jacob’s descendants back, 400 years later, and by bringing Jacob himself back for burial in the land (50:1-21). Moreover, God promised that Jacob would not die until he had seen Joseph (cf. 49:29-33). "Joseph will close your eyes" (v. 4) refers to a custom that Jews still practice. The eldest son or closest relative would gently close the eyes of the deceased.  

"Jacob's decidedly dysfunctional family is on the verge of coming together again in genuine community."

**Israel's household's move to Egypt 46:8-27**

This section contains a list of the individuals in Jacob's family about the time he moved to Egypt. Simeon and Judah had married Canaanite women (vv. 10, 12; cf. 38:2). As in chapter 31, when Jacob left Paddan-aram, this move was also difficult for Jacob. Moses recorded a total of 70 persons (v. 27; cf. Exod. 1:5). The 66 referred to in verse 26 excluded Jacob, Joseph, Ephraim, and Manasseh; or perhaps Er and Onan (v. 12) and Ephraim and Manasseh. This number also excluded the wives of Jacob’s sons (v. 26). Stephen said there were 75, but he must have added Joseph's three grandsons and two great-grandsons (Acts 7:14). These five were born later, as were some or all of Benjamin's 10 sons (v. 21), in all probability. In addition to the 70 males ...

"... according to a view which we frequently meet with in the Old Testament, though strange to our modes of thought, [they] came into Egypt in lumbus patrum [i.e., in the loins of their father]."

"It [verse 8] means: shortly after the children of Israel had come to Egypt there were to be found those seventy fathers

---

1Waltke, Genesis, p. 574.
2Sarna, Understanding Genesis, p. 313.
3Hamilton, The Book ... Chapters 18—50, p. 593.
5Keil and Delitzsch, 1:371.
from whom were derived the seventy clans that were the prevailing clans throughout Israel's early history."\(^1\)

This was the humble beginning of the great nation of Israel.

"It can hardly go without notice that the number of nations in Genesis 10 is also 'seventy.' Just as the 'seventy nations' represent all the descendants of Adam, so now the 'seventy sons' represent all the descendants of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob—the children of Israel. Here in narrative form is a demonstration of the theme in Deuteronomy 32:8 that God apportioned the boundaries of the nations (Ge 10) according to the number of the children of Israel. Thus the writer has gone to great lengths to portray the new nation of Israel as a new humanity and Abraham as a second Adam. The blessing that is to come through Abraham and his seed is a restoration of the original blessing of Adam, a blessing which was lost in the Fall."\(^2\)

"But there must have been a very large company belonging to them, of both men-servants, maid-servants, and children; and, beyond a doubt, these remained, were incorporated with, and multiplied as rapidly as their masters. May we not in this fact find an explanation of the vast multitude to which this company had grown in so short a time?"\(^3\)

**Israel's reunion with Joseph 46:28-30**

This reunion recalls Jacob's former meeting with Esau (32:3). In both situations, after a long period of separation, Jacob sent a party ahead to meet his relative.

"The land of Goshen, where the Hebrews lived, adjoined Avaris—now known to have been sited at Tell el-Dab'a (not at Tanis, as so many textbooks wrongly aver)."\(^4\)

---

\(^1\) Leupold, 2:1115.
\(^3\) Thomson, 2:409.
\(^4\) Kitchen, *The Bible* ..., p. 76.
The opinion expressed in the quotation above rests on belief in a late date for the Exodus in the thirteenth century B.C., however, and may not be correct.

Jacob had said that the loss of his sons would bring him to his grave in mourning (37:35; 42:38). Joseph's "resurrection" had enabled his father to die in peace. Similarly, the resurrection of a "Greater Joseph" (Jesus) has allowed many to face death with courage and hope (cf. Phil. 1:21-26; 1 Pet. 1:3).

Joseph encouraged his family to be completely honest with Pharaoh (v. 34). Dishonesty had long plagued Jacob's family, but now Joseph led them out of this destructive behavior.

Believers should respond to divine providence, by making their decisions in response to the initiative of His wise leaders. They should do so with confidence in His promises, dependent on His continuing guidance and provision. Providence is God's guidance and care that He exercises through circumstances.


As a result of Joseph presenting his family members to Pharaoh, they received the best of Egypt's land. Jacob blessed Pharaoh in return for his goodness. In the years that followed, Joseph bought almost all of Egypt for Pharaoh, saved the Egyptians' lives, and furthered Israel's prosperity and blessing. Through Joseph, all the nations surrounding Egypt also received blessing (cf. 12:3).

God's provision of land and food for Israel 46:31—47:12

A major purpose of this section is to show how God sustained and blessed Jacob's family in Egypt during the remaining five years of the famine (cf. vv. 12-13). Another is to demonstrate how He partially fulfilled His promises to the patriarchs: to make them a blessing to the whole world (47:15-25), as well as fruitful and numerous (47:27).

46:31-34 Egyptians loathed shepherds, because agriculture was the basis of Egyptian society, and the Nile River and its delta, where Goshen was, sustained agricultural life (v. 34). The Egyptian farmers organized their fields carefully, and
controlled them relatively easily and neatly, but without large herds of livestock. The comparative difficulty of controlling large herds of sheep, goats, and cows led the Egyptians to think of those who cared for these animals as crude and barbaric.\(^1\) Probably, too, the more "civilized" Egyptians distrusted any nomadic peoples.\(^2\) This resulted in the Israelites living in separate territory from the Egyptians, where they increased in numbers, and developed a distinct national identity and vocation, as God had promised.

"Rameses III is said to have employed 3,264 men, mostly foreigners, to take care of his herds."\(^3\)

47:1-12 Jacob's blessing of Pharaoh (vv. 7, 10) is unusual, since it implies that, in one sense (i.e., as one of God's elect), Jacob was superior to Pharaoh. "... the lesser person is blessed by the greater" (Heb. 7:7). Pharaoh was a man of immense worldly power and influence. Jacob became a blessing to a Gentile world ruler, and so fulfilled God's promise of becoming a blessing, partially. This event also foreshadowed the future, complete fulfillment of Israel's worldwide blessing of the nations.

"The least and most faltering of God's children has the superiority in the presence of the most elevated men of the world."\(^4\)

Jacob in this scene described his life as "my living abroad" (v. 9), primarily because he had not come into final possession of the Promised Land. He had, of course, also lived in widely separated places during his lifetime: Paddan-aram, Canaan, and now Egypt. His years were fewer than his fathers: 130 compared with Abraham's 175, and Isaac's 180. This comparison, plus Jacob's statement that "few and unpleasant have been the years of my life," testifies to the fact that

---

\(^1\)See Keil and Delitzsch, 1:374-75, and my note on 43:32.
\(^3\)Ibid., p. 446.
\(^4\)Darby, 1:78.
neither Abraham nor Isaac had experienced the difficulties and
distresses that Jacob had during his lifetime.

"These words [in v. 9] appear to be the author's attempt at a deliberate contrast to the later promise that one who honors his father and mother should 'live long and do well upon the land' (Dt 5:15 [sic 16]). Jacob, who deceived his father and thereby gained the blessing, must not only die outside the Promised Land but also, we learn here, his years were few and difficult. From his own words, then, we can see a final recompense for Jacob's actions earlier in the book."\(^1\)

"When we first encountered Jacob he was struggling inside his mother's womb with his twin brother. As we come to the end of Jacob's life, he is struggling for his life in a famine-devastated Canaan. In between these first and last moments of struggle have been many trying experiences for Jacob. His life has had more sorrow than joy."\(^2\)

"To watch Jacob is to see a man who alternated between faith and fear."\(^3\)

"Frankly, my feeling is that Jacob has arrived. What an opportunity he has to boast, but he doesn't take advantage of it. Someone else might have thought, Pharaoh is a great ruler, but I want him to know that I was a pretty big man up yonder in the land of Canaan! But Jacob doesn't brag—he is just a sinner, saved by the grace of God."\(^4\)

The text describes the area where Jacob's family settled as "the land of Rameses" here, rather than Goshen (v. 11). The

---

\(^2\)Hamilton, *The Book... Chapters 18—50*, p. 612.
\(^3\)Morgan, *An Exposition...*, p. 32.
\(^4\)McGee, 1:185.
land of Rameses could have been another name for Goshen, or a larger area encompassing Goshen, or a district within Goshen.

The use of the name "Rameses" here and elsewhere (Exod. 1:11; 12:37; Num. 33:3, 5) has become a kind of "red herring" for many interpreters. It has led them to conclude that these events occurred after one of the Pharaohs named Rameses lived. Rameses I reigned about 1347-1320 B.C. However, the biblical chronological references (1 Kings 6:1; Exod. 12:40; et al.) point to a date for Israel's move to Egypt near 1876 B.C. How can we account for the use of the name Rameses here then?

It is possible that the name "Rameses" (also spelled "Raamses" and "Raameses") was in use when Jacob entered Egypt, even though extra-biblical references have not confirmed this.1 "Raamses" simply means "Ra [the sun god] has created it."2 A second possibility is that Rameses may have been the name of this district later, in Moses' day, when he wrote Genesis. Moses might have used the more modern name when writing Genesis, rather than an older one that was in use in Jacob's day. A third possibility is that Rameses was the district name even later in history (e.g., after Pharaoh Rameses). A later scribe may have substituted "Rameses" for an older name that was in use when Moses wrote or when Jacob entered Egypt.3

"How different is Jacob's descent to Egypt from his grandfather's (ch. 12)! Both seek out the safety of Egypt because of famine. To save himself Abraham engages in deceit. To save his family Jacob engages in blessing. The Pharaoh at Abraham's visit was only too happy to see Abraham return to his own country. The Pharaoh at Jacob's visit insists that Jacob stay and settle on some choice land. Abraham retreats from Egypt. For Jacob Egypt is his new home. Abraham

---

1Merrill, *Kingdom of ...*, pp. 70-71; Walter C. Kaiser Jr., *A History of Israel*, pp. 74-75.
3See Leupold, 2:1131.
leaves Egypt alive (and happy to be so!). Jacob will leave Egypt dead."\(^1\)

**God's provision of land and food for Pharaoh 47:13-27**

This section demonstrates the fulfillment of Jacob's blessing on Pharaoh (46:31—47:6 and 47:7-10). Joseph was able to save Egypt and its neighbors from a very severe famine, and to alleviate the desperate plight of the Egyptians. Joseph fulfilled God's promises to bless his family through himself (promised in his dreams), and to bless the whole world through Abraham's descendants (12:3). Pharaoh received money from Egypt and Canaan (vv. 13-14), livestock (vv. 15-17), land and slaves (vv. 18-21, 23, 25), and 20 percent of future harvests (vv. 23-26). Such a tax was not out of line with what was common in that day in the ancient Near East. Twenty percent was actually a small tax at that time, since the average was 33 and a third percent.\(^2\) God blessed this Pharaoh because he had blessed the Israelites with the best of Egypt. Later, in Moses' time, God cursed a different Pharaoh, because he dealt harshly with the Israelites.

"This entire situation informs the meaning of Exodus 1:8-11, which states that a new king came to power who did not know Joseph. Consequently—and ironically—that king began to enslave the Israelites to work in his projects. Had he remembered Joseph, he would have realized how loyal and faithful Israel could be in their sojourn in the land. Because this Pharaoh treated Israel well, they flourished, and he became powerful and wealthy; but because that new king treated Israel harshly, he would have none of the blessing of God, nor would he be able to hinder the prosperity of the people of God. From the beginning to the end of the Egyptian sojourn, prosperity and growth came from God's blessing. Those who acknowledged it shared in it."\(^3\)

---

\(^1\)Hamilton, *The Book ... Chapters 18—50*, p. 613.


\(^3\)Ross, *Creation and ...,* p. 687. Cf. 12:3.
"It was axiomatic in the ancient world that one paid one's way so long as one had anything to part with—including, in the last resort, one's liberty."\textsuperscript{1}

"Both Egyptian and Mesopotamian slavery differentiated generally between formerly free people who became debt slaves and foreigners (usually war captives) who were bought and sold as chattel. Mesopotamian laws and contracts indicate that creditors obtained the service of the debt slave until the debt was covered, but chattel slaves belonged to their owners without much chance of release. Although we cannot know from Genesis, there is reason to believe that the voluntary submission of the people assumes that the enslavement was not permanent (cp. the law established by Joseph, 47:26)."\textsuperscript{2}

"The idea of slavery is not attractive to the modern mind, but in the ancient world it was the primary way of dealing with the poor and destitute. If the people became slaves of Pharaoh, it was Pharaoh's responsibility to feed them and care for them. It was the best way for them to survive the famine."\textsuperscript{3}

This is the first mention of "horses" in the Bible, the primary beast of burden and military machine at that time (v. 17). Egypt was an important source of horses in Solomon's day (cf. 1 Kings 10:28-29).

The reference to the Egyptian's exchanging "flocks" and "herds" for food (v. 17) may seem to contradict the fact that "every shepherd is an abomination to the Egyptians" (46:34). Even though many Egyptian were farmers, there had to have been many Egyptians who kept flocks of sheep and herds of cows. Probably the earlier statement about shepherds is a

\textsuperscript{1}Kidner, p. 211.
\textsuperscript{2}Mathews, Genesis 11:27—50:26, p. 851.
\textsuperscript{3}The NET2 Bible note on 47:19.
reference to the lower caste of Egyptians, whom most Egyptians looked down upon.

47:20-26 Early Greek writers, as well as monument evidence, seem to confirm Joseph's political reforms and redistribution of land in Egypt.¹ In a very real sense, Joseph became a "savior" of the Gentiles ("So they [the Egyptians] said [to Joseph], 'You have saved our lives!'" v. 25)—as well as the Jews.²

"We might also add that the exception made to temple lands (vv. 22, 26) shows that Joseph's action was not a crass land grab without regard for Egyptian tradition and society's welfare."³

47:27 Israel also prospered under Joseph's administration. The Israelites "acquired property in it [Egypt] and were fruitful and became very numerous." The fulfillment of God's promise to increase the seed of the patriarchs was advancing quickly.

This chapter illustrates the fact that a wise leader knows that prosperity comes only from God, so he makes decisions in harmony with what God has revealed about how He has promised to bless.

"Adversity is sometimes hard upon a man, but for one man who can stand prosperity, there are a hundred that will stand adversity."⁴

13. Jacob's worship in Egypt 47:28—48:22

Jacob demonstrated his faith in God's promises by demanding that his sons bury him in the Promised Land. He also showed he had learned that God will bless those He chooses to bless, by his blessing the younger Ephraim over the older Manasseh.

¹See Keil and Delitzsch, 1:379; Cambridge Ancient History, 1:306-310.
²See Frankfort, pp. 36-43.
⁴Thomas Carlyle, quoted in John Bartlett's Familiar Quotations, p. 474.
Jacob's request to be buried in Canaan 47:28-31

Jacob lived his last 17 years in the care of Joseph, who, ironically, had spent the first 17 years of his life in Jacob's care (37:2). As Jacob's death seemed to be approaching, he called for Joseph and made him promise to bury him in the Promised Land ("with my fathers"), rather than in Egypt (cf. 24:2-3). As the father of such an important person as Joseph, Jacob could have had a very fine burial in Egypt. His request demonstrated his preference for the promise of God rather than the acclaim of the world (cf. Moses, Heb. 11:24-25).

As mentioned previously, placing the hand under a person's thigh was part of a ritual connected with making a solemn promise (cf. 24:2-3). Jacob evidently "bowed in worship at the head of the bed" in prayer and thanksgiving to Yahweh for granting his wish to be buried in Canaan. Here is another reference to Jacob bowing in Joseph's presence (cf. 37:9-10). Jacob may have been too weak to bow down on the ground, which was a more common posture in worship (cf. 48:12; 1 Kings 1:47).

"Jacob, in life too often the cunning schemer who trusted his own wiliness to achieve his ends, now in the face of death shows that his ultimate hope is the promise of God."1

"Jacob's desire was that his funeral would be a clear witness that he was not an idol-worshiping Egyptian but a believer in the true and living God. When you stop to think that your funeral and burial are the last public testimonies you will ever give, it makes you want to plan carefully. Making your last will and testament is important, but don't neglect your last witness and testimony."2

Jacob's adoption of Joseph's sons 48:1-11

The events recorded in the last three chapters of Genesis deal with the last days of Jacob and Joseph. In these last chapters, there are many other references to earlier episodes in the book.

"This constant harking back to earlier episodes and promises is totally in place in a book whose theme is the fulfillment of

---

2Wiersbe, p. 164.
promises, a book that regularly uses analogy between episodes as a narrative technique. And at the close of a book it is particularly [sic] appropriate to exploit these cross-linkages to the full. It reinforces the sense of completeness and suggests that the story has reached a natural stopping point."

"It is appropriate that the end of Genesis should draw to a close with repeated references to the thematic word of the book (b-r-k, 'to bless')."  

This very important section explains how Ephraim and Manasseh came to have equal standing with Joseph's brothers, and why Joseph did not become the head of a tribe. Manasseh would have been between 20 and 26 years old at this time (41:50; 47:28). Ephraim, of course, was younger than Manasseh. Thus we have another etiology (an explanation of origins).

It was as "Israel," the "Prince with God," that Jacob performed the official and significant act of blessing and adopting Ephraim and Manasseh as his own sons (vv. 2-4; cf. Heb. 11:21). His action was in harmony with God's will and purpose for the chosen family, and it involved the patriarchal promises to which he referred (cf. 35:10-12).

"Jacob may be losing his health, but he is not losing his memory. He can recall the incident of many years earlier when God appeared to him at Luz [Bethel] (35:9-15). He repeats the promises of God about fertility, multiplication, that his seed will be an assembly of nations, and finally the promise of land. The only essential element of that theophany he does not repeat is the name change from Jacob to Israel. In this way, Jacob minimizes his role and maximizes God's role in that event."

By adopting Joseph's first two sons as his own, and giving them equal standing with Joseph's brothers, Jacob was bestowing on Joseph the double portion of the birthright (v. 5; cf. v. 22; 1 Chron. 5:1-2). He was also, in effect, elevating Joseph to the level of himself. Joseph was the first son of Jacob's intended first wife: Rachel. Jacob's reference to Rachel (v. 7) shows that she, as the mother of Joseph, was in his mind in this act. It

---

1Wenham, Genesis 16—50, p. 461.
3Hamilton, The Book ... Chapters 18—50, p. 628.
honored her. The other sons of Joseph, who were born after Manasseh and Ephraim, received their own inheritances.

"Verse 7 has long puzzled biblical interpreters. Why the mention of Rachel at this point in the narrative, and why the mention of her burial site? If we relate the verse to what precedes, then the mention of Rachel here could be prompted by the fact that just as she had borne Jacob 'two sons' (44:27, Joseph and Benjamin) at a time when he was about to enter (48:7) the land, so also Joseph gave Jacob 'two sons' (v. 5) just at the time when he was about to enter Egypt."1

Jacob's eyes were failing in his old age (v. 10), so he may not have recognized Ephraim and Manasseh (cf. 27:1). However, it seems more likely that by asking "Who are these?" (v. 8), Jacob was identifying the beneficiaries as part of the legal ritual of adoption and/or blessing (cf. 27:18). The eyesight of both Isaac and Jacob failed in their old age.

"There is a slight touch of irony here: Jacob had secured Isaac's blessing by guile and deceit, while Joseph is securing the blessing for his sons by honesty and forthrightness."2

Jacob gave God the credit that he was able to see Joseph's sons ("God has let me see your children as well," v. 11). He had come to acknowledge God's providential working and grace in his life, as he realized how faithful God had been to him in spite of his unfaithfulness.

**Jacob's blessing of Ephraim and Manasseh 48:12-20**

Ephraim and Manasseh had been standing very close to Jacob, between his knees, so that he could see and touch them (v. 12). Ancient Near Eastern adoption rituals included placing the adopted child on the knees of the adopting parent, to symbolize the adopter giving birth to the child in place of the birth mother.3 Now Joseph took his sons back to where he had been standing, a few feet away, in front of his father. He then bowed before Jacob.

---

1Sailhamer, "Genesis," p. 271.
2Davis, *Paradise to ...*, p. 294.
"Joseph may be the second most powerful man in Egypt, but he never loses his respect for his father, and he never ceases to be gracious toward him."\(^1\)

Arranging Manasseh and Ephraim in the normal order for Jacob's blessing, by their age with Manasseh to Jacob's right, Joseph then brought them forward again, within arm's reach of Jacob (v. 13).

This is the first of many scriptural instances of the laying on of hands (v. 14). With this act, a person symbolically transferred a spiritual power or gift to another. This rite was part of the ceremony of dedicating a person or group to an office (Num. 27:18, 23; Deut. 34:9; Matt. 19:13; Acts 6:6; 8:17; etc.), offering sacrifices, and the healings that Jesus Christ and the apostles performed. In this case, Jacob symbolically transferred a blessing from himself to Joseph's sons. Once uttered, blessings were irreversible (cf. 27:33; Num. 23:20; Rom. 11:29).

Jacob's blessing of Ephraim and Manasseh also carried prophetic significance and force (vv. 19-20). Under the inspiration of God, Jacob deliberately gave Ephraim the privileged "firstborn blessing," and predicted his preeminence. This was the fourth consecutive generation of Abraham's descendants in which the normal pattern of the firstborn assuming prominence over the second born was reversed: Isaac over Ishmael, Jacob over Esau, Joseph over Reuben, and Ephraim over Manasseh. We can see this blessing in the process of its fulfillment, during the Judges Period, when the tribe of Ephraim had grown more large and influential than the tribe of Manasseh. The combined tribes of Ephraim and Manasseh increased from 72,700, in the second year after the Exodus (Num. 1:32-35), to 85,200, forty years later (Num. 26:28-37). By contrast, the tribes of Reuben and Simeon decreased from 105,800 to 65,930 during the same period.

The Ephraimites took the lead among the ten northern tribes, after the split between the northern and southern tribes. They flourished to the extent that the Jews later used the names "Ephraim" and "Israel" interchangeably—to describe the northern confederacy. The Ephraimites even occasionally demonstrated an attitude of superiority among the tribes, that we can trace back to this blessing (e.g., Judg. 12:1; et al.).

---

\(^1\)Hamilton, *The Book ... Chapters 18—50*, p. 635.
The Hebrew phrase translated "a multitude of nations" (v. 19) appears only here in the Old Testament, and probably means "a company of peoples," namely, "numerous." The reference to "Israel" in verse 20 applies to the nation in the future—from Jacob's viewpoint.

**Jacob's announcement of Joseph's birthright 48:21-22**

Jacob, called "Israel" here, the Prince with God, firmly believed God's promise to bring his descendants back into the Promised Land (cf. 46:4). Israel's prophetic promise to Joseph (v. 22) is a play on words. The word for "portion" means "ridge" or "shoulder (of land)," and is the same as "Shechem." Shechem lay in Manasseh's tribal territory. The Israelites later distributed the land among the tribes (Josh. 24:1), and buried Joseph at Shechem (Josh. 24:32). Jacob regarded the land that he had purchased there (33:18-20) as a pledge, or down payment, of his descendants' future possession of the whole land. In Jesus' day, people spoke of Shechem (near Sychar) as what Jacob had given to Joseph (John 4:5).

Jacob spoke as though he had taken Shechem from the Amorites by force ("with my sword and my bow"; v. 22). Probably Jacob viewed Simeon's and Levi's slaughter of the Shechemites as his own taking of the city (34:27-29).  

Another view is that Moses used the perfect tense in Hebrew, translated past tense in English ("took"), prophetically. In this usage, which is common in the Old Testament, the writer spoke of the future as past. The idea was that, since God predicted them by divine inspiration, events yet future are so certain of fulfillment that one could speak of them as already past. Here the thought is that Israel (Jacob) would take Canaan from the Amorites, the most powerful of the Canaanite tribes, not personally, but through his posterity (cf. 15:16).  

Other scholars have suggested still another explanation:

"It is not impossible that the property which Jacob owned at Shechem was taken away by the Amorites after he left the region (cf. 35:4, 5) and that he eventually returned and repossessed it by force of arms?"

---

1Waltke, *Genesis*, p. 601.
2Keil and Delitzsch, 1:385.
Apparently Jacob gave Joseph the town of Shechem, which he regarded as a down payment of all that God would give his descendants as they battled the Canaanites in the future.

"For Joseph it was an honour that his father entrusted him with his funeral in Palestine (47.30f.). In 48.21f., the implication in family law is finally drawn: Joseph, instead of Reuben, receives the double heritage as a sign of his primogeniture (48.22a). Just as the son is commanded to bury the father in Palestine, so it is in Palestine that the priority of Joseph within the family takes effect. These two scenes thus enclose a detailed blessing for Joseph and his sons, so filling out the promise of his superiority in Palestine (48.22a).”

Believers whom God has shepherded for a lifetime, like Jacob, can see God’s purposes and plans for the future more clearly than others can, even though the maturing process may have been difficult for them.

14. Jacob’s blessing of his sons 49:1-28

Having blessed Pharaoh (47:7-10) and Ephraim and Manasseh (48:15-20), Jacob next blessed all 12 of his sons and foretold what would become of each of them and their descendants. He disqualified Reuben, Simeon, and Levi from leadership, and gave that blessing to Judah. This chapter is the last one in Genesis that gives the destinies of the family members of Abraham’s chosen line. It contains blessings, curses, warnings, judgments, and promises, all of which are prominent throughout Genesis.

"These chapters [Gen. 11—49], then, take the story from the first mention of Abram in 11:26 to the first mention of Israel as a people, a people blessed by God with a special blessing.”

The writer of Genesis called this section Jacob’s blessing (v. 28). Isaac had prophetically outlined the future of his two sons' families (ch. 27). Earlier, Noah had prophesied the future of Canaan's descendants (9:25-27).

---

3 Whybray, p. 4.
Likewise Jacob, by divine inspiration, foretold major characteristics of each of the twelve tribes that would issue from his twelve sons (v. 1). Each blessing contains at least one of these elements: 1) a synopsis of the son’s personality, 2) a hint as to his potential, and 3) a prophecy of his future.

"Jacob predicted how things would turn out for each of his sons and their descendants, should they continue to display the character they had displayed thus far."¹

This is the first long poem in the Bible.

"This chapter, in that it is poetry, seems to be intended to be a high point of the toledot ya’aqob (i.e., chaps. 37—50), if not the whole book of Genesis."²

This blessing rested on God’s promises to Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. Each son learned how his branch of the family would benefit from, and be a channel of, blessing relative to the patriarchal promises. The natural character of each son, and the consequences of that character, would have their outcome in the future of the Israelites. The choices, and consequently the characters of the patriarchs, affected their descendants for generations to come, as is usually true.

"The Spirit of God revealed to the dying patriarch Israel the future history of his seed, so that he discovered in the character of his sons the future development of the tribes proceeding from them, and with prophetic clearness assigned to each of them its position and importance in the nation into which they were to expand in the promised inheritance."³

"It is fitting that the Book of Genesis, which opened with the creative power of the divine word, closes with the notion of the effective power of the inspired predictive word of the patriarch."⁴

³Keil and Delitzsch, 1:387.
⁴Sarna, Understanding Genesis, p. 331.
Jacob assumed, in his blessing, that his family would increase and possess the land of Canaan. This optimism reveals his faith.

"God gave His people this prophecy to bear them through the dismal barrenness of their experiences and to show them that He planned all the future. For Jacob's family, the future lay beyond the bondage of Egypt in the land of promise. But the enjoyment of the blessings of that hope would depend on the participants' faithfulness. So from the solemnity of his deathbed Jacob evaluated his sons one by one, and carried his evaluation forward to the future tribes."¹

The scope of Jacob's prophecy extends into the Millennial Age. God did not fulfill these prophecies completely during the lifetime of Jacob's sons. Neither did He do so during Israel's occupation of the Promised Land. And He has not done so since then. The final, complete fulfillment awaits the future.

"Jacob's last words to his sons have become the occasion for a final statement of the book's major theme: God's plan to restore the lost blessing [lost in the Fall] through the offspring of Abraham.²

"By framing Jacob's last words between v. 1 and v. 28, the writer shows where his interests lie. Jacob's words look to the future—'in days to come'—and draw on the past, viz., God's blessing of mankind. It is within that context we are to read and understand Jacob's words in this chapter."³

49:1-4  **Reuben.** As the firstborn, Reuben could have anticipated: preeminence among his brothers; leadership of the tribes, priesthood (spiritual leadership) within the nation, and the double portion of the birthright (twice as much blessing). However, he forfeited these privileges, preferring rather to give free reign to his lust (35:22; cf. Esau). The leadership of the tribes therefore went to Judah, the priesthood to Levi, eventually (cf. Exod. 32:25-29; Num. 3:12-13), and the double portion of blessing to Joseph. Joseph was the firstborn

---

¹Ross, "Genesis," p. 98.
²Sailhamer, "Genesis," p. 274.
³Ibid., p. 275.
of the favored Rachel, whereas Reuben was Leah's firstborn. Joseph's priority was not due solely to Jacob's preference, however, but to the will of God as revealed in Joseph's dreams.

"About no other tribe do we know so little as about Reuben... The tribe produced no significant man, no judge, no king, no prophet..."  

No priest came from Reuben, either. Irresolution marked the Reubenites in the time of Israel's judges (Judg. 5:15-16).

"This forfeiture is fulfilled historically in later times when the Reubenites living in Transjordan are integrated into the tribe of Gad. From this first oracle the teaching is clear that the behavior of one individual affects the destiny of his descendants."  

49:5-7 **Simeon and Levi.** These two were brothers not only by blood but also in disposition. They were violent, angry, self-willed men (cf. 34:25-31). Because of their wickedness, they would have no independent tribal territory, but their descendants would live scattered among the other tribes.

By the second census, taken just before the Israelites entered Canaan, the Simeonites had become the smallest tribe (Num. 26). Moses later passed over the Simeonites in his blessing of the Israelites (Deut. 33). This tribe received only a few cities within the allotment of Judah, rather than a separate geographical territory (Josh. 19:1-9). The Simeonites eventually lost their tribal identity and lived among the other tribes, especially in Judah's territory (cf. 1 Chron. 4:27, 38-43).

The Levites received no separate land grant, but Joshua gave them several cities, in which they lived among the other tribes.

---

1 von Rad, p. 423.
3 See Archer, *Encyclopedia of ...,* pp. 103-7, for a harmonization of the blessings in Genesis 49 and Deuteronomy 33.
(Josh. 21:1-42). The Levites, however, received a special blessing at Mt. Sinai, by siding with Moses when the other Israelites turned against Moses (Exod. 32:26-28; Num. 3:5-13; 18:6-32). This resulted in their becoming the tribe of priests in Israel.

Even though these first three tribes suffered punishment for their sins, Jacob's prophecies about them were still a blessing. They retained a place in the chosen family, and they enjoyed the benefits of the patriarchal promises as Jacob's heirs.

"By demoting Reuben for his turbulence and uncontrolled sex drive, Jacob saves Israel from reckless leadership. Likewise, by cursing the cruelty of Simeon and Levi, he restricts their cruel rashness from dominating." 1

49:8-12 Judah. Judah possessed a lion-like nature. As such, he became the leader of the other tribes (43:3-10; Judg. 1:1-2; 3:9; 20:18; etc.). Through him came David, and then came the Messiah: "the Lion of the Tribe of Judah" (Rev. 5:5). Judah led the other tribes, both in the march through the wilderness (Num. 2:1-3) and in the monarchy. Judah's leadership was not consistently preeminent in the history of Israel, however. At times, other tribal leaders led the nation—as in the Judges Period. But with the coming of David, who was from the tribe of Judah, all of the following legitimate kings of Israel were from Judah.

A "scepter" (v. 10) was and is the symbol of royal command, the right to rule. Judah was to exercise leadership among the tribes "until Shiloh [came]," at which time Shiloh would extend Israel's rule to worldwide dominion.

Shiloh (lit. "Bearer of Rest") is a proper name. The name refers, here, not to the city in Canaan of that name, but to a person who would arise in the tribe of Judah—and bring peace to the world—namely: Messiah (cf. 3:15; Num. 24:17). 2 Some English translations simply transliterate the Hebrew word and read

---

1 Waltke, Genesis, p. 603.
2 See Rydelnik, pp. 47-52.
"Shiloh" (NASB, AV, NKJV).\(^1\) Others translate "Shiloh" "until tribute comes to him" (NRSV, ESV, cf. NEB) or "until he comes to whom it [the ruler’s staff] belongs" (NIV, NET2) or "until he to whom it [the ruler's staff] belongs shall come" (TNIV) or "until he whose right it [the ruler's staff] is comes" (HCSB; cf. Ezek. 21:27).\(^2\)

"Whichever of these interpretations is adopted ... all at least agree that this line is predicting the rise of the Davidic monarchy and the establishment of the Israelite empire, if not the coming of a greater David. And if the primary reference is to David, traditional Jewish and Christian exegetes would agree that like other Davidic promises it has a greater fulfillment in the Messiah."\(^3\)

Because Reuben, Simeon, and Levi had disqualified themselves, Judah received the leadership of the tribes and the blessing that normally went to the firstborn. This was how the leadership of the tribes and the messianic line fell to Judah. Jacob evidently forgave Judah’s earlier sins, because he repented and later sacrificed himself for Jacob’s well-being.

Everything after the word "until" (v. 10), in Judah’s blessing, describes millennial kingdom conditions: "And to him ["Shiloh"] shall be the obedience of the peoples." Messiah will then reign over the peoples of the world, and they will obey Him. Neither David nor any other Judahite king reigned over all "the peoples."

"No Judean would tie his ass to a vine [v. 11], for it would be eaten up, of course. Anyone who can be so careless and who can wash his garments in wine, lives in paradisiacal abundance."\(^4\)

---


\(^4\) von Rad, p. 425.
"The sense of the imagery is that wine, the symbol of prosperity and blessing, will be so plentiful that even the choicest vines will be put to such everyday use as tethering the animals of burden and vintage wine will be as commonplace as wash water. Verse 12 returns to the picture of the king of Judah. His eyes are darker than wine and his teeth whiter than milk. He is a picture of strength and power."\(^1\)

This prophecy is the first of many that follow, in the Old Testament, that associate bumper crops with the golden age of future blessing.\(^2\) It is also, of course, a significant messianic prophecy that was fulfilled literally by Jesus Christ.

49:13-21 These verses contain Jacob's shorter blessings on his other sons, except Joseph and Benjamin, whose blessings follow these.

"True to the poetic qualities of the text, the images of the destiny of the remaining sons are, in most cases, based on a wordplay of the son's name. The central theme uniting each image is that of prosperity."\(^3\)

Zebulun (v. 13) later obtained territory between the Mediterranean Sea and the Sea of Galilee. This was a thriving commercial area. It is possible that Zebulun and Issachar shared some territory (cf. Deut. 33:18-19), so Zebulun could have bordered the Sea of Galilee. Perhaps the men of Zebulun worked for the Phoenicians in their maritime trade and prospered as a result (cf. Deut. 33:19).\(^4\) Another explanation follows:

"In the time of Jacob, and at the distance of Egypt, Zidon was the representative of all

---

\(^1\)Sailhamer, "Genesis," p. 277.
\(^3\)Sailhamer, "Genesis," p. 277.
\(^4\)Yates, p. 46.
Phoenicia. She was, in fact, the mother of that people, and was so spoken of by Homer several hundred years after the death of Jacob. Homer does not speak of Achzib, or Acre, or Dor, but only of Zidon, when he has occasion to mention this country. But Phoenicia, or Sidonia if you please, extended south of Acre, and Zebulon [Zebulun] bordered on the sea for a considerable distance along that part of the coast; Jacob therefore spoke according to the received geography of his time, but with prophetic brevity mentioned only the parent city. When, however, Joshua, several hundred years later, came to divide the country between the tribes, it became necessary to specify the subordinate places, and no doubt some of the cities south of Sidon had by that time risen to importance, and might well give name to the coast in their vicinity; at all events, Joshua was obliged to mention them in defining the limits of the tribes. Hence, though Zebulon touched the sea far south of the city of Sidon, yet 'his haven of ships' was actually a part of the general coast of Sidonia when Jacob gave forth his prophecy. Nor is it at all improbable that the territory of Sidon did originally extend southward to where Zebulon had his border at the sea, thus meeting the very letter of the promise."

The territory of Zebulun will extend to the Mediterranean Sea in the Millennium, when its borders will reach as far as Sidon on the Mediterranean coast ("he shall be a harbor for ships," v.13; cf. Ezek. 48:1-8, 23-27). An important caravan route from Mesopotamia to Egypt passed through this territory.

**Issachar** (vv. 14-15) would prefer an agricultural way of life and what it produced, rather than political supremacy among the tribes. Lower Galilee, including the Valley of Jezreel, which

---

1Thomson, 1:485.
Issachar obtained, was a pleasant and productive farming area.¹

"... the tribe of Issachar would submit to the Canaanite invader, who would fasten the yoke upon them. Instead of fighting, the men of this tribe would submissively allow themselves to become slaves of the peoples of the land. They would prefer shame and slavery to courageous action."²

**Dan** (vv. 16-18) would judge Israel. This prophecy came to reality, partially, during Samson's judgeship. Dan's victories benefited all Israel. Yet this tribe led Israel into idolatry (Judg. 18), and was therefore similar to "a serpent" (v. 17; cf. 3:1).

"... Dan would be exceedingly dangerous to his foes. In later times members of the tribe of Dan fulfilled these words with remarkable accuracy. After a time in their original territory, the Danites moved to the north and occupied the northernmost point in Israel."³

Jacob asked Yahweh to deliver his descendants in the future ("For Your salvation I wait, O LORD," v. 18).

"Jacob's heartfelt aside in 18 is enigmatic: it could arise from a father's prayer, like Abraham's for Ishmael (17:18), or possibly from the sudden memory of his own treachery, long renounced, called up by the acts and the words (heel[s], 17, 19) associated with his own name."⁴

"Repeatedly Jacob has spoken of self-help on the part of the tribes: of Judah the lion, or Issachar the strong-boned ass, of Dan the deadly serpent.

²Yates, p. 46.
³Ibid.
⁴Kidner, p. 220.
Yet Jacob would not be misunderstood. Not from that source does he expect true salvation. Even when men help themselves, only then are they truly delivered if God helps them."

Gad (v. 19) would, like Dan, also be effective in battle ("he will attack at their heels"). Even though Gad would be exposed to the raids of marauding enemies, he would not be slow in defending himself and striking back.

Asher (v. 20) would enjoy very fruitful soil, namely, the lowlands of the Carmel (lit. "vineyard") range, north along the Mediterranean coast. This area contained some of the most fertile land in Canaan.

Naphtali (v. 21) evidently would enjoy the admiration and appreciation of the other tribes in a special way (cf. Deborah and Barak's victory and Deborah's song, Judg. 4 and 5). Jacob could have meant, on the other hand, that Naphtali would exchange his freedom for a more sedentary, domesticated lifestyle in the land ("a doe let loose"), or that he would accommodate ("utters beautiful words," i.e., speak flattery) to the Canaanites.

49:22-26 Joseph's blessing was especially abundant. The two tribes that bore his sons' names, Ephraim and Manasseh, would see the fulfillment of this blessing, even though, during his lifetime, Joseph had faced much opposition ("The archers provoked him, and shot at him and were hostile toward him," v. 22). Judah received the leadership of the tribes, but Joseph obtained the double portion of the birthright (cf. 1 Chron. 5:2).

Jacob's names for God in this blessing are noteworthy: "the Mighty One of Jacob" (cf. Isa. 1:24; et al.), "the Shepherd" (48:15), and "the Stone of Israel" (v. 24; cf. Deut. 32:4, 18, et al.), "the God of your father," and "the Almighty (v. 25)."

---

1 Leupold, 2:1189-90.
2 Wenham, Genesis 16—50, p. 483.
3 See The Nelson ..., pp. 93-94.
"Blessing is one of the key words of Genesis occurring some eighty-eight times in the book. Here in two verses [25 and 26], like the finale of a fireworks display, the root occurs six times (verb 1x, noun 5x) making a brilliant climax to the last words of Jacob. The God-given blessings of the future will far outshine those already experienced."\(^1\)

49:27 Benjamin produced many warriors in Israel's history (e.g., Ehud, Saul, Jonathan, et al.) and demonstrated a warlike character among the tribes (Judg. 5:14; 20:16; 1 Chron. 8:40; ch. 12; 2 Chron. 14:8; 17:17; et al.). Jacob predicted that Benjamin would be consistently successful in his encounters with his foes—"morning" and "evening" being a synecdoche for "always."

49:28 In his 12 sons, Jacob blessed all the future tribes of Israel.\(^2\) This is only the second mention of "the twelve tribes" in the Bible, the previous reference being in verse 16, where we read "the tribes of Israel."

"Within Jacob's words to each of the sons (after Judah), the theme of blessing has been evident in two primary images. First, the reverse side of the blessing is stressed in the imagery of the victorious warrior. The defeat of the enemy is the prelude to the messianic peace. Second, the positive side of the blessing is stressed in the imagery of great prosperity and abundance. Behind such imagery of peace and prosperity lies the picture of the Garden of Eden—the Paradise lost. The focus of Jacob's words has been the promise that when the one comes to whom the kingship truly belongs, there will once again be the peace and prosperity that God intended all to have in the Garden of Eden."\(^3\)

---

\(^1\)Wenham, *Genesis 16—50*, p. 486.

\(^2\)See Darby, 1:80-82, for further observations concerning the fulfillment of these prophecies.

\(^3\)Sailhamer, "Genesis," pp. 278-79.
Sailhamer also proposed that this poetic section plays a significant role in the larger structure of the Pentateuch:

"At three macrostructural junctures in the Pentateuch, the author has spliced a major poetic discourse onto the end of a large unit of narrative (Ge 49; Nu 24; Dt 31). A close look at the material lying between and connecting the narrative and poetic sections reveals the presence of a homogeneous composition stratum. It is most noticeably marked by the recurrence of the same terminology and narrative motifs. In each of the three segments, the central narrative figure (Jacob, Balaam, Moses) calls an audience together (imperative: Ge 49:1; Nu 24:14; Dt 31:28) and proclaims (cohortative: Ge 49:1; Nu 24:14; Dt 31:28) what will happen (Ge 49:1; Nu 24:14; Dt 31:29) in 'the end of days' (Ge 49:1; Nu 24:14; Dt 31:29)."¹

"In sum, the apparent overall strategy of the author in these three segments suggests that one of the central concerns lying behind the final shape of the Pentateuch is an attempt to uncover an inherent relationship between the past and the future. That which happened to God's people in the past portends of future events. To say it another way, the past is seen as a lesson for the future. ...

"The narrative texts of past events are presented as pointers to future events. Past events foreshadow the future. It is not hard to see that such a hermeneutic leads to a form of narrative typology. We should, then, look for signs of such a typology in the composition of the smaller units of narrative in the Pentateuch as well as in the arrangement of the legal material."²

A believer's works during this life, in the context of lasting spiritual fruit for the Lord, significantly determine the extent of divine blessing that he or she and their descendants will receive in the future.

¹Idem, The Pentateuch ..., p. 36.
²Ibid., p. 37.
15. Deaths and a promise yet to be fulfilled 49:29—50:26

Joseph received permission from Pharaoh to bury Jacob in Canaan as he had requested. He then assured his brothers of his favor, in spite of how they had treated him, and testified that God would fulfill His promises.

Plans to bury Jacob in Canaan 49:29—50:14

Jacob again expressed his faith in God's promises that Canaan would be the Israelites' homeland—by requesting burial in the cave in the field of Machpelah near Hebron (cf. 47:29-32; 48:21-22). Had Jacob still been thinking in the flesh, as he had earlier in his life, he probably would have asked to be buried with his favored wife Rachel.

"This scene concludes Jacob's finest hour. On his deathbed—a scene extending from 47:28 to 49:32—Jacob has assumed total and dynamic leadership of the family. Even Joseph bows down to him."¹

Jacob died peacefully, and was gathered to his people (i.e., reunited with his ancestors, implying life after death, in Sheol, the "Place of Departed Spirits"; cf. 25:8). Jacob was 147 when he died (47:28). Joseph evidently had Jacob's body preserved as a mummy ("Joseph commanded his servants the physicians to embalm his father," 50:2).²

Jacob's elaborate funeral was probably due both to the high regard in which the Egyptians held him as Joseph's father, and to the Egyptians' love of showy funeral ceremonies (vv. 7-10).³ This is the grandest state funeral recorded in the Bible, entirely appropriate since Jacob's story spans more than half of Genesis. The Egyptians mourned for Jacob 70 days, just two days less than they normally mourned the death of a Pharaoh.⁴ Abel-mizraim (v. 11) means "the meadow (or mourning) of Egypt."

"The Canaanites were so impressed with the party of mourners that they named the place for them."⁵

---

¹Waltke, Genesis, p. 617.
²See Davis, Paradise to ..., pp. 302-3; H. Vos, p. 169; or Leupold, 2:1205-6 for how the Egyptians prepared mummies.
⁴von Rad, p. 430; Ross, "Genesis," p. 100.
⁵The Nelson ..., p. 95.
"This grand funeral procession and this exaltation of Jacob as a king by the Egyptians foreshadows Israel's exodus from the world and gives a foretaste of the time when the nations hail a son of Jacob as King."¹

"When we return to our own houses from burying the bodies of our relations, we say, 'We have left them behind'; but, if their souls have gone to our heavenly Father's house, we may say with more reason, 'They have left us behind.'"²

The record of Jacob's burial in the land is important to the purposes of Genesis. God had promised the land to Abraham, and had already given the patriarchs small portions of it. The faith of these men, that God would fulfill His promises, and do for their descendants all that He had promised—is obvious—in that they viewed Canaan as their homeland. They were counting on the future faithfulness of God, who had proved Himself faithful to them personally during their lifetimes.

"There was no Old Testament saint of them all who, first and last, saw more of the favour and forgiveness of God than Jacob."³

Peace in the family of Jacob 50:15-21

Jacob's death raised fears in the hearts of Joseph's brothers. They claimed that Jacob had left a message urging Joseph to forgive them (vv. 16-17). It is impossible for us to know if they were telling the truth or not. The brothers feared because of their uneasy consciences, rather than because of Joseph's behavior (cf. v. 19).

Joseph's response to his fearful brothers reveals his attitudes toward God and them (vv. 18-21; cf. 27:41). He humbled himself under God's authority. Joseph regarded God as sovereign over him, and the One who had providentially guided all the events of his life. He knew that God's purposes for him, his family, and all people were good (cf. chs. 1—2). Consequently, he behaved with tender compassion toward his brothers. Joseph proved to be his "brothers' keeper" (cf. 4:9). Genesis opened with

---
¹Waltke, Genesis, p. 618.
²Matthew Henry, p. 70.
³Whyte, 1:111.
a couple, Adam and Eve, trying to become "like God." It closes with a man, Joseph, denying that he is "in God's place.""1

"Perhaps the best parallel to Gen. 50:20 is the case of Judas Iscariot in the NT. He is both evil and important (much as there are others who are good and important). In lifting up his heel against his friend, Judas is marked as the archetypal traitor. He is additionally a figure of sinister importance in the working out of the divine will. Judas is to Jesus what Joseph's brothers were to Joseph."2

"The sequence of deceptions that causes this family so much suffering finally comes to an end when Joseph chooses not to take revenge on his brothers."3

"Each sentence of his threefold reply is a pinnacle of Old Testament (and New Testament) faith. To leave all the righting of one's wrongs to God (19; cf. Rom. 12:19; 1 Thes. 5:15; 1 Pet. 4:19); to see His providence in man's malice (20; cf. on 45:5); and to repay evil not only with forgiveness but also with practical affection (21; cf. Luke 6:27ff.), are attitudes which anticipate the adjective 'Christian' and even 'Christlike.'"4

"Behind all the events and human plans recounted in the story of Joseph lies the unchanging plan of God. It is the same plan introduced from the very beginning of the book where God looks out at what he has just created for man and sees that 'it is good' (tob, 1:4-31). Through his dealings with the patriarchs and Joseph, God had continued to bring about his good plan. He had remained faithful to his purposes, and it is the point of this narrative to show that his people can continue to trust him and to believe that 'in all things God works for the good of those who love him, who have been called according to his purpose' (Rom 8:28)."5

---

1E. I. Lowenthal, The Joseph Narrative in Genesis, p. 156.
2Hamilton, The Book ... Chapters 18—50, p. 707.
4Kidner, p. 224.
The death of Joseph 50:22-26

Joseph lived to see God’s blessing on his children’s children. He died 54 years after Jacob’s death, when he was 110 years old.¹ Some Egyptian texts refer to 110 as the ideal lifespan.² Abraham had lived to be 175, Isaac 180, and Jacob 147.

Joseph probably could have been given a burial in a pyramid, or had some other grand burial in Egypt. Like Moses, Joseph chose the promises of God over the privileges of the world. He is a model for all believers, Israelites in the past and present Christians alike. However, he wanted his family to embalm him and place his body in a coffin in Egypt. Later descendants would bury his bones in the Promised Land near Shechem. They would do so in the parcel of land his father Jacob had bought and given to him, perhaps near Abraham’s oak (48:22; cf. Josh. 24:32). This expression of Joseph’s faith, in God’s promises to his forefathers, provides a fitting climax for the Book of Genesis and the formative period of Israel’s history: "God will assuredly take care of you and bring you up from this land to the land which He promised on oath to Abraham, to Isaac, and to Jacob," (v. 24). Verse 24 contains the first reference to the three patriarchs together.

"The outstanding feature of Joseph's life was faithful loyalty to God under all circumstances."³

"The story of Joseph illustrates patient faith and its reward. It ends the book of Genesis and brings its theme to a literary climax. But the story of Joseph shows us that the road to victory, dominion, mastery, and judicial authority, is through service, the humble service of a slave. Through service and suffering, God purges and destroys indwelling sin in the believer (not completely, but sufficiently), builds character in him, and fits him for the mastery of the world."⁴

"The Book of Genesis, like the Old Testament in microcosm, ends by pointing beyond its own story. ... Joseph's dying words epitomized the hope in which the Old Testament, and

---

²Hamilton, The Book ... Chapters 18—50, p. 709.
³Thomas, Genesis, p. 379.
⁴Jordan, pp. 67-68.
indeed the New (cf. Rev. 22:20), would fall into expectant silence: *God will surely visit you.*”¹

An important lesson that this last chapter of Genesis teaches is that believers who trust that the Lord will fulfill His promises to bless in His own inscrutable ways will demonstrate their faith in the way they die.

¹Kidner, p. 224.
Conclusion

Out of the many great revelations of God in Genesis, probably the most outstanding attributes are His power and faithfulness. Almost every section of the book demonstrates the fact that God is absolutely trustworthy. People can rely on His word (spoken and written) with confidence. All the major characters in Genesis came to acknowledge the faithfulness of God. Even Jacob, who was perhaps the most skeptical, came to a firm trust in God as God guided him through his life.

The major revelation about man in Genesis is his creation "in the image of God." As the bearer of God's image, he has a relationship with his Creator as well as with his fellow creatures. The "image of God" in man consists of his spiritual qualities that distinguish him from other created beings. The Fall obscured but did not obliterate this image. It also damaged but did not destroy man's relationship with God.

The key revelation in Genesis concerning the relationship that God and people have, is that God initiated it, and people can enjoy it when they respond in trust and obedience. People can and must have faith in God, in order to enjoy the relationship with God that He created them to experience. As men and women trust God, they experience God's blessing, and become instruments through whom God works to bring blessing to others.

How can Christians motivate others to trust and obey God as we minister to them? We can do so the same way Moses motivated the Israelites through his emphases in Genesis: He demonstrated and illustrated God's strength (or power) and trustworthiness. God is powerful enough to do anything (see especially chs. 1—11), and He is faithful to fulfill His promises (see especially chs. 12—50). We need to point these things out in Scripture, in history, and in our own lives. This is what builds strong faith. To trust and obey someone, we must believe that he or she is strong enough to do what is needed, and faithful to his or her word. We must also believe that they have our best interests at heart, which Genesis also demonstrates is true of God throughout its 50 chapters.
### Appendix 1

#### The Canons of the Hebrew Bible/Old Testament

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>JUDAISM</th>
<th>PROTESTANTISM</th>
<th>ROMAN CATHOLICISM</th>
<th>EASTERN ORTHODOXY</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Hebrew Bible (Tanak)</td>
<td>Old Testament</td>
<td>Old Testament</td>
<td>Old Testament</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Torah</td>
<td>Pentateuch</td>
<td>Pentateuch</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Genesis</td>
<td>Genesis</td>
<td>Genesis</td>
<td>Genesis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exodus</td>
<td>Exodus</td>
<td>Exodus</td>
<td>Exodus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Leviticus</td>
<td>Leviticus</td>
<td>Leviticus</td>
<td>Leviticus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Numbers</td>
<td>Numbers</td>
<td>Numbers</td>
<td>Numbers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Deuteronomy</td>
<td>Deuteronomy</td>
<td>Deuteronomy</td>
<td>Deuteronomy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prophets (Neviim)</td>
<td>Historical Books</td>
<td>Historical Books</td>
<td>Historical Books</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Former Prophets</td>
<td>Joshua</td>
<td>Joshua</td>
<td>Joshua</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Joshua</td>
<td>Judges</td>
<td>Judges</td>
<td>Judges</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Judges</td>
<td>Ruth</td>
<td>Ruth</td>
<td>Ruth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 &amp; 2 Samuel</td>
<td>1 &amp; 2 Samuel</td>
<td>1 &amp; 2 Samuel</td>
<td>1 &amp; 2 Samuel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 &amp; 2 Kings</td>
<td>1 &amp; 2 Kings</td>
<td>1 &amp; 2 Kings</td>
<td>1 &amp; 2 Kings</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 &amp; 2 Chronicles</td>
<td>1 &amp; 2 Chronicles</td>
<td>1 &amp; 2 Chronicles</td>
<td>1 &amp; 2 Chronicles</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Isaiah</td>
<td>Ezra</td>
<td>Ezra</td>
<td>Ezra</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jeremiah</td>
<td>Nehemiah</td>
<td>Nehemiah</td>
<td>Nehemiah</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ezekiel</td>
<td>Esther</td>
<td>Esther</td>
<td>Esther</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Twelve</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hosea</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1 Esdras</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Joel</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>2 Esdras</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amos</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Nehemiah</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Obadiah</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Tobit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jonah</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Judith</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Micah</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Esther</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nahum</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1 Maccabees</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Habakkuk</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>2 Maccabees</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zephaniah</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>3 Maccabees</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Haggai</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zechariah</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Malachi</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(continued below)</td>
<td>(continued below)</td>
<td>(continued below)</td>
<td>(continued below)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JUDAISM</td>
<td>PROTESTANTISM</td>
<td>ROMAN CATHOLICISM</td>
<td>EASTERN ORTHODOXY</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hebrew Bible (Tanak)</td>
<td>Old Testament (continued)</td>
<td>Old Testament (continued)</td>
<td>Old Testament (continued)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Writings (Ketuvim)</td>
<td>Poetical Books (continued)</td>
<td>Poetical Books (continued)</td>
<td>Poetical Books (continued)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Psalms</td>
<td>Job</td>
<td>Job</td>
<td>Job</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proverbs</td>
<td>Psalms</td>
<td>Psalms</td>
<td>Psalms</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Job</td>
<td>Proverbs</td>
<td>Proverbs</td>
<td>Psalm 151</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Five Scrolls</td>
<td>Ecclesiastes</td>
<td>Ecclesiastes</td>
<td>Prayer of Manasseh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Song of Solomon</td>
<td>Song of Solomon</td>
<td>Song of Solomon</td>
<td>Proverbs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ruth</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Ecclesiastes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lamentations</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Song of Solomon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ecclesiastes</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Wisdom of Solomon Sirach (Ecclesiasticus)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Esther</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Daniel</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ezra-Nehemiah</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 &amp; 2 Chronicles</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prophets</td>
<td>Isaiah</td>
<td>Isaiah</td>
<td>Isaiah</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Jeremiah</td>
<td>Jeremiah</td>
<td>Jeremiah</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Lamentations</td>
<td>Lamentations</td>
<td>Lamentations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Ezekiel</td>
<td>Ezekiel</td>
<td>Baruch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Daniel</td>
<td>Daniel</td>
<td>Daniel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Ezekiel</td>
<td>Ezekiel</td>
<td>Additions to Daniel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Hosea</td>
<td>Hosea</td>
<td>Hosea</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Joel</td>
<td>Joel</td>
<td>Joel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Amos</td>
<td>Amos</td>
<td>Amos</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Obadiah</td>
<td>Obadiah</td>
<td>Obadiah</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Jonah</td>
<td>Jonah</td>
<td>Jonah</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Micah</td>
<td>Micah</td>
<td>Micah</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Nahum</td>
<td>Nahum</td>
<td>Nahum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Habakkuk</td>
<td>Habakkuk</td>
<td>Habakkuk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Zephaniah</td>
<td>Zephaniah</td>
<td>Zephaniah</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Haggai</td>
<td>Haggai</td>
<td>Haggai</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Zechariah</td>
<td>Zechariah</td>
<td>Zechariah</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Malachi</td>
<td>Malachi</td>
<td>Malachi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prophets</td>
<td>Isaiah</td>
<td>Isaiah</td>
<td>Isaiah</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Jeremiah</td>
<td>Jeremiah</td>
<td>Jeremiah</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Lamentations</td>
<td>Lamentations</td>
<td>Lamentations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Baruch</td>
<td>Baruch</td>
<td>Baruch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Letter of Jeremiah</td>
<td>Letter of Jeremiah</td>
<td>Letter of Jeremiah</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Ezekiel</td>
<td>Ezekiel</td>
<td>Ezekiel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Daniel</td>
<td>Daniel</td>
<td>Daniel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Additions to Daniel</td>
<td>Additions to Daniel</td>
<td>Additions to Daniel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Hosea</td>
<td>Hosea</td>
<td>Hosea</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Joel</td>
<td>Joel</td>
<td>Joel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Amos</td>
<td>Amos</td>
<td>Amos</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Obadiah</td>
<td>Obadiah</td>
<td>Obadiah</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Jonah</td>
<td>Jonah</td>
<td>Jonah</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Micah</td>
<td>Micah</td>
<td>Micah</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Nahum</td>
<td>Nahum</td>
<td>Nahum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Habakkuk</td>
<td>Habakkuk</td>
<td>Habakkuk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Zephaniah</td>
<td>Zephaniah</td>
<td>Zephaniah</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Haggai</td>
<td>Haggai</td>
<td>Haggai</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Zechariah</td>
<td>Zechariah</td>
<td>Zechariah</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Malachi</td>
<td>Malachi</td>
<td>Malachi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(4 Maccabees)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Five Views of Creation

Atheistic Evolution

Statement of the view

Everything in the universe has come into existence, and has evolved into its present form, as a result of natural processes unaided by any supernatural power.

Positive aspects of the view from the perspective of those who hold it

1. It appears to explain the origin of everything.
2. It offers a single explanation for everything that exists: It evolved.
3. It offers the only real alternative to creation by God.
4. It eliminates God and exalts man.

Problems with the view and answers by its advocates

1. It cannot explain the origin of matter. Answer: Matter is eternal.
2. It cannot explain the complexity of matter. Answer: Billions of years of evolution are responsible for the complexity of matter.
3. It cannot explain the emergence of life. Answer: Primordial life evolved from bio-polymers that evolved from inorganic compounds.
4. It cannot explain the appearance of God-consciousness in man. Answer: This too was the product of evolution.

Evaluation of the view

1. It rests on a hypothesis that cannot be proven to be true; it is essentially a faith position.

---

1This material is a condensation of James M. Boice, *Genesis*, 1:37-68, with additions by myself.
2. Its support rests on little historical evidence (only the fossil record), which has many gaps in it and is open to different interpretations.

3. It relies on mutations as a mechanism for change. However, mutations have not produced new species.

4. It is extremely improbably statistically.

5. It repudiates special revelation concerning creation.

**Modern advocates of the view**

Almost all non-Christian scientists, and many Christian scientists, hold this view.

**Theistic Evolution**

**Statement of the view**

Everything in the universe has come into existence, and has evolved into its present form, as a result of natural processes guided by the God of the Bible.

**Positive aspects of the view from the perspective of those who hold it**

1. It unites truth known by special revelation, with truth known by general revelation in nature, and truth discovered by science.

2. God seems to work according to this pattern in history, interrupting and intervening in the course of events only rarely.

**Problems with the view and answers by its advocates**

1. It presupposes the truth of evolution, which scientists have not been able to validate beyond doubt. Answer: Evolution is a fact or at least an accepted theory.

2. God has intervened in history many more times than the theistic evolutionist posits. Answer: In the early history of the universe, He intervened less frequently.

3. Divine intervention in the evolutionary process is contradictory to the basic theory of evolutionary progress. Answer: The evolutionary process does not rule out divine intervention.
4. This method of creation does not do justice to the biblical record of creation. Answer: We should interpret the biblical record non-literally when it conflicts with evolution.

**Evaluation of the view**

1. It cannot do justice to both the tenets of evolution and the teaching of Scripture.

2. It is ultimately destructive of biblical religion.

**Modern advocates of the view**

Some scientists and theologians, who have respect for but a weaker view of Scripture, hold this view; for example, Pierre Teilhard de Chardin, *The Phenomenon of Man*.

**Progressive Creation**

**Statement of the view**

God created the world directly and deliberately, without leaving anything to chance, but He did it over long periods of time that correspond roughly to the geologic ages.

**Positive aspects of the view from the perspective of those who hold it**

1. It provides a reasonable harmony between the Genesis record and the facts of science.

2. The translation of "day" as "age" is an exegetically legitimate one.

3. It is a tentative conclusion, and acknowledges that not all the scientific evidence is in, and that our understanding of the text may change as biblical scholarship progresses.

**Problems with the view and answers by its advocates**

1. There are discrepancies between the fossil record—and the order in which Genesis records what God created—of plants, fish, and animals. Answer: Science may be wrong at this point, or Genesis may have omitted the earliest forms of life.
2. Taking the six days of creation as "ages" is unusual exegetically. Answer: This interpretation is possible and best here.

3. "Evenings" and "mornings" suggest 24-hour periods. Answer: The sun did not appear until the fourth day.

4. Death entered the world before the Fall. Answer: It took on its horror at the Fall but existed before that event.

Evaluation of the view

This view takes the biblical text quite seriously, but adopts some unusual interpretations of it in order to harmonize it with scientific data.

Modern advocates of the view

Many evangelicals who have been strongly influenced by science hold this view, including Davis A. Young, *Creation and the Flood*. James Boice, Bernard Ramm, Robert Newman, Herman Eckelmann, and Hugh Ross also held this view.

Six-Day Creationism

Statement of the view

Genesis 1 describes one creative process that took place in six consecutive 24-hour periods of time, not more than 6,000 to 15,000 years ago.

Positive aspects of the view from the perspective of those who hold it

1. It regards biblical teaching as determinative.
2. It rests on a strong exegetical base.
3. It results from the most literal (normal) meaning of the text.

Problems with the view and answers by its advocates

1. Data from various scientific disciplines (i.e., astronomy, radioactive dating, carbon deposits, etc.) indicate that the earth is about 5 billion years old, and the universe is about 15-20 billion years old. Answer: God created the cosmos (universe) with the appearance of age.
"The Carbon 14 dating method has been developed by Willard F. Libby and J. R. Arnold at the Institute for Nuclear Studies of the University of Chicago. It depends upon the fact that in their exchange with the atmosphere, in the life process, all living things take in Carbon 14, which is an unstable or radioactive form of carbon with an atomic weight of 14. Upon the death of a living thing, this radiocarbon begins a long process of decay at a known rate. An ounce of it, for example, is reduced by disintegration to a half ounce in 5,500 years, this half is diminished to a quarter ounce in the next 5,500 years, and so on. Having determined experimentally the proportion of Carbon 14 in living matter, and knowing its 'half-life' as just indicated, it is possible to ascertain the age of an ancient organic sample by the amount of Carbon 14 (measured by a radiation counter) it contains. With present techniques, the effective range of the method is about 20,000 years, with a year error in dating samples of 5 to 10 per cent."¹

2. A universal flood cannot fully explain the geologic strata. Answer: It can explain most if not all of it, and the remainder may have been a result of creation.

3. Creation with the appearance of age casts doubt on the credibility of God. Answer: Since God evidently created Adam, plants, and animals with the appearance of age, He may have created other things with the appearance of age, too.

4. There is no reason why God would have created things with the appearance of age. Answer: He did so for His own glory, though we may not yet fully understand why.

Evaluation of the view

This view rests on the best exegesis of the biblical text, though it contradicts the explanations of several branches of science.

Modern advocates of the view

Many conservative evangelicals hold this view, for example, Robert E. Kofahl and Kelly L. Seagraves, The Creation Explanation.

The Gap Theory

Statement of the view

Between Genesis 1:1 and 1:2, there was a long, indeterminate period, in which we can locate the destruction of an "original world," and the unfolding of the geological ages.

Positive aspects of the view from the perspective of those who hold it

1. It rests on an exegetical, biblical base.
2. It is consistent with the structure of the creation account itself.
3. It is possible to translate the Hebrew verb translated "to be" in verse 2 as "become."
4. "Formless and void" in verse 2 may be a clue to God's pre-Adamic judgment on the earth.
5. It provides a setting for the fall of Satan.

Problems with the view and answers by its advocates

1. It is an unnatural explanation, since the text implies only an original creation in Genesis 1:2 and following (cf. Exod. 20:11). Answer: This is a superficial conclusion.
2. The exegetical data that supports this view is far from certain. Answer: These interpretations are possible.
3. This theory does not really settle the problems posed by geology. Answer: The universal flood may have produced some of the geological phenomena.
Evaluation of the view

While this view grows out of a high view of Scripture, several of the interpretations required for it rely on faulty exegesis.

Modern advocates of the view

Many conservative evangelicals, including Arthur Pink, C. I. Scofield, C. S. Lewis, M. R. DeHaan, and D. G. Barnhouse, held this view. See also Arthur C. Custance, *Without Form and Void.*
Appendix 3
Chronology of Genesis 5 and 11

Adam
1 – 929

Seth
129 – 1041

Enosh
234 – 1139

Kenan
324 – 1234

Mahalalel
394 – 1289

Jared
459 – 1421

Enoch
621 – 986

Methuselah
636 – 1655

Lamech
873 – 1650

Noah
1055 – 2006

Shem
1557 – 2158

FLOOD
1655

Arphaxad
1657 – 2096

Shelah
1692 – 2126

Eber
1722 – 2187

Peleg
1756 – 1996

Reu
1786 – 2026

Serug
1818 – 2049

Terah
1877 – 2083

Nahor
1949 – 1997
## Appendix 4

### Comparison of Flood Stories

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Date of account</th>
<th>Biblical</th>
<th>Berossus (Greek)</th>
<th>Atrahasis (Akkadian)</th>
<th>Gilgamesh (Akkadian)</th>
<th>Sumerian</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Earliest possible: 15th century B.C.</td>
<td>ca. 275 B.C.</td>
<td>16th century (copy of earlier work)</td>
<td>ca. 1500 B.C. (copies, not the original)</td>
<td>19th century B.C. (copy, not the original)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Author of Flood</th>
<th>Biblical</th>
<th>Berossus (Greek)</th>
<th>Atrahasis (Akkadian)</th>
<th>Gilgamesh (Akkadian)</th>
<th>Sumerian</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Yahweh</td>
<td></td>
<td>Enlil</td>
<td>Council of gods</td>
<td>Assembly of gods</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Intercessor</th>
<th>Biblical</th>
<th>Berossus (Greek)</th>
<th>Atrahasis (Akkadian)</th>
<th>Gilgamesh (Akkadian)</th>
<th>Sumerian</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Yahweh</td>
<td>Kronos</td>
<td>Ea</td>
<td>Ea</td>
<td>Enki (probably)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reason for Flood</th>
<th>Biblical</th>
<th>Berossus (Greek)</th>
<th>Atrahasis (Akkadian)</th>
<th>Gilgamesh (Akkadian)</th>
<th>Sumerian</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Wicked-ness of mankind, violence, corruption</td>
<td></td>
<td>The clamor, uproar of man disturbs Enlil's sleep.</td>
<td>No reason given at first. In the end, the &quot;sin of man&quot; is implied as the cause.</td>
<td>None is given.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Hero</th>
<th>Biblical</th>
<th>Berossus (Greek)</th>
<th>Atrahasis (Akkadian)</th>
<th>Gilgamesh (Akkadian)</th>
<th>Sumerian</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Noah (rest)</td>
<td>Xisouthros (Greek for Ziusudra)</td>
<td>Atrahasis (all wise)</td>
<td>Utnapishtim (finder of life)</td>
<td>Ziusudra (he saw life)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Intended for whom</th>
<th>Biblical</th>
<th>Berossus (Greek)</th>
<th>Atrahasis (Akkadian)</th>
<th>Gilgamesh (Akkadian)</th>
<th>Sumerian</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>All mankind</td>
<td>All mankind</td>
<td>All mankind</td>
<td>City of Shurippak particularly but all mankind</td>
<td>All mankind</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---


2. Albright, *Archaeology and ...*, p. 19, dated the original to about 2000 B.C.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reason hero spared</th>
<th>Noah found favor in the eyes of the LORD. A righteous man. Blameless. Walked with God.</th>
<th>Ziusudra was &quot;humbly obedient,&quot; reverent; one who seeks revelation by dreams and incantations.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Means of escape</td>
<td>Ark</td>
<td>Boat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Detailed: 3 stories, 1 door, 1 window at least</td>
<td>(Text destroyed)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Detailed: 6 stories, 1 door, 1 window at least</td>
<td>Detailed: 6 stories, 1 door, 1 window at least</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Occupants</td>
<td>Noah, wife, 3 sons, their wives, 7 pairs of all clean animals (male and female), 1 pair of all unclean animals (male and female)</td>
<td>Xisouthros, his family, others, all species of animals</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Atrahasis, his wife and family relations, craftsmen, grain, possessions, food, beasts and creatures of the field</td>
<td>Utnapishtim and all his family and kin, craftsmen, beasts and wild creatures of the field</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Duration of storm</td>
<td>40 days and nights</td>
<td>7 days and nights</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6 days and nights</td>
<td>7 days and nights</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Landing place</td>
<td>Mountains of Ararat</td>
<td>Mountains of Armenia (Text missing)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Mt. Nisir (Mt. of Salvation)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Birds released</strong></td>
<td>Raven, dove, dove, dove</td>
<td>Birds</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------</td>
<td>-------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Sacrifice</strong></td>
<td>Hero offers. &quot;The LORD smelled the pleasing odor.&quot;</td>
<td>Hero offers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Blessing</strong></td>
<td>God blesses Noah and charges him to populate earth.</td>
<td>Hero disappears but his voice instructs others.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Appendix 5
Jerusalem’s Temple Mount

It occupies only 140 dunams (35 acres), yet this trapezoid-shaped walled area, hovering over the Old City of Jerusalem, is seldom out of the news. The Mount has been the site of frequent conflicts.

What is so important about the Temple Mount that it arouses such raging passions among Jew and Moslem alike? In Hebrew it is known as Har HaBayet (Mountain of the House) and in Arabic, Haram al-Sharif (the Noble Sanctuary). Within the area of the Temple Mount there are about 100 structures from various periods—great works of art and craftsmanship including open-domed Moslem prayer spots, arched porticos, Moslem religious schools, minarets, and fountains.

Here also is the magnificent Dome of the Rock, the central structure, which was begun by the Ummayyad Caliph, Abd-al-Malik in 684 C.E., and completed in 1033. With the bloody conquest of Jerusalem by the Crusaders, the Dome of the Rock was converted into a church and only re-converted into a mosque after Saladin's conquest of Jerusalem in 1187. With its 45,000 ornamental tiles and 8 graceful arches at the top of the steps leading to the mosque, some observers consider it to be one of the most beautiful buildings in the world.

The Temple Mount has a very special status and enormous importance to Jews because it was the site of the Temple which stood at its center. Jerusalem, the Holy City, is regarded as the equivalent of the "camp of Israel" that surrounded the sanctuary in the wilderness; and the Temple Mount represents "the camp of the Divine Presence" (Sif. Naso 1:Zev 116b).

Its most sacred section was the Holy of Holies. Only the highest priest was allowed to enter it, and then only once a year, on the Day of Atonement, for the service Isaiah (2:3) tells us that [sic] "it shall come to pass in the latter days that the mountain of the house of the Lord shall be established as the highest of the mountains, and shall be raised above the hills, and all

nations shall flow to it ... For out of Zion shall go forth the Law, and the word of the Lord from Jerusalem."

For Moslems, the Temple Mount also has great sanctity. They have three mosques to which special holiness is attached: the Ka'ba in Mecca, the Mosque of Muhammad in Medina, and the Temple Mount, their third holiest site in Islam. The adoration of the site is based on the first verse of Sura 17 of the Koran, which describes the prophet's Night Journey. They believe that when Muhammad was sleeping near the Ka'ba, the angel Gabriel brought him to a winged creature. Together they rose to heaven and met Abraham, Moses, and Jesus. Some Moslems believe that Muhammad made the journey while awake and actually traversed the ground of the Temple Mount.

Because of the special nature of the Temple Mount, it will continue to inflame passions—according to religious Jews until such time as the Messiah comes. Then, according to Jewish belief, He will reign over the restored kingdom of Israel to which all Jews of the Exile will return. It is believed that the foundation of the Messiah's throne will be justice and He will be charismatically endowed to dispense justice both to Israel and its neighboring nations.
Bibliography


______. S.v. "Prostitution (OT)," by Elaine Adler Goodfriend.


_____.


Blosser, Oliver R. "Was Nimrod-Sargon of Agade, the First King of Babylon?" *It's About Time*, June 1987, pp. 10-13.


_____.

_____.


_____.

_____.


Hodges, Zane C. *The Gospel Under Siege*. Dallas: By the Author, Redencion Viva, P.O. Box 141167, 1981.


______. "Is It the Case that Christ is the Same Object of Faith in the Old Testament?" *Journal of the Evangelical Theological Society* 55:2(June 2012):291-98.


_____.* The Bible In Its World.* Downers Grove, Ill.: InterVarsity Press, 1977.


Monson, James M. *The Land Between*. Jerusalem: By the Author: P.O. Box 1276, 1983.


_____.


_____.


_____.


_____.


_____.

*Science, Scripture and the Young Earth.* El Cajon, Calif.: Institute for Creation Research, 1983.


_____.


_____.


_____.


_____.


_____.


_____.


Rendall, Ted S. "Using the Creation Account for Maximum Spiritual Profit." *Prairie Overcomer* 60:8 (September 1987):3-5, 22.


______. "Noah—'This One Shall Comfort Us.'" *Exegesis and Exposition*. 3:1 (Fall 1988):71-82.


_____.* You Mean the Bible Teaches That ...* Chicago: Moody Press, 1974.


_____. "Reflections on Retirement from the Life of Isaac." *Crux* 32 (December 1996):4-14.


______. "Journey Down the Jabbok." *Bible and Spade*, Spring 1978, pp. 57-64.


______. "Intercession or Irritation?" *Third Way*, February 1983, pp. 18-19.


